GAC MOTOR

Owner's Manual

GAC MOTOR GN8

Thank you for choosing the car from GAC MOTOR. To better enjoy the driving pleasure provided by your car, please carefully read this User's Manual. The use instructions on the car provided in this Manual will allow you to fully understand its operations and important notes. The proper use of the car will improve driving safety and increase service life.

The on-board Warranty Manual describes the warranty services provided by GAC MOTOR which you can enjoy, as well as regular maintenance of your car. Read this Manual thoroughly so you can understand your rights and responsibilities.

Please keep this Manual in your car for your reference.

Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

If you have any advice or comments, welcome to call GAC MOTOR customer service hotline：400-158-9999.

Thank you for your support and great kindness to GAC MOTOR. Wish you a happy driving!

Your safety, and the safety of passengers, are very important. Therefore, operating this car safely is an important responsibility.

To help you be familiar with relevant safety notes, we have provided operating steps and other instructions on signboards of the car and in this Manual. These instructions alert you to warn potential hazards that could hurt you or passengers.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to list all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your car. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find these important safety instructions in a variety of forms, including:

- Safety Signboards— Attached to the car.
- Safety Information— Words preceded by a safety warning symbol and one of the three signal words: "Warning", "Caution" or "Hint".

Meanings are as follows:

Instruction for important or possible personal injury.

Instruction for important or possible vehicle damage.

Instruction for potential risks that will not cause injury or damage.

- Some paragraphs in this Manual are inapplicable to all the models, and corresponding caption texts are labeled with "*" for reference.
- Unless otherwise specially stated, vehicle directions (front, rear, left, right) herein are based on the vehicle's driving direction.

1. Important Safety Precautions 1

2. Pictorial References 2

2.1 Interior. 2

2.2 Exterior 7

3. Safety Operating Instructions 11

3.1 Safety Driving 11

3.1.1 General Instructions 11

3.1.2 Correct Sitting Position of Occupants 12

3.2 Seat Belts 14

3.2.1 Why Wear Seat Belts 14

3.2.2 Seat Belt 16

3.3 SRS System 22

3.3.1 SRS Indicator 23

3.3.2 Front Seat Frontal Airbag 24

3.3.3 Front Seat Side Airbag 26

3.3.4 Side Curtain Airbag* 28

3.3.5 Cases When Airbags Could Deploy 29

3.3.6 Cases When Airbags Could Not Deploy 30

3.4 Safety Rules for Children 32

3.4.1 General Instructions 32

3.4.2 Child Safety Seat 34

3.4.3 Information about Child Safety Seat 36

3.4.4 Install a Child Seat Properly 38

3.5 Dangerous Exhaust Gases 42

3.6 Safety Labels 43

4. Operating System and Equipment 44

4.1 Cab 44

4.1.1 Instrument Cluster 44

4.1.2 Indicator Light 48

4.1.3 Steering Wheel 53

4.2 Start and Stop Vehicle 64

4.2.1 Smart Key 64

4.2.2 Emergency Mechanical Key 74

4.2.3 Central Locking System 75

4.2.4 Door 81

4.2.5 Hatchback Door 88

4.2.6 Electric Windows 94

4.2.7 Electric Sunroof 97

4.2.8 Engine Hood 102

4.2.9 Basic Operations of Anti-Theft on Vehicle Body 104

4.3 Lights and Visual Field 106

4.3.1 Exterior Lights 106

4.3.2 Interior Lights 113

4.3.3 Wiper Combination Switch 118

4.3.4 Windshields 121

4.3.5 Rear-View Mirror 122
4.3.6 Sun Visor 128
4.4 Seats and Storage Devices 129
4.4.1 Importance of Adjusting Seats Properly 129
4.4.2 Headrest 130
4.4.3 Front Seats 132
4.4.4 The Second/Third Row Seats 138
4.4.5 Storage Devices 144
4.4.6 Cigarette Lighter/Power Outlet 151
4.4.7 Mobile Phone Wireless Charging System* 153
4.4.8 Trunk 156
4.4.9 Accessories and Modifications 158
4.5 A/C System 160
4.5.1 General Instructions 160
4.5.2 Control Panel 161
4.5.3 Air Outlets 173
4.6 AUDIO System 174
4.6.1 Control Panel 174
4.6.2 Control Buttons on the Steering Wheel 178
4.6.3 Basic Operations 180
4.6.4 Radio 185
4.6.5 USB Play 189
4.6.6 Bluetooth 198
4.6.7 iPod Music 205
4.6.8 Interactive Control of Front and Rear Rows* 206
4.6.9 System Setting 209
4.6.10 Rear Screen System Setting* 216
4.6.11 Car Setting 219
4.6.12 Rear Screen Car Setting* 226
4.6.13 CarPlay* 227
4.6.14 Precautions for Product Use 231
4.6.15 Formats Supported by the AUDIO System 232

5. Driving Guide 234
5.1 Starting and Driving 234
5.1.1 Start Switch 234
5.1.2 Engine Start 236
5.1.3 Engine Stop 237
5.1.4 Gear and Driving Instructions 239
5.1.5 Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) System 245
5.2 Service Electronic Brake System 251
5.2.1 Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) 251
5.2.2 Electronic Brakeforce Distribution System (EBD).. 254
5.2.3 Hydraulic Boost Compensation (HBC) 255
5.2.4 Electronic Stability Program (ESP) 256
5.2.5 Traction Control System (TCS) 259
5.2.6 Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 260

5.2.7 Hill-start Assist Control (HAC)..... 261
5.2.8 Down-hill Assist Control (DAC) 262
5.3 Driver Assistance System 264
5.3.1 Smart Start/Stop System 264
5.3.2 Cruise Control System* 268
5.3.3 Intelligent High Beam* 271
5.3.4 Radar and Camera Sensor *..... 274
5.3.5 Tire Pressure Monitoring System 277
5.4 Parking Assist System 279
5.4.1 Reversing Radar System..... 279
5.4.2 Reversing Rear-view System* 284
5.4.3 Panorama Parking System*..... 287
5.5 Electric Power Steering (EPS) System..... 291
5.6 Driving Skills..... 292
5.6.1 Safety Check for Driving. 292
5.6.2 Driving during Running-in Period..... 293
5.6.3 Important Tips for Driving under Different Conditions .. 295
5.6.4 Efficient Use of the Car..... 297
5.6.5 Fire Prevention 298

6. Usage and Maintenance..... 299
6.1. Maintenance Instructions 299
6.2 Interior Maintenance..... 300
6.3 Exterior Maintenance 302
6.4 Checking and Adding Fluids..... 308
6.4.1 Fuel Oil 308
6.4.2 Engine Oil 310
6.4.3 Coolant 315
6.4.4 Windshield Washing Liquid and Wiper Blade 319
6.4.5 Brake Fluid 322
6.4.6 Battery 325
6.5 A/C Filter 328
6.6 Replacing Bulbs 329
6.7 Wheels 341
6.8 Tire Chain 348
6.9 Maintenance Instructions for Car Body Anti-Theft..... 349

7 Technical Data..... 350
7.1 Vehicle Identification Numbers..... 350
7.2 Vehicle Parameters..... 352
7.3 Vehicle Parameters..... 353
7.4 Vehicle Parameters..... 356

8. Handling of Accident 359
8.1 Vehicle Tools and Spare Tire..... 359
8.2 Usage of Warning Triangle..... 362
8.3 Replacing the Flat Tire 363
8.4 Fuse 367

8.4.1 Fuse in Instrument Panel Fuse Box 369
8.4.2 Fuse in Engine Compartment Fuse Box 373
8.5 Emergency Start..... 376
8.6 Emergency Towing..... 378

9. Environmental Protection Information 383
9.1. Environmental Protection Information No. 383
9.2. Environmental Protection Information 384

The following safety precautions describe the safety features and correct use of the vehicle. We think all of them are very important.

♦ **Be sure to wear the seat belt**

In all types of crashes, seat belts are protective devices that perform best. Air bags are designed to enhance safety provided by seat belts rather than take the place of seat belts. Thus even if the car is equipped with air bags, make sure that you and other occupants always correctly wear seat belts.

♦ **Protect all children**

Children 12 years old and under must never ride in the front seat. They shall be correctly restrained in the second-row seats. For infants and babies, child safety seats shall be used. For older children, both child safety seats and three-point seat belts shall be used.

♦ **Note that air bag may cause danger**

Air bags can save lives. However, deployment of air bags could result in serious or fatal injury to the occupant too close to them or improperly restrained. Air bags present greatest threats to infants, babies, and short adults. Therefore, be sure to observe all instructions and warnings contained in this Manual.

♦ **Never drive after drinking alcohol**

Never drive after drinking alcohol. Even drinking a little alcohol can suppress capability of dealing with changing situations, besides, it takes longer time for doing so. Never drive after drinking alcohol. Do not let your friends drive after drinking alcohol either.

♦ **Observe road traffic safety regulations and be polite while driving.**

♦ **Pay due attention to driving safety**

Making calls or doing other things while driving could cause you to pay no attention to road conditions, other vehicles and pedestrians. This could result in accidents. Keep in mind that avoid distraction while driving.

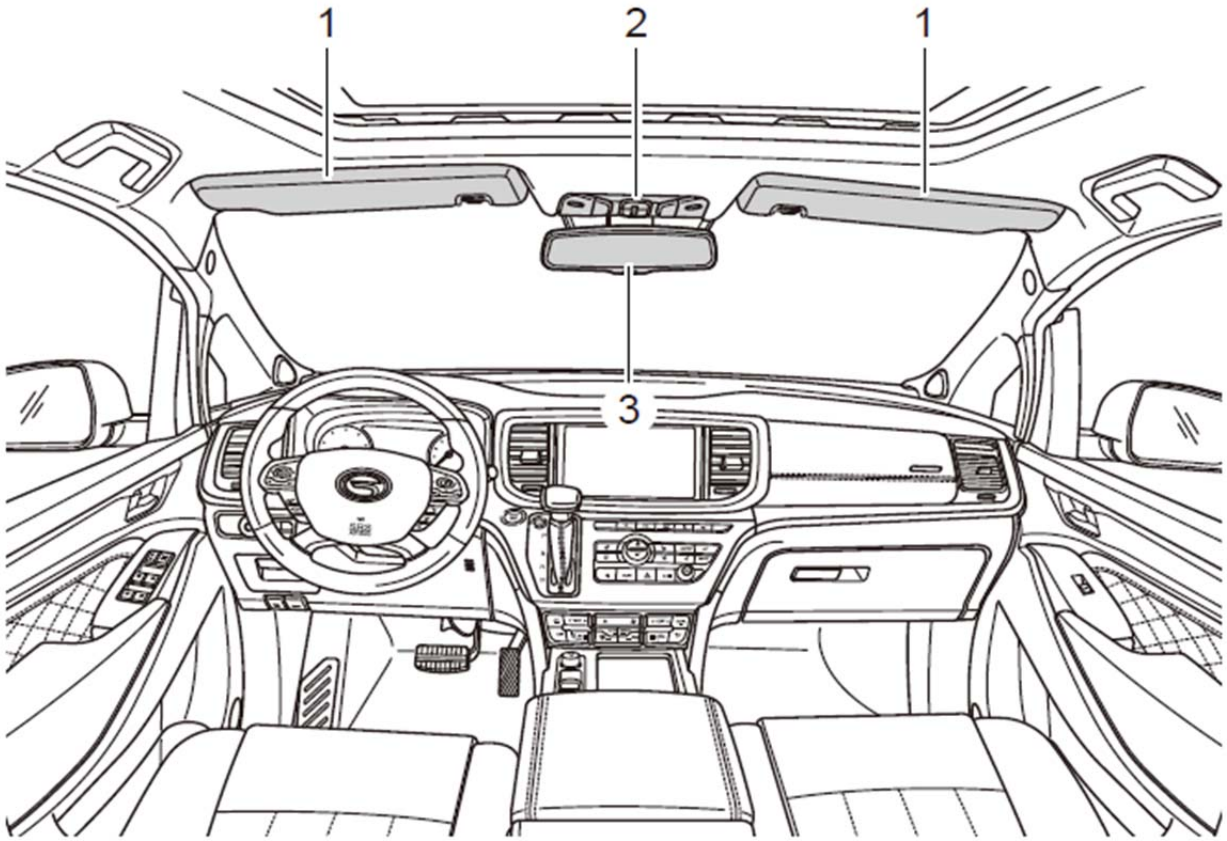
♦ **Control the vehicle speed**

Vehicle speed being too fast is one of the main causes for injury and death in crashes. Generally, the faster the vehicle speed, the greater the risk. Nonetheless, sometimes accidents with relatively slow vehicle speeds can also lead to serious injury or death. Regardless of the highest speed permitted by the regulation, never drive faster than the permission by actual road conditions for safety purpose.

♦ **Keep the vehicle at a safe status**

Tire burst or mechanical fault can be very dangerous. To reduce possibility of these problems, check tire pressures and conditions from time to time, and have the vehicle serviced periodically according to the Warranty Manual.

2.1 Interior

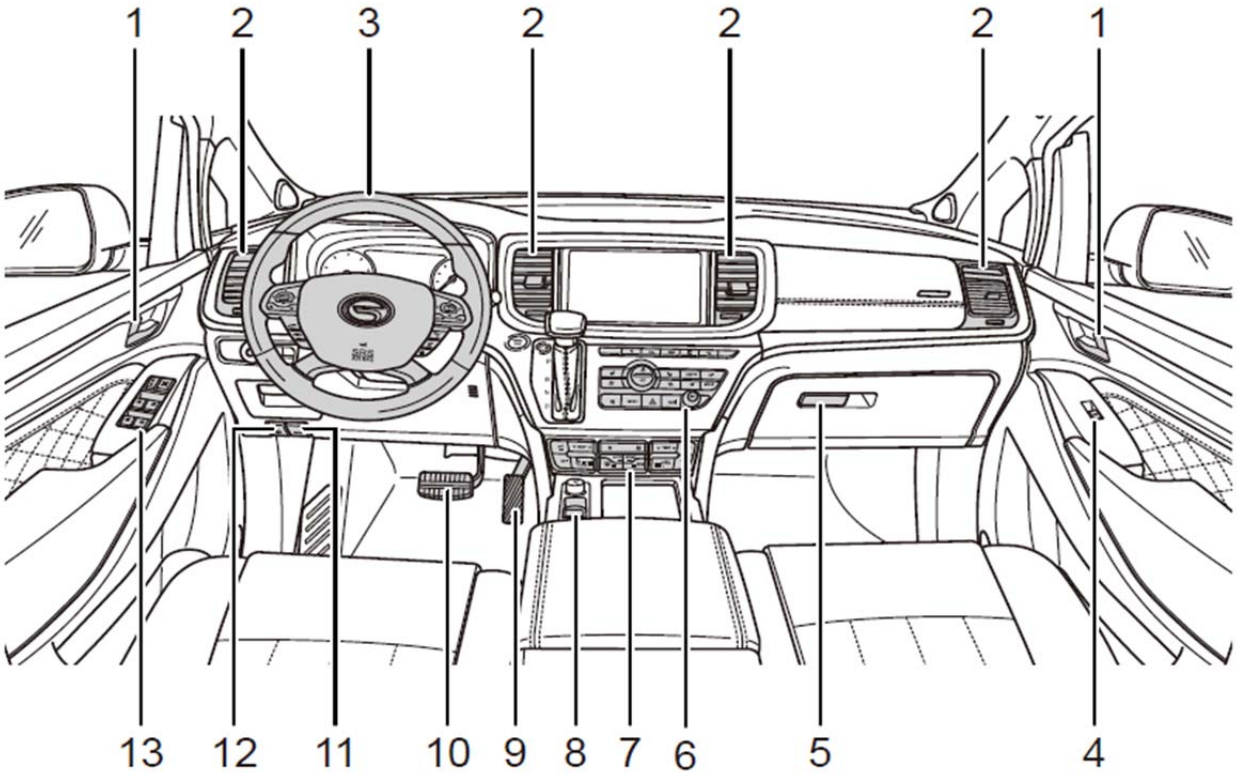


1. Sun visor => Refer to Page 132
2. Front roof lights =>Refer to Page 117

– Electric sunroof switch => Refer to Page 101
– Electric sliding door keypad* => Refer to Page 86
– Electric sunshade keypad* => Refer to Page 103
– Glasses case => Refer to Page 150

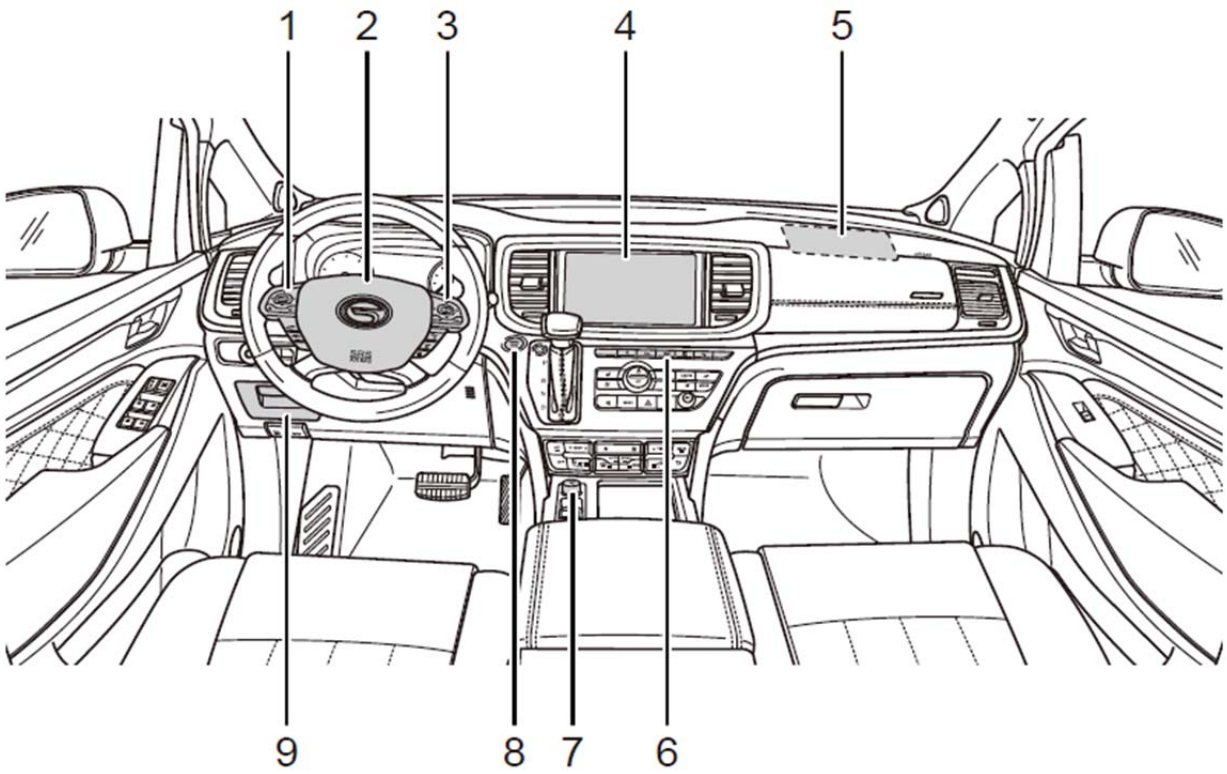
3. Automatic anti-glare interior rear-view mirror* => Refer to Page 126

– Manual anti-glare interior rear-view mirror* => Refer to Page 127



1. Door latch and door inner handle =>Refer to Page 82
2. Air outlets =>Refer to Page 177
3. Steering wheel => Refer to Page 53
4. Passenger side electric window button =>Refer to Page 99
5. Handle of glove box =>Refer to Page 151
6. Control panel of audio system =>Refer to Page 178
7. Control panel of air conditioning system =>Refer to Page 165
8. EPB system button=> Refer to Page 313
9. Accelerator pedal
10. Brake pedal
11. Engine hood open handle => Refer to Page 106
12. Handle of fuel tank cap=> Refer to Page 406
13. Electric window button on the driver's side => Refer to Page 98

– Central locking button =>Refer to Page 83



1. Steering wheel button (left) =>Refer to Page 54
2. Driver front airbag =>Refer to Page 24

– Horn button on steering wheel =>Refer to Page 54

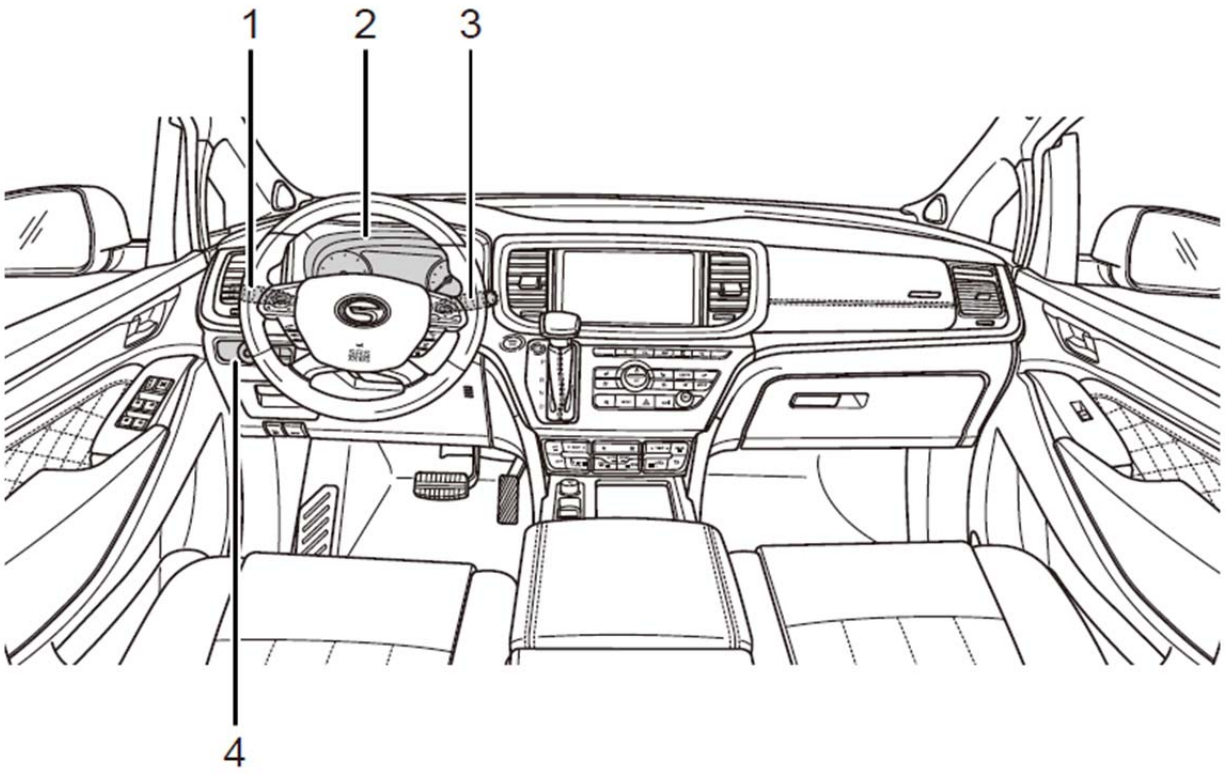
3. Steering wheel button (right) =>Refer to Page 54
4. Audio system display screen =>Refer to Page 178
5. Front passenger front airbag => Refer to Page 24
6. Keypad:

– Mobile phone wireless charging keypad*=> Refer to Page 157

– Panorama parking system button*=> Refer to Page 375

7. Cigarette lighter/power outlet =>Refer to Page 155
8. Start switch =>Refer to Page 302
9. Storage shelf for lower panel in the cab =>Refer to Page 148

– Instrument panel fuse box => Refer to Page 466



1. Light combination switch =>Refer to Page 110
2. Instrument Cluster => Refer to Page 44

– Indicator light =>Refer to Page 48

3. Wiper combination switch =>Refer to Page 122
4. Switch Group of Left Side of Instrument Panel:

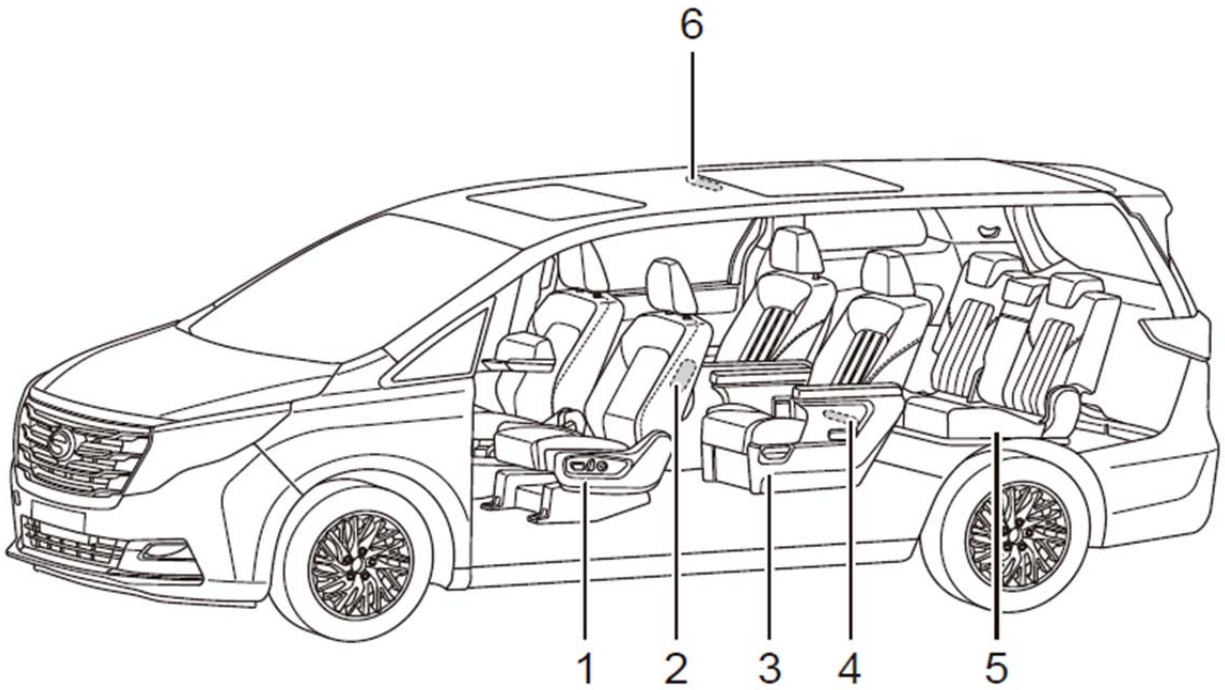
– Exterior rear-view mirror adjusting knob =>Refer to Page 127

– Smart Start/ Stop system OFF button =>Refer to Page 332

– Downhill assist control system button =>Refer to Page 330

– ESP OFF button =>Refer to Page 324

– Hatchback door release button* =>Refer to Page 92

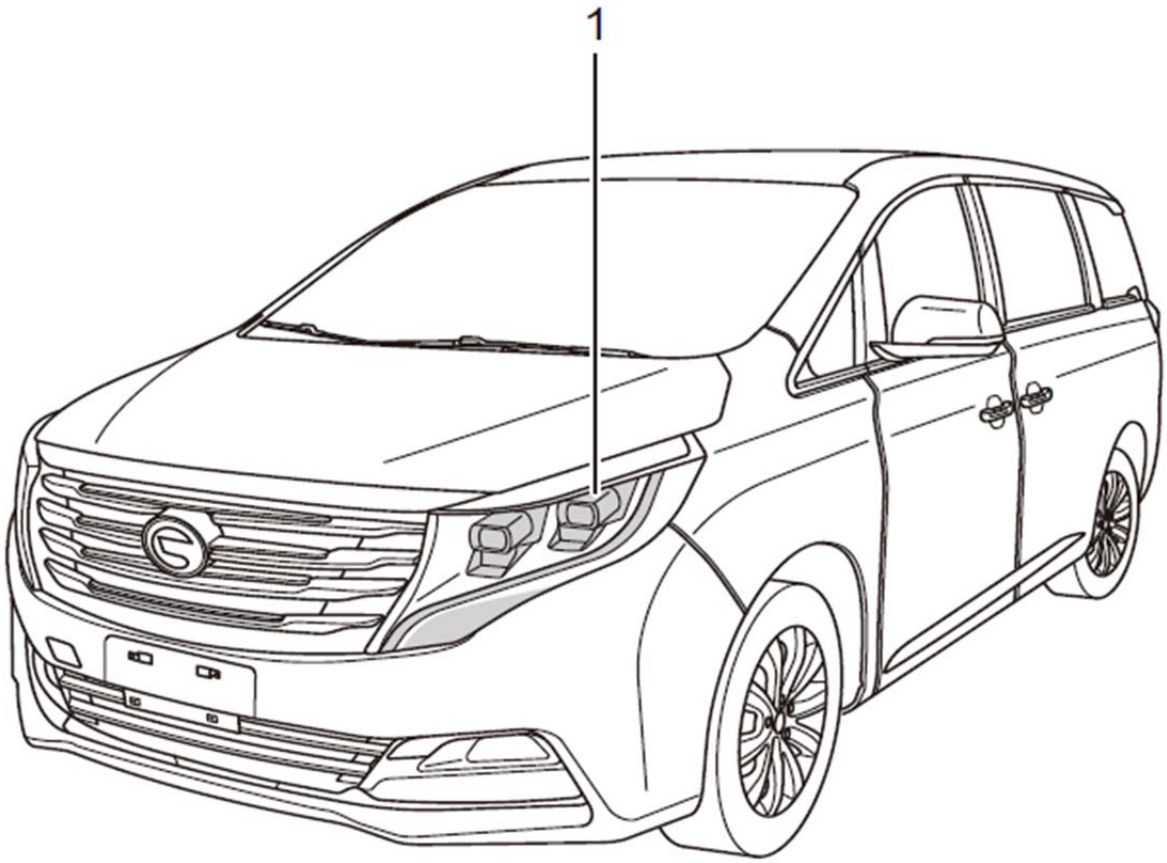


OMA7M-0403

1. Front seats =>Refer to Page 136
2. Front seat side airbags =>Refer to Page 26
3. The second row seat =>Refer to Page 142
4. Mounting device of child seat=>Refer to Page 40
5. The third row seat =>Refer to Page 145
6. Rear central control switch group:

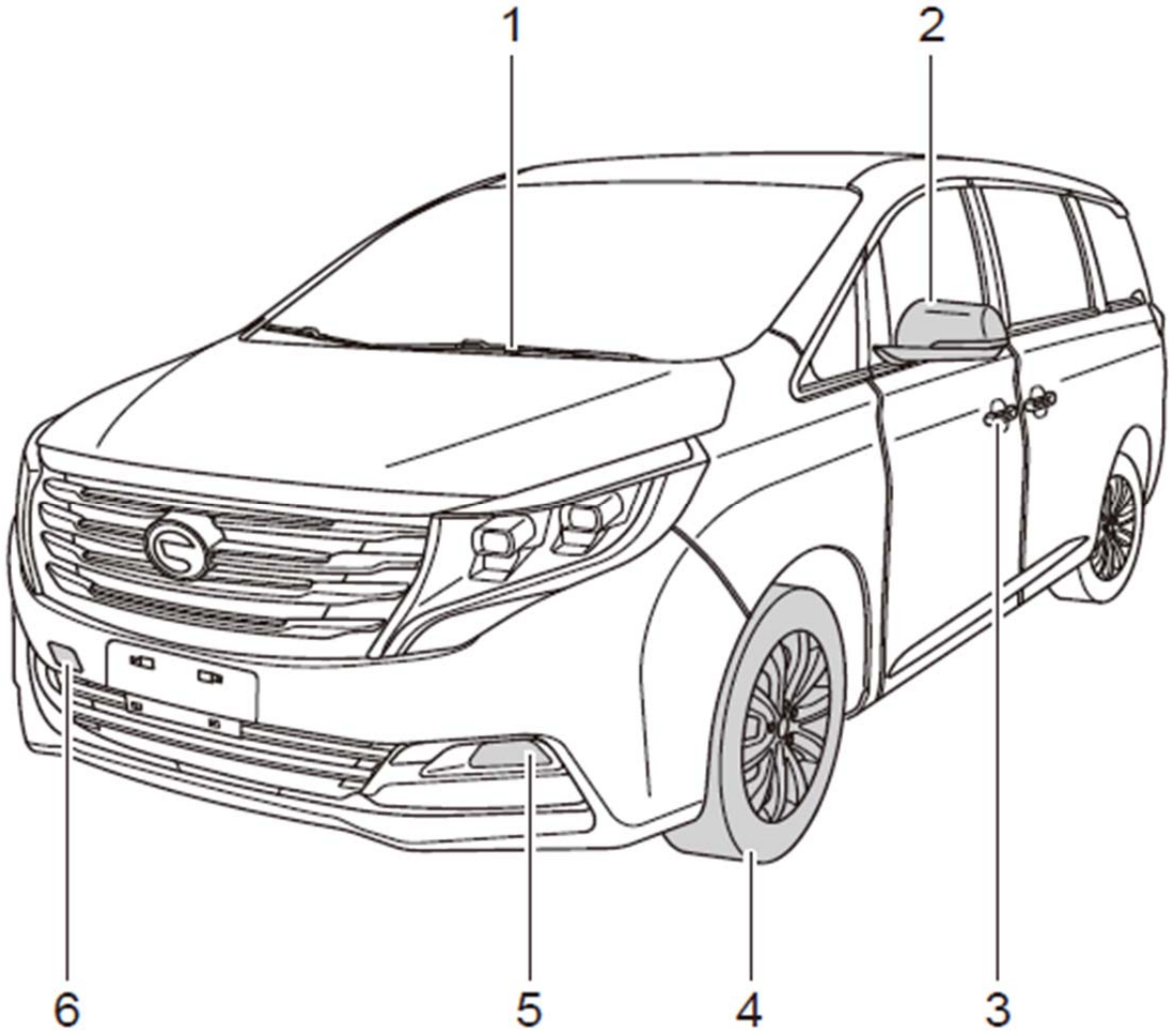
– Rear A/C control panel =>Refer to Page 165
– Electric sunshade keypad* => Refer to Page 103
– Intelligent atmosphere light button* => Refer to Page 120

2.2 Exterior



1. The front combination light consists of:
   Low beam
   Front turn signal light
   Position lights / daytime running lights
   High beam

– Turn on the light =>Refer to Page 110
– Replace the bulb=>Refer to Page 427
– Front combination light bulb specifications =>Refer to Page 456



1. Replace front windshield wiper =>Refer to Page 417
2. Exterior rear-view mirror =>Refer to Page 127

– Rear-view mirror side turn signal =>Refer to Page 110

Replace the bulb =>Refer to Page 427

Bulb specifications =>Refer to Page 456

– Guest greeting light* =>Refer to Page 115
– Intelligent guest greeting light* =>Refer to Page 116

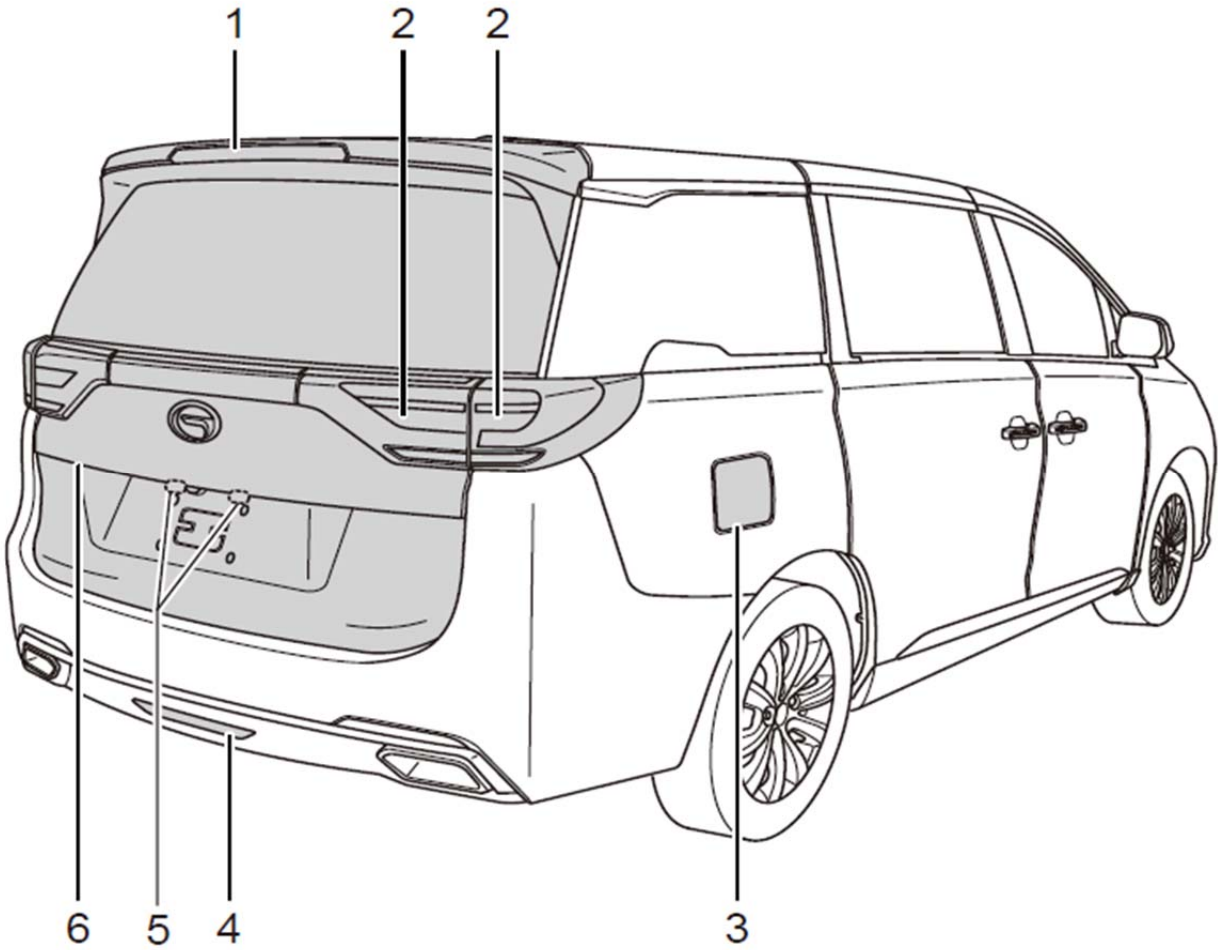
3. Keyless entry =>Refer to Page 74

– Vehicle door lock hole =>Refer to Page 83

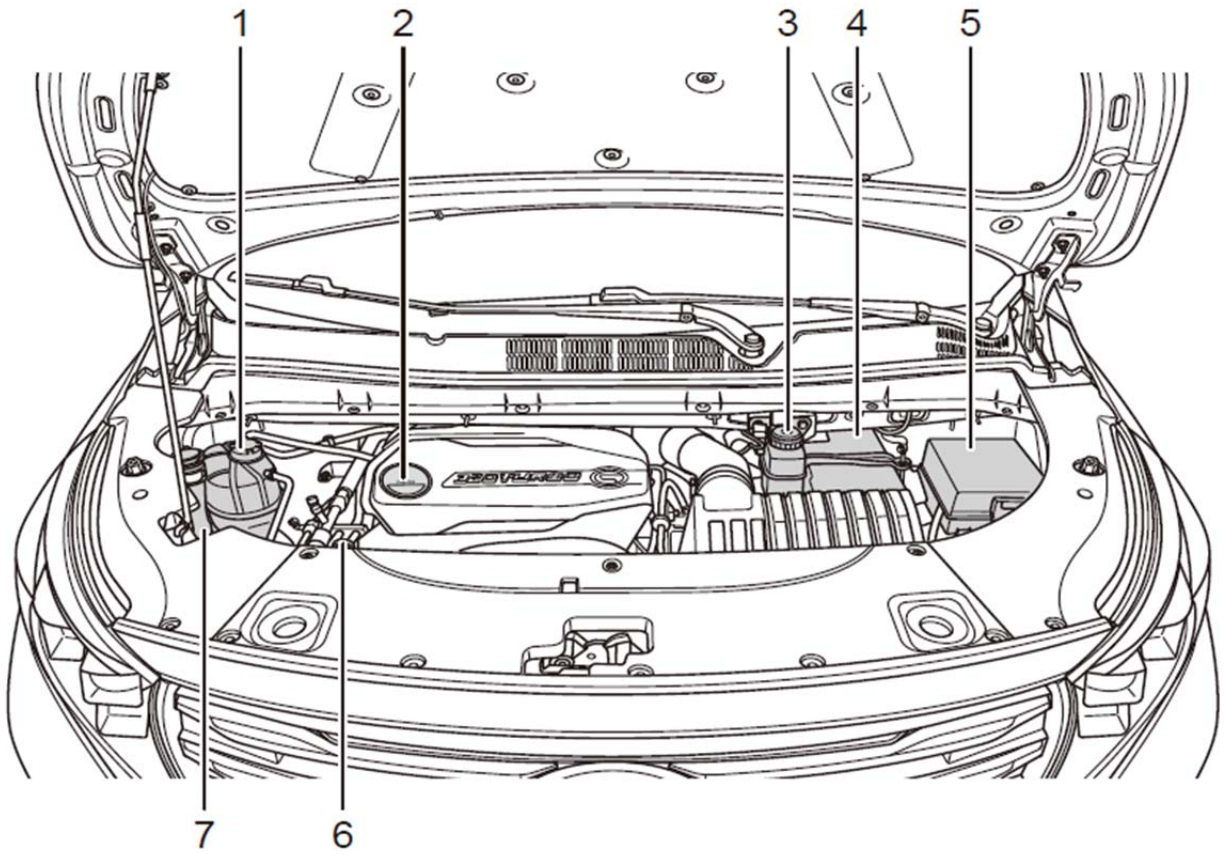
4. Wheels =>Refer to Page 439
5. Front fog light =>Refer to Page 114

– Bulb specifications =>Refer to Page 456
– Replace the bulb=>Refer to Page 427

6. Front towing =>Refer to Page 477



1. High brake light
– High brake light specifications =>Refer to Page 456
– -Replace high brake light =>Refer to Page 427
2. The rear combination light consists of:
   Rear turn signal light
   Reversing Light
   Brake light/rear position light
– Rear combination light specifications =>Refer to Page 456
– Replace the bulb =>Refer to Page 427
3. Fuel tank lid =>Refer to Page 406
4. Rear fog light =>Refer to Page 114
– Rear fog light specifications =>Refer to Page 456
– Replace the rear fog light =>Refer to Page 427
5. Number plate light
– Number plate light specifications =>Refer to Page 456
– Replace number plate light =>Refer to Page 427
6. Hatchback door =>Refer to Page 92



Engine Compartment

1. Coolant expansion tank =>Refer to Page 413
2. Engine oil filler cap =>Refer to Page 408
3. Brake fluid tank =>Refer to Page 420
4. Battery =>Refer to Page 423
5. Front engine compartment fuse box =>Refer to Page 466
6. Engine oil dipstick =>Refer to Page 408
7. Windshield washing liquid storage tank =>Refer to Page 417

3.1 Safety Driving

3.1.1 General Instructions

This section describes important information, operating essentials, recommendations and safety precautions for safety driving. For your safety and the safety of your passengers, please read it carefully and observe the relevant regulations.

Hint

Keep this User's Manual in your car. Please make sure the Manual stays with the vehicle if you lend or sell it to the next owner. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

You should do the following inspections before driving your vehicle:

– Make sure that all car lights are under normal working condition.

– Ensure sufficient fuel level.

– Ensure sufficient coolant level.

– Ensure sufficient brake fluid level.

– Ensure sufficient windshield washer fluid level.

– Make sure that tire pressure is under normal condition.

– Make sure all windows are clean and unobstructed.

– Make sure that no items obstruct the pedal movement in the footwell.

– Adjust the seats, headrest and rear view mirrors according to height and body type.

– Make sure the child is protected with suitable child seat and properly worn the seat belt.

– Wear your seat belt correctly. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts.

Warning

Please observe the following precautions when installing the driver's foot mat. Otherwise, the foot mat may slide during driving and hinder the driver's operation of the pedal, which may cause accident.

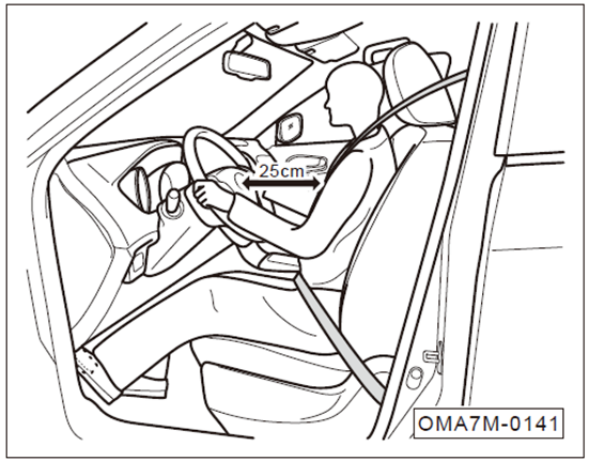
- **Never use two or more foot mats simultaneously.**
- **Never bottom up the foot mat or place it back to front.**

Caution

- Do not let yourself be distracted from driving because of external factors.
- Do not drive your vehicle when your reaction capacity weakens. Medicines, alcohol, drugs and other will impair your reaction capacity.
- Follow the traffic laws and speed limits strictly.

3.1.2 Correct Sitting Position of Occupants

Correct Sitting Position of the Driver



Correct driving position has a direct influence on driving safety and fatigue.

For the safety of yourself and the passengers, to reduce the risk of accidental injuries and deaths, the driver is recommended to do the following operation:

– Sit upright and make sure the back contacts with the seat back as much as possible.

– Adjust the driver's seat forward or backward, so that you can effectively operate all pedals with legs bent slightly.

– Adjust the steering wheel until it faces your chest to ensure that the distance between steering wheel and your chest is not less than 25cm.

– Adjust the seat backrest to proper position, so that your back can fully contact with the seat backrest.

– Lock the headrest and make its center flush with the upper part of the ear.

– Wear the seat belt correctly. => Refer to Page 18

⚠ Warning

- **Carefully adjust the seat to ensure the seat causes no injuries of other passengers when moving the seat.**
- **Your hands should always hold the steering wheel outside edge (at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions) to ensure you can see all instruments and indicator lights on the instrument cluster.**
- **Never adjust the driver's seat during driving. Otherwise, the car may be out of control.**
- **Never stretch the fingers or other body parts under the seat. Otherwise, they may be pinched by the seat.**
- **Never place any objects under the front seats. Otherwise, these objects may be jammed between the seat and guide rail, hindering from locking the seat and causing an accident.**

Correct Sitting Position of Front Passenger

To ensure the safety of front passenger and reduce the risk of accidental injury and death, front passenger should do the following operations:

– The front passenger should adjust the seat as far as possible, leave suitable distance between his/her chest and the instrument panel, so as to get the most safety protection when airbag is triggered.

– Adjust the headrest properly.

– Adjust the seat backrest to proper position, so that your back can fully contact with the seat backrest.

– Wear the seat belt correctly. => Refer to Page 18

– Keep feet in the footwell in front of the front seat.

⚠ Warning

- **If the front passenger sits too close to the instrument panel, he/ she cannot get effective protection from airbags.**
- **While driving, do not allow the front passenger to put his/her feet on the instrument panel, outside the window or on the seat. But always keep his/her feet in the footwell. Otherwise, he/she can be injured easily during emergency braking or in a crash.**
- **While driving, do not recline the backrest too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting position to avoid injury caused by emergency braking.**

Correct Sitting Position of Rear Passengers

To ensure the safety of rear seat passengers and reduce the risk of accidental injuries and deaths, rear seat passengers should do the following matters:

– Adjust the headrest properly.

– Sit upright and make sure the back contacts with seat back as much as possible.

– Keep feet in the footwell in front of the rear seat.

– Wear the seat belt correctly. =>Refer to Page 18

– Whenever an infant or child rides in your car, be sure to use suitable child safety seat to protect the infant or child in accordance with the relevant provisions.=>Refer to 34

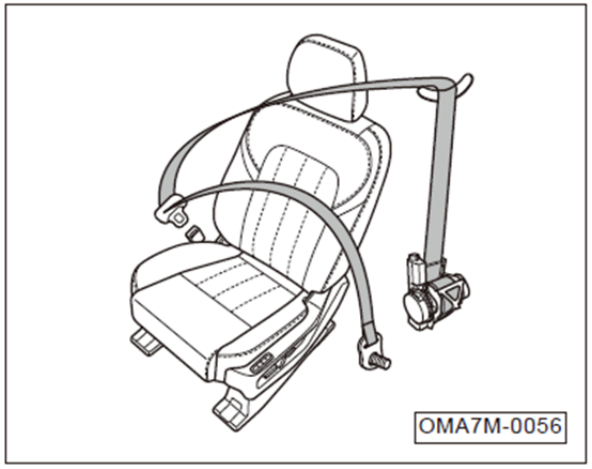
⚠ Warning

Sitting improperly or wearing the seat belts improperly can increase the chance of injury during an accident.

3.2 Seat Belts

3.2.1 Why Wear Seat Belts

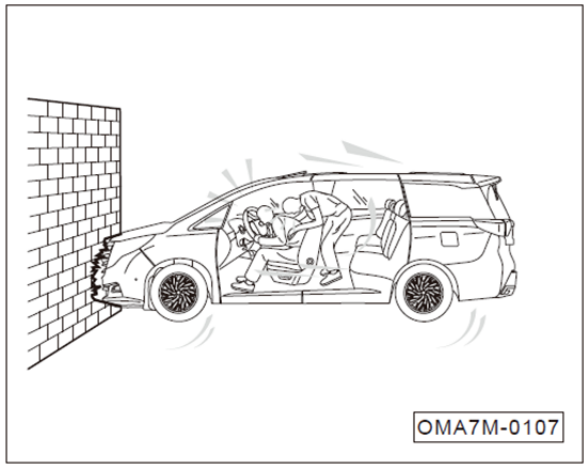
Protection from Seat Belts



In case of crash, correctly wearing seat belts can restrict the driver and passengers at proper positions, reducing inertia of forward motion, to prevent loss of control of motion and being ejected out of the vehicle, and minimize injury due to impact.

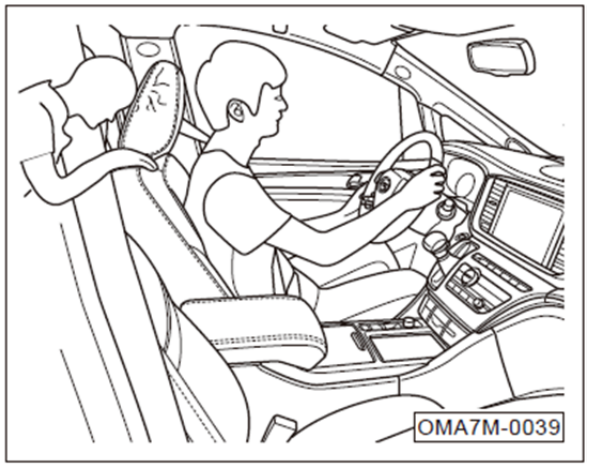
The seat belts can absorb most of the kinetic energy resulting from a collision. In addition, the crumple zones and other passive safety systems can absorb the energy at the same time to reduce the risk of injury further together with the seat belts.

Consequences arising from not Wearing Seat Belts



After a collision, the occupants not wearing the seat belts still move forward due to inertia at the speed before the collision, but the vehicle dose not. Thus, the occupants would be seriously injured.

Even if the car is at low speed, the force exerted on human body, when a collision occurs, is big, and the passenger cannot control his own body by hands. The unrestrained passengers will be thrown forward and injured once colliding with other objects in the car.



The rear passengers can be thrown forward during an accident. The rear seat passengers not wearing the seat belts can be injured and endanger other occupants.

⚠ Warning

Airbags do not replace your seat belts. Whether the airbag is equipped or not, it is essential to make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.

3.2.2 Seat Belt

Seat Belt Indicator Light

Driver seat belt indicator light ( )

If the driver has not worn the seat belt with the Start switch at the “ON” position, the driver seat belt telltale on the instrument cluster illuminates and text appears to remind the driver to wear the seat belt.

Front passenger seat belt indicator light ( )

If the front passenger has not yet worn the seat belt with the Start switch at the “ON” position, the front passenger seat belt telltale on the instrument cluster illuminates and text appears to remind the front passenger to wear the seat belt.

Caution

Before starting driving, check the front seat and make sure there is no heavy on the seat to prevent the system from mistaking that there is occupant on it and giving a false alarm.

When the Start switch is at "ON" position and the vehicle speed is lower than 20km/h, if the driver or front passenger does not fasten his/her seat belt, the corresponding indicator light on the instrument cluster will flash about 6s and then stay on.

Caution

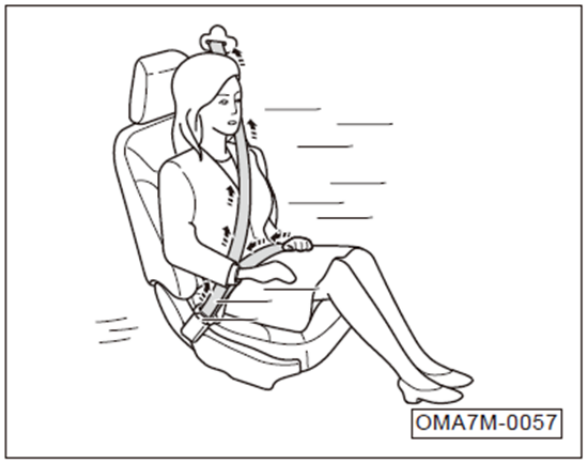
When the seat belt device fails, the indicator light will also flash about 6s and then stay on. In this case, please go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your vehicle checked and repaired.

When the Start is at "ON" position and the vehicle speed is not lower than 20km/h, if the driver or the front passenger does not fasten the seat belt, the corresponding indicator light on the instrument cluster will flash about 20s and then stay on, and the beeper also sounds until the seal belt is fastened.

Caution

When the seat belt device fails, the indicator light will also flash about 20s and then stay on, and the beeper also sounds. In this case, please go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your vehicle checked and repaired.

Seat Belt Pretensioner Equipment



The pretensioner equipment can reduce the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the chest and improve the protection performance.

– The seat belt restrains the driver and passengers to sit in a suitable position, preventing the body over tilting forward before the collision.

– The seat belt pretensioners will be activated by the electronic control unit in the event of a severe collision, and then the pretensioner will drive the seatbelt webbing tighten by immediate pulling back.

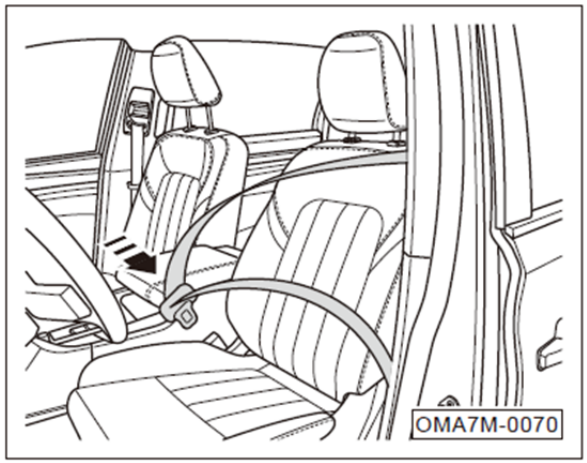
– In the event of collision, the driver's body will move forward then the seat belt pretensioners activate, to make the restraining force to the body at a certain range, preventing a further injury towards the driver; at the same time, the seat belt pretensioners activate in conjunction with the airbag to provide an optimal protection.

Hint

When being initiated, the pretensioner equipment releases little harmless smoke and generates sound, which is normal.

After collision, initiated pretensioner equipment cannot be reused, and the airbag warning light is continuously on. Please contact GAC MOTOR dealer for replacement.

Wear Front Seat Belts



– Properly adjust the front seat. =>Refer to Page 136

– Properly adjust the headrest. =>Refer to Page 134

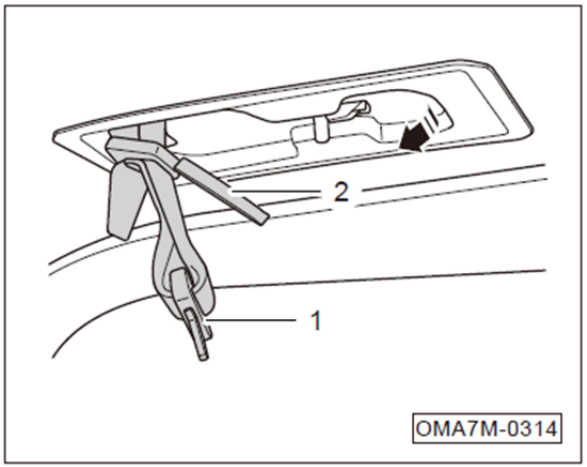
– Gradually draw the seat belt out at constant speed. Insert the latch plate into the corresponding buckle until you hear a click.

– Pull the lock tongue to ensure that it is properly locked.

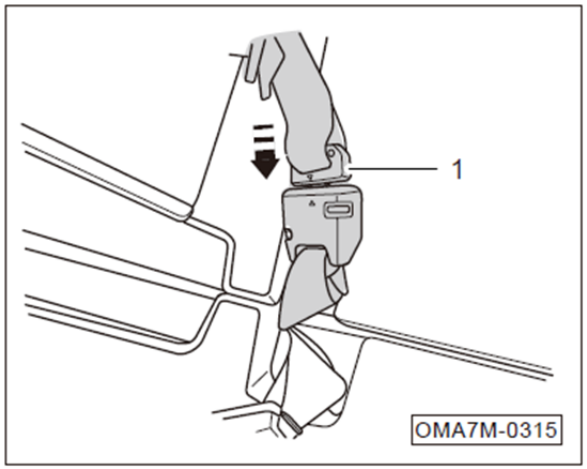
Hint

The methods for wearing the seat belts at the front row are the same as and can be basically referred for those at both sides of the second row/third row.

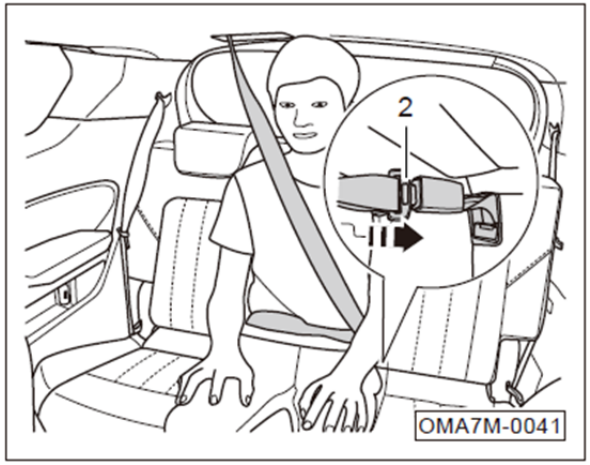
Wear Middle Seat Belt at the Third Row



1. Draw out the small lock tongue ① and the lock tongue ② of the seat belt from the hold-down groove of the roof.

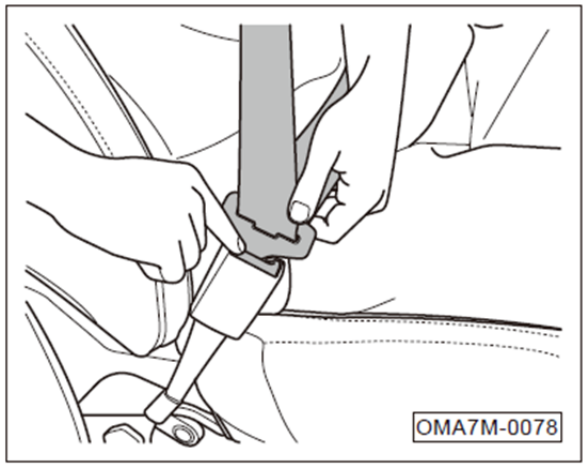


2. Align the small lock tongue ① with the triangular sign on the fixer buckle. Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted. Insert the small lock tongue ① of the seat belt into the fixer buckle.



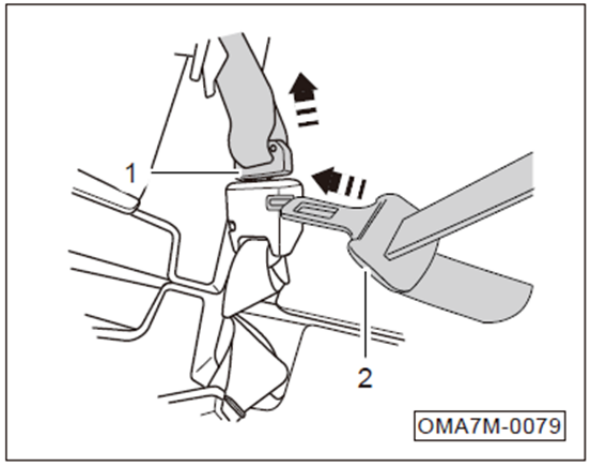
3. Insert the seat belt lock ② into corresponding buckle until you hear a click.
4. Pull the lock tongue to ensure that it is properly locked.

Unbuckle the Seat Belt



– When the red PRESS button near the buckle is pushed, the latch plate pops up automatically.
– Grasp the belt so that it retracts gradually.

Unfasten Middle Seat Belt at the Third Row

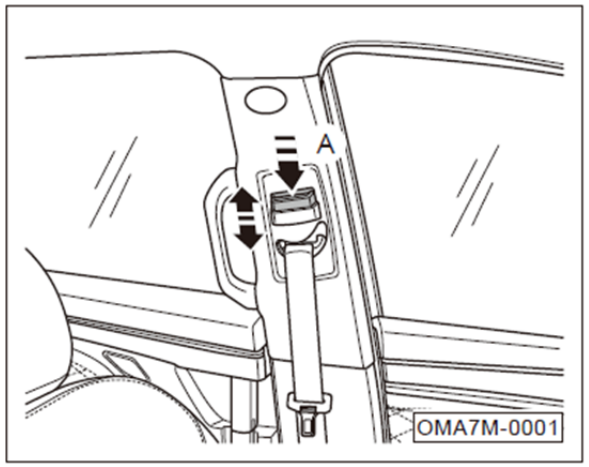


– When the red PRESS button near the buckle is pushed, the latch plate ② pops up automatically.

– Insert the latch plate ② into the slot at the side of the fixer buckle; in this case, the small lock tongue ① pops up automatically.

– Grasp the belt so that it retracts gradually.

Adjust Seat Belt Height



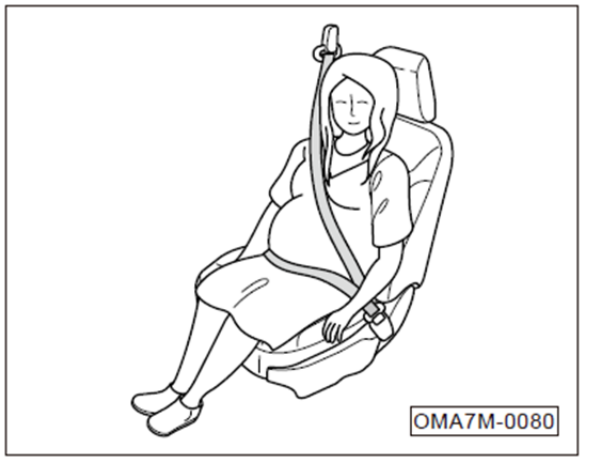
– Hold the guide part and move it up and down to adjust the seat belt to the desired height.

– Press the belt guide part in the direction of arrow A and more down to adjust the seat belt to the desired height.

– Release the seat belt guide part.

– After the completion of adjustment, check whether the guide part is securely locked.

A Pregnant Woman Must Wear Seat Belt Correctly



– Adjust the front seat and its headrest to the desired position.

– Hold the latch plate and pull the shoulder part of the belt to go across your shoulder slowly, and position the waist part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, not across your abdomen.

– Insert the latch plate into the corresponding buckle until you hear a click.

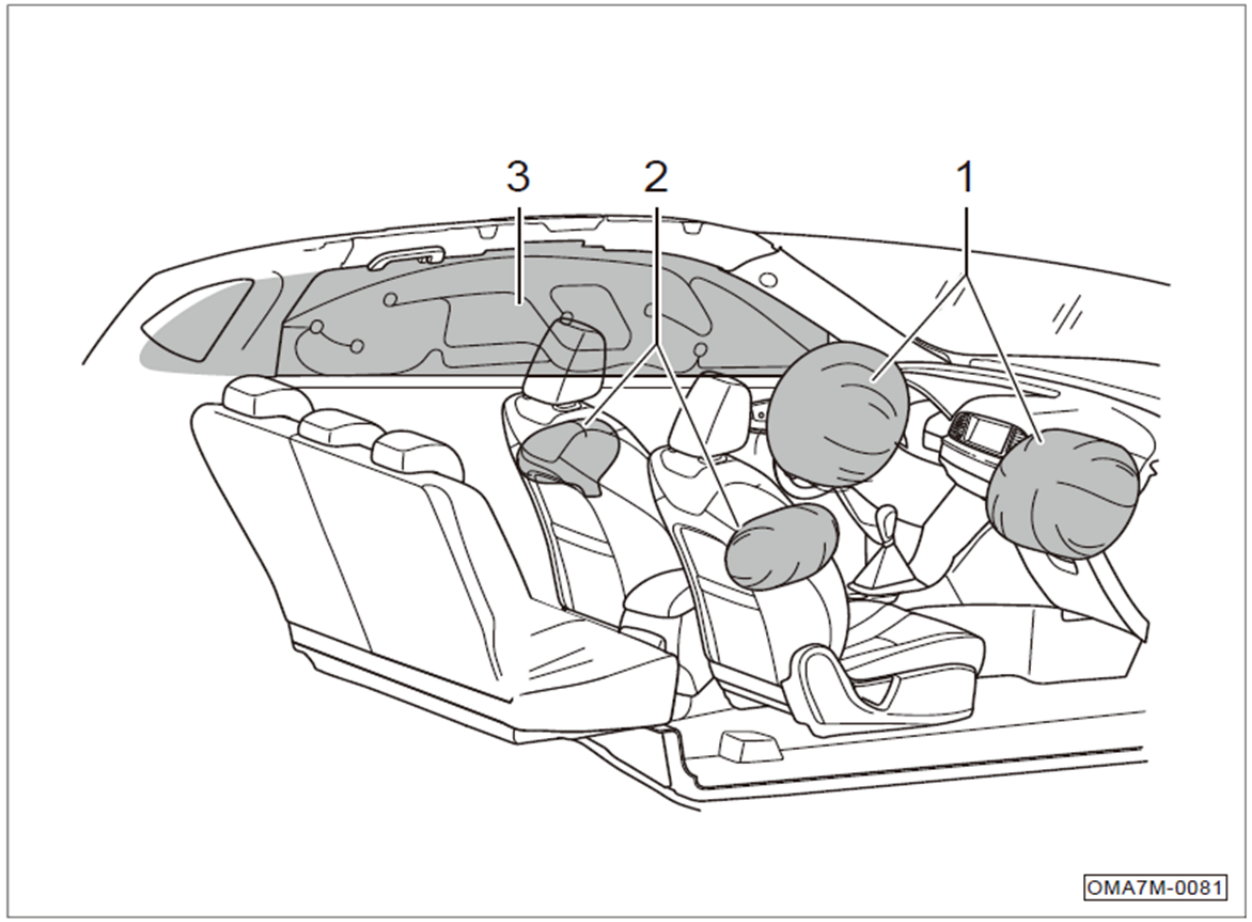
– Pull up the shoulder part of the belt parallel to your upper body, and tug on the hip part of the belt to make sure that the latch plate is locked securely.

⚠ Warning

To reduce injury risk of the occupants in case of emergency braking or accident, please observe the following precautions:

- **Be sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly before driving.**
- **Never share the seat belt. Two people (including children) should never use the same seat belt.**
- **Never excessively incline the front seat backrest for comfort.**
- **Never put the shoulder part of the seat belt below or behind the arm.**
- **Be sure to insert the latch plate into its own buckle. Never insert it into other buckles.**
- **Do not unfasten the seat belt until the vehicle is completely stationary.**

3.3 SRS System



Depending on the configuration, the SRS system consists of the following airbags:

1. Front seat frontal airbag
2. Front seat side airbag
3. Side curtain airbag*

3.3.1 SRS Indicator

The airbag is monitored by electric monitoring system located in airbag control unit. Switch the Start switch to the "ON" position, the indicator light illuminates for a few seconds then extinguishes after self-checking.

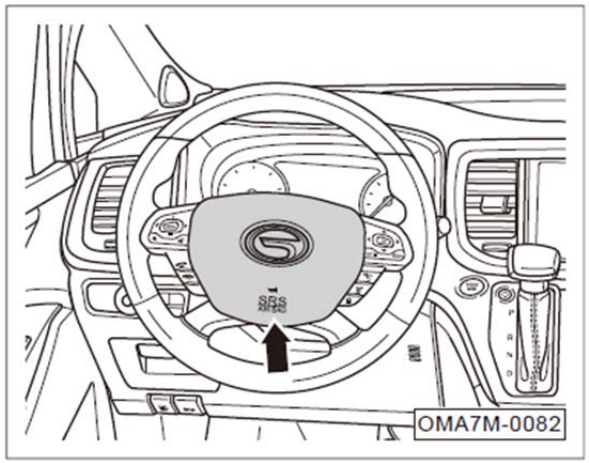
The SRS indicator light indicates a fault developing in the system in one of the following conditions:

1. After the Start switch is switched to "ON" position, the indicator light does not illuminate.
2. After the Start switch is switched to "ON" position, the indicator light stays illuminated.
3. After the Start switch is switched to "ON" position, the indicator light illuminates again after turning off.
4. When the vehicle is running, the indicator light will be illuminated or flash.

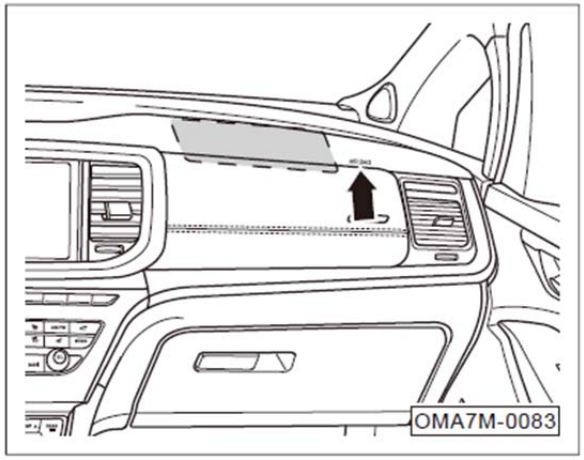
⚠ Warning

- **Do not repair, adjust or modify any airbags by yourself without authorization.**
- **An airbag inflates only once. If the airbag ever inflates during a crash, it must be replaced by a GAC MOTOR dealer.**
- **If the SRS system fails, go to your authorized GAC MOTOR dealer immediately to have the system checked/repaired. Otherwise, the control unit system may not trigger the airbags or trigger the airbags abnormally during a collision.**

3.3.2 Front Seat Frontal Airbag



The driver's frontal airbag is installed in the center of the steering wheel (indicated by the arrow), and the airbag is marked by "SRS AIRBAG".



The front passenger frontal airbag is installed inside the dashboard (dotted dash area), and the mark of airbag is shown by the arrow "AIR BAG".

When the vehicle has a severe frontal collision and the trigger condition is reached, the frontal airbag inflates immediately in conjunction with the seat belt to provide additional protection to the head and chest of front passengers.

The system may activate the airbag at other positions when some type of collision occurs.

Hint

When the airbags inflate, you may see what looks like smoke. This is a normal phenomenon.

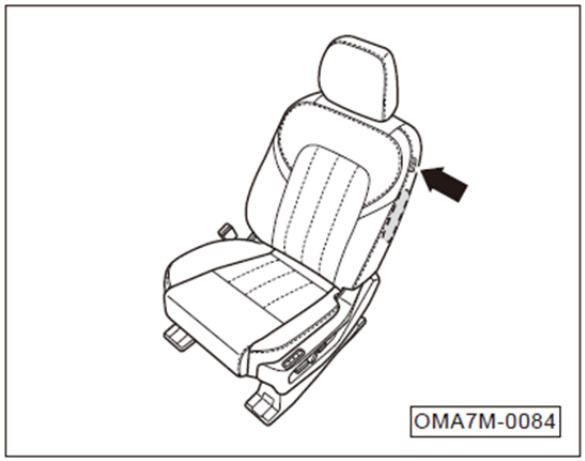
The frontal airbags may not be triggered in one of the following conditions:

- Start switch is at the "ACC" or "OFF" position.
- Minor frontal collision;
- Side collision;
- Rear collision;
- Rollover;
- Other special conditions.

Hint

"Minor" is based on the feeling of the vehicle controller, regardless of the extent of damage to the vehicle.

3.3.3 Front Seat Side Airbag



The front seat side airbag is installed inside the driver's seat and front passenger's seat back against the door (dotted dash area), the mark of the airbag is shown by the arrow "AIRBAG".

When the vehicle has a severe side collision and the trigger condition is reached, the side airbag inflates immediately in conjunction with the seat belt to provide additional protection to the upper body of front occupants.

The system may activate the airbag at other positions when some type of collision occurs.

Hint

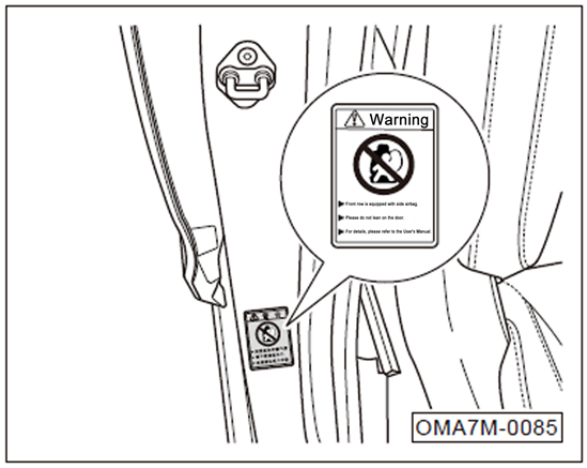
When the airbags inflate, you may see what looks like smoke. This is a normal phenomenon.

The side airbags may not be triggered in one of the following conditions:

- Start switch is at the "ACC" or "OFF" position.
- Frontal collision;
- Minor side collision;
- Rear collision;
- Other special conditions.

Hint

"Minor" is based on the feeling of the vehicle controller, regardless of the extent of damage to the vehicle.

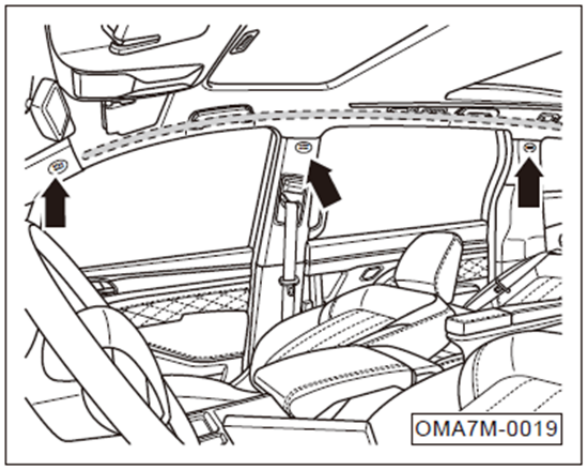


⚠ Warning

Please notice the warnings on the door side. Do not lean on the door side where any side airbag is installed during driving.

Never cover the side airbag with seat cover or other objects so that the side airbag fails in case of an accident.

3.3.4 Side Curtain Airbag*



The side curtain airbag is installed inside the right and left side of the roof (dotted dash area), the mark of airbag is shown by the arrow "CURTAIN AIRBAG".

When the vehicle has a severe side collision and the trigger condition is reached, the side curtain airbag inflates immediately in conjunction with the seat belt to provide additional protection to the upper body of occupants.

The system may activate the airbag at other positions when some type of collision occurs.

Hint

When the side curtain airbag inflates, you may see what looks like smoke. This is a normal phenomenon. Do not worry about it.

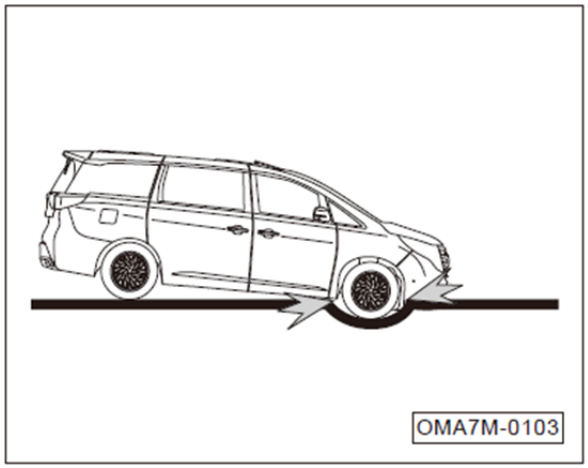
The side curtain SRS system may not be triggered in the following conditions:

- Start switch is at the "ACC" or "OFF" position.
- Frontal collision;
- Minor side collision;
- Rear collision;
- Other special conditions.

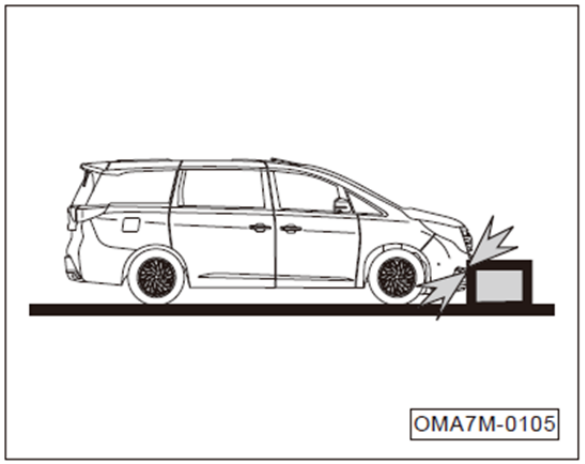
Hint

“Minor” is based on the feeling of the vehicle controller, regardless of the extent of damage to the vehicle.

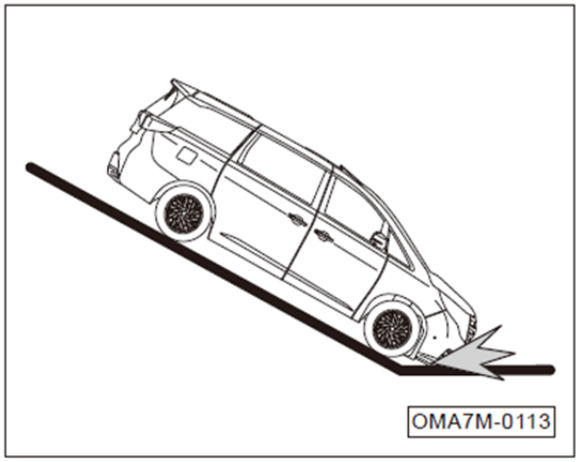
3.3.5 Cases When Airbags Could Deploy



– The vehicle front collides with the ground when the vehicle wheels are attempting to pass over a deep trough.

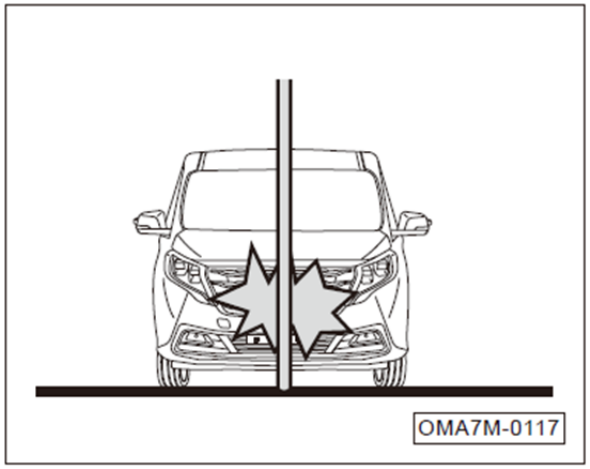


– The vehicle collides with an obstacle or street curb, etc.

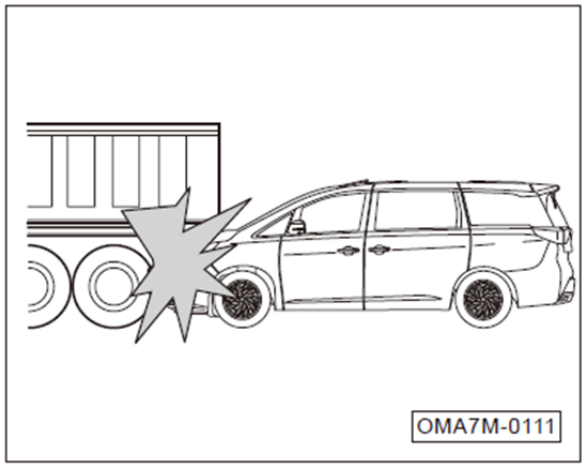


– The vehicle front collides with the ground when the vehicle is travelling down a steep slope.

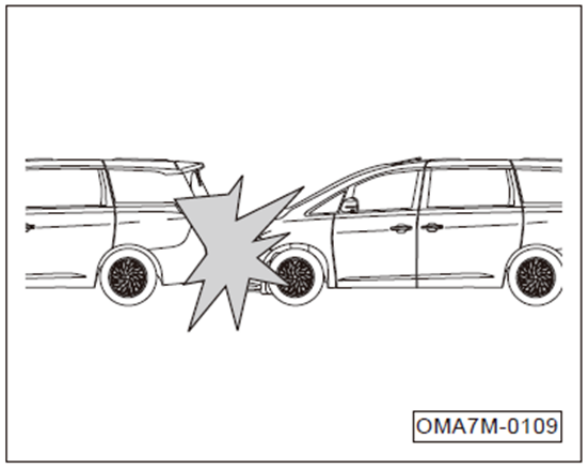
3.3.6 Cases When Airbags Could Not Deploy



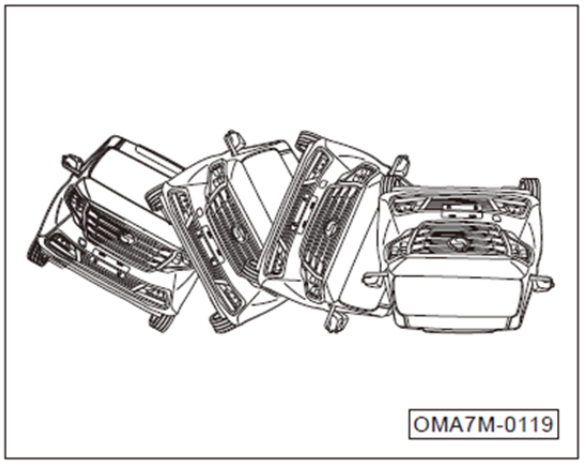
– The vehicle collides with a concrete structure, pillar, tree, or other vimineous object.



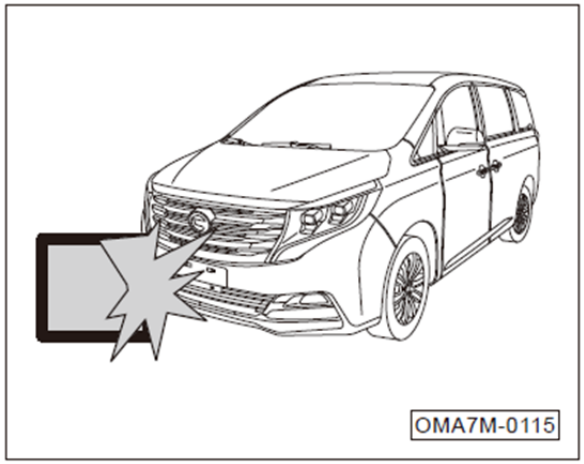
– The vehicle collides with the tail of a large truck.



– Another vehicle collides with your vehicle from behind.



– The vehicle laterally rolls over.



– The corner of the vehicle collides with the wall or another vehicle.

3.4 Safety Rules for Children

3.4.1 General Instructions

Before installing the child safety seat in the second row, adjust the front seat to the desired position according to the child seat size and the child's body type. This will help keep the child restrained in the second row from striking the interior sharp objects of the car during a crash or emergency braking. Moreover, this will also prevent the child from being injured due to the airbags inflating. Never hold an infant or child on your lap!

To properly wear a seat belt through a child seat, following the seat manufacturer's instructions. Keep the child seat instructions together with the vehicle documents in your car so you can refer to it at any time.

The safety signboards are on the sun visors. They warn you of the front passenger frontal airbag's potential hazards. Read these signboards carefully and follow their instructions.

⚠ Warning

Do not use a child restraint system against the driving direction on a seat protected by a frontal airbag (activated)!

Even if the child is seated in the child protective device, never let her/his head or any body part lean on the door area (the deployment area of the front seat side airbag or side curtain airbag*) as it is risky when any of these airbags inflates, and the impact may cause serious injury, even death of the child.

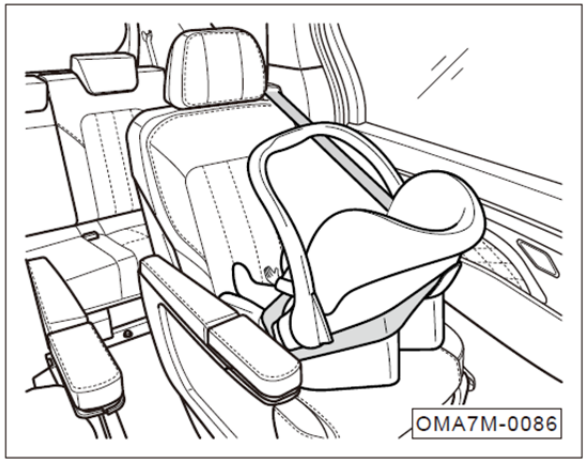
⚠ Warning

- **Don't let the child stand or kneel on the seat.**
- **Don't let the child operate any equipment that may clamp their body part, such as electric window and sunroof.**
- **Never leave the child in the car alone.**
- **Never leave the child or pet in the enclosed car exposed to sunlight.**
- **The seat belt is unsuitable for any infant. The shoulder part of seat belt is too close to the infant's face or neck. In case of an accident, this may cause serious or even death of the infant.**

3.4.2 Child Safety Seat

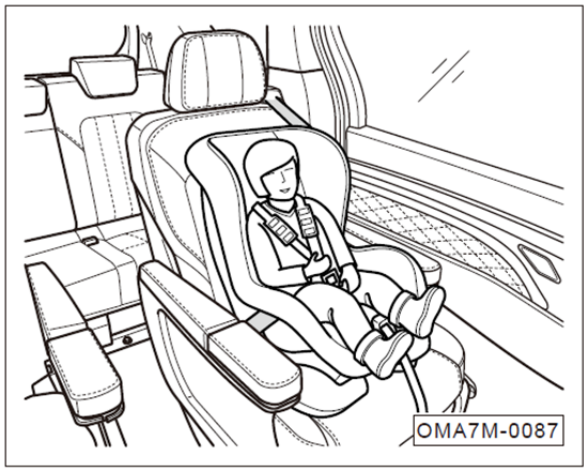
Child Seat Classification (For Reference Only):

a. Group 0/0+ child safety seats:



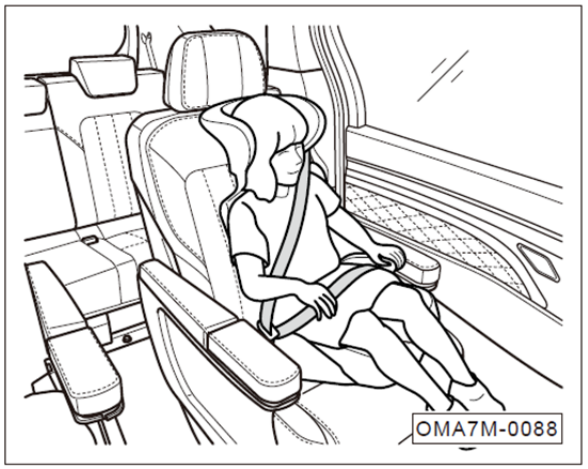
For infants or babies less than 13kg.

b. Group I child safety seats:



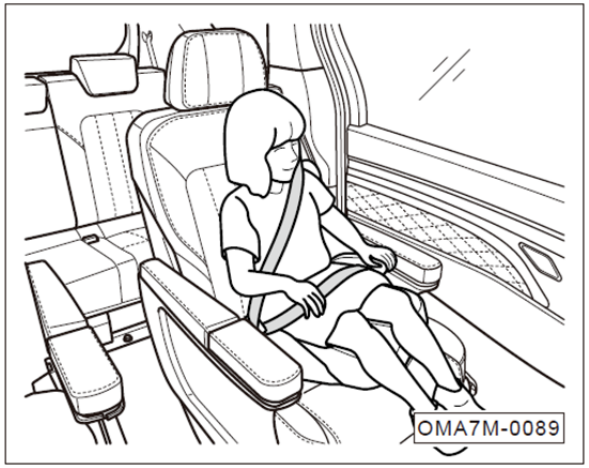
For infants or babies within 9kg~18kg;

c. Group II child safety seats:



For children within 15kg~25kg;

d. Group III child safety seats:



For children within 22kg~36kg;

3.4.3 Information about Child Safety Seat

Applicability of different riding positions to child restraint system:

Mass group	Position to fix the system		
	Front passenger seat	Second-row seats	Third-row seats
Group 0: <10kg	X	U	X
Group 0+: <13kg	X	U	X
Group I: 9~18kg	X	U/UF	X
Group II:15~25kg	X	UF	X
Group III: 22~36kg	X	UF	X

Notes: **Meanings of the letters in the table:**

U= Permitting use of "General" child safety seats in this mass group

UF= Permitting use of "General" front-facing child safety seats in this mass group

X= Not applicable for use of child safety seats

Dimension ranges may be specified for some child safety seats. Find the dimension range from the manufacturer's instructions, packaging, or child safety seats. For how to correctly install the child safety seats, refer to their use instructions.

ISOFIX child safety seats anchoring points

Mass group	Size	Anchoring module	Position to fix the system		
			Front passenger seat	The Second Row Seat	Third-row seats
Portable infant bed	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X
Group 0: <10kg	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X
Group 0+: <13kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
Group I: 9~18kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	X
Group II:15~25kg	—	—	X	—	X
Group III: 22~36kg	—	—	X	—	X

Notes: **Meanings of the letters in the table:**

IUF—General type ISOFIX child safety seats, front-facing and fixed using upward tensioning straps.

IL—Special type ISOFIX child restraint systems, which may be those used for special vehicles, or restricted, or semi-general.

X= Not applicable for use of child safety seats.

Dimension ranges may be specified for some child safety seats. Find the dimension range from the manufacturer's instructions, packaging, or child safety seats. For how to correctly install the child safety seats, refer to their use instructions.

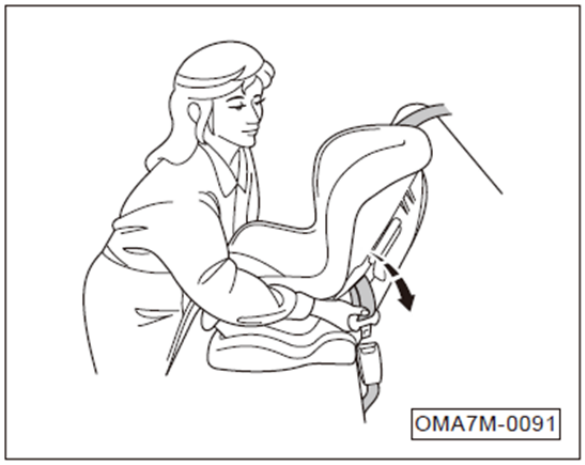
3.4.4 Install a Child Seat Properly

Child seat generally has three types of installations, i.e. three-point seat belt, ISOFIX system, and LATCH system. The installation of three-point seat belt is that using its own seat belts to tighten the child seat, as shown in the figure "Child Seat Classifications". Installation of ISOFIX and LATCH system is that using the child seat fixing device to fasten and lock with the remaining anchor points in the car.

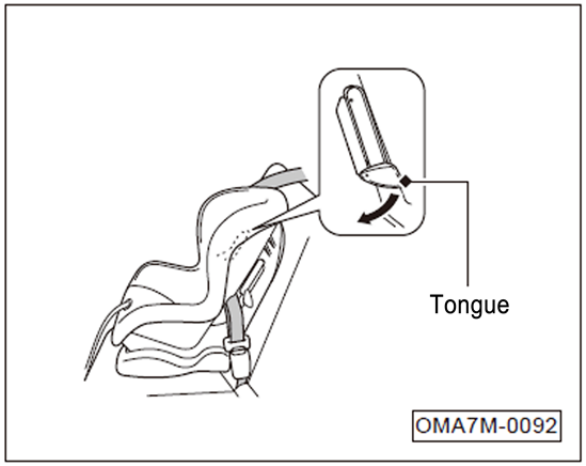
Hint

Method for installing a certain kind of child safety seats is introduced here only for reference purpose. When installing child safety seats, be sure to refer to their use instructions and observe the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer.

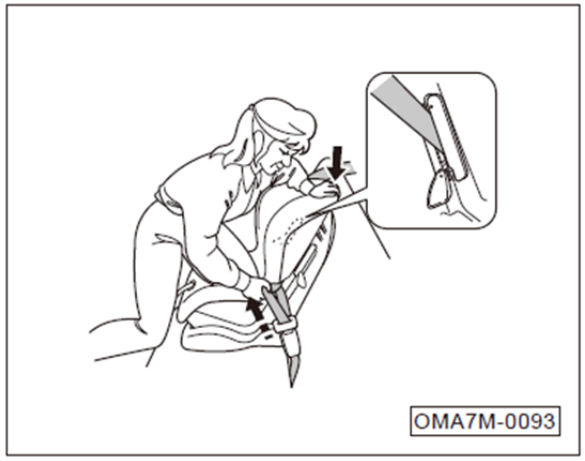
Installing the Child Safety Seat Using the Three-Point Seat Belt



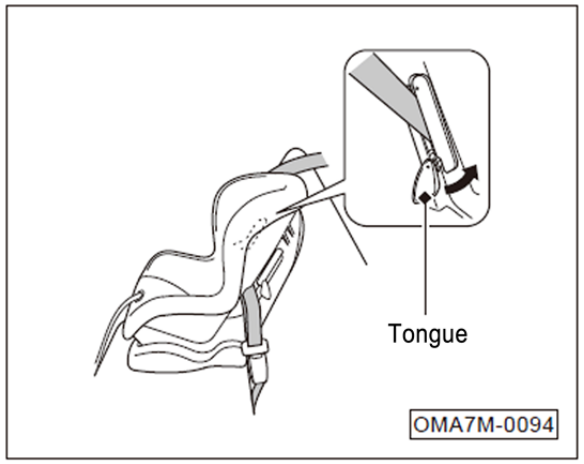
1. Place the child safety seat on the second-row seat.
2. According to the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt through the child safety seat, and push the latch plate into buckle until it clicks.



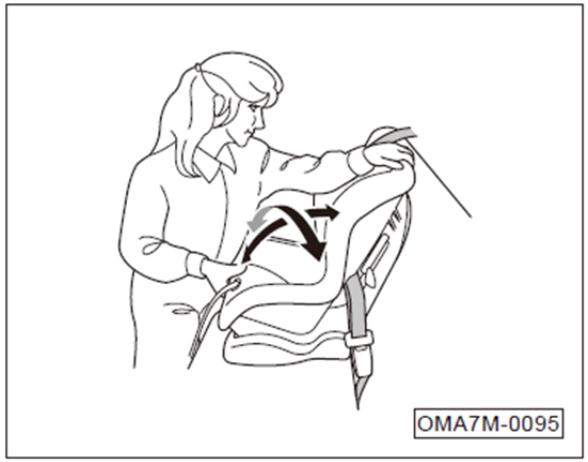
3. Push downward the tongue. Pass the shoulder part of seat belt through the narrow gap on the side of child safety seat.



4. Hold the shoulder part of seat belt near the buckle, and pull it upward so that the lap part of seat belt is no longer loose. Press the safety seat using your own weight and push it in the seat.

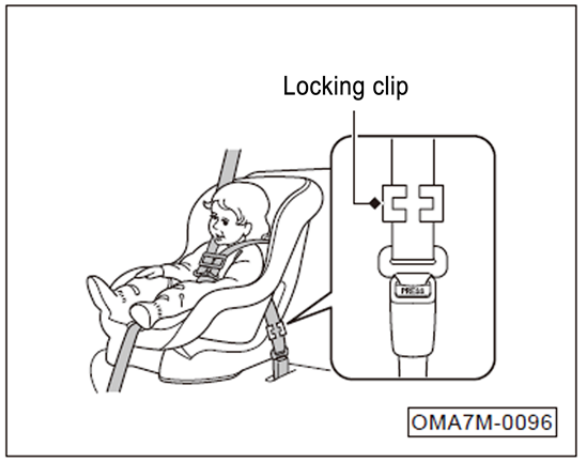


5. Place the seat belt correctly and push upward the tongue. Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted. While pushing upward the tongue, pull upward the upper shoulder part of seat belt so that the seat belt is no longer loose.



6. Shake the child safety seat forward and backward, leftward and rightward to ensure it is securely anchored.

7. Ensure that all unused seat belts within reach of children are locked.



If the child safety seat has no means for fixing the seat belt, install a locking clip to the seat belt.

– With steps 1 and 2 completed, pull upward the shoulder part of seat belt so that the lap part of seat belt is no longer loose.

– Tightly hold the seat belt near the latch plate. Hold together the two parts of seat belt so that they cannot slide out of the latch plate. Release the seat belt from the buckle.

Install the locking clip as shown in the figure. With the clip as close to the latch plate as possible, insert the latch plate in the buckle. Perform steps 6 and 7.

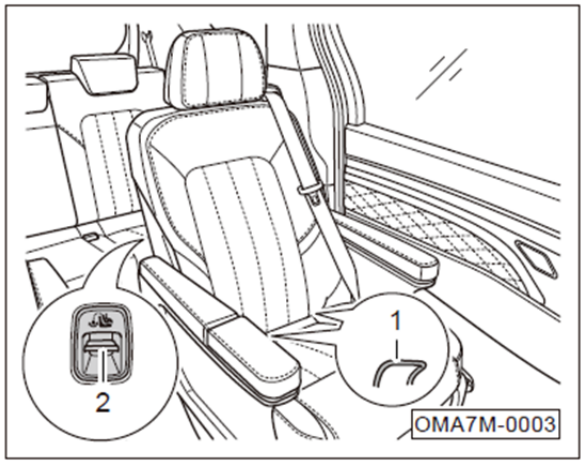
Install the ISOFIX System or LATCH System

The installing methods for both ISOFIX system and LATCH system are similar, LATCH system has one more anchor point than ISOFIX system, but the lower anchor point for both systems can be interchangeable. The seats in the second row for this car are equipped with LATCH system. Therefore, both LATCH and ISOFIX child seat can be installed.

⚠ Warning

When driving, be sure to restrain the child in the child seat suitable for the child's weight and body type.

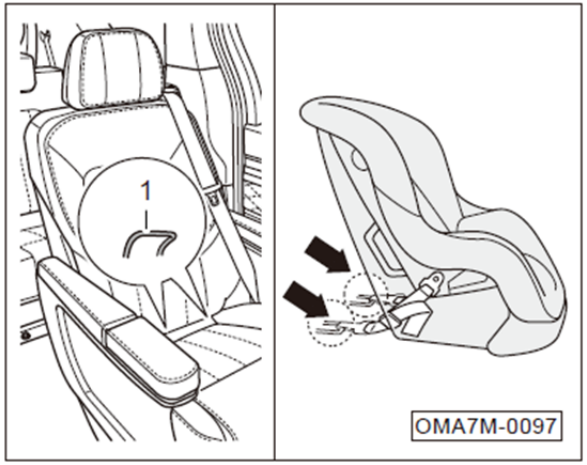
- **The anchoring device for child seat of this car can only be used to fix the child seat.**
- **Do not connect any other things like fastening belt, hard or sharp objects or other things other than child seat items to the anchoring device. Otherwise, it may endanger the child's life when accident occurs.**



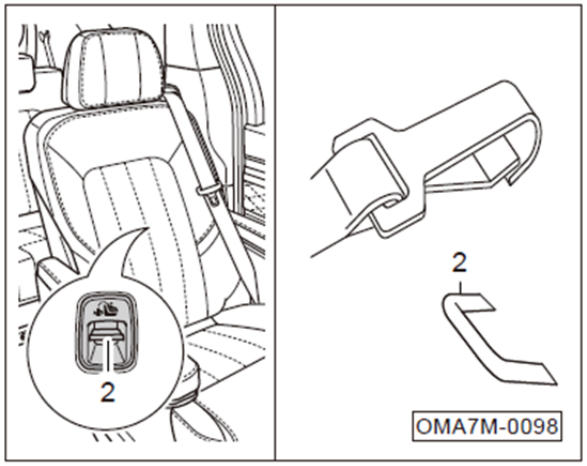
i Hint

The lower anchoring point ① of the second-row seats is hid in the gap between the seat backrest and cushion. Manually expanding the gap, you can see the upper anchoring point ② at the rear of the seat backrest.

Be sure to remove/install the child safety seats in accordance with the manufacturer's Instructions. The installation instructions for LATCH system child seat are mainly introduced as follows:



1. Place the child safety seat on the seat. Find the lower anchor point ①. Insert the lower guide slot (see the arrows) into the lower anchor point ① in the gap until it clicks.



2. Raise the headrest to the upmost position. Pass the anchoring strap through the headrest support to engage the upper anchor point ②. Ensure that the anchoring strap is not twisted.
3. Tension the anchoring strap. Shake the child safety seat forward and backward, leftward and rightward to ensure it is securely anchored.
4. Ensure that all unused seat belts within reach of children are locked.

3.5 Dangerous Exhaust Gases

Carbon Monoxide

Exhaust gases from the engine of this car contain carbon monoxide, a colorless odorless very toxic gas. As long as you can correctly maintain and use the car, carbon monoxide will not enter the interior of car.

In the following cases, the exhaust system must be checked for leakage:

– Abnormal noise coming out of exhaust system

– Abnormal color of exhaust gases coming out of exhaust system

Driving with the trunk open can cause exhaust gases entering the car resulting in danger. If you have to drive with the trunk open, open all windows and turn on the air conditioning system.

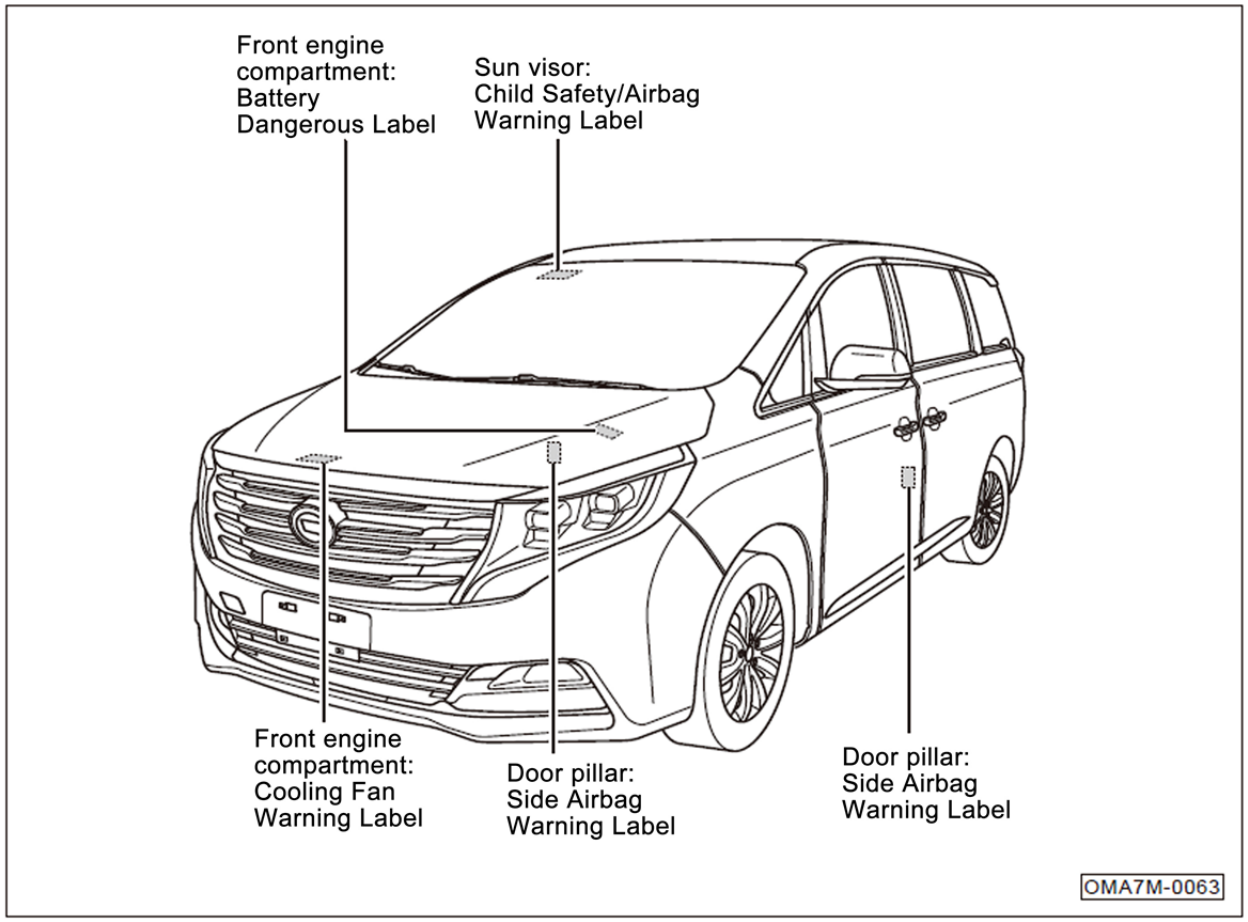
1. Select the external air circulation mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to maximum.

If you sit in the car with the engine running, operate the air conditioning system in the same manner.

⚠ Warning

- **Inhaling carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness, even death.**
- **Do not run the engine in confined areas, which will result in high content of carbon monoxide inside the car.**
- **Running the engine in confined areas (such as garage) can cause rapid buildup of carbon monoxide. • Never start the engine for a long time with the garage door closed. Even if the garage door is open, drive away immediately.**

3.6 Safety Labels


Front engine compartment: Battery Dangerous Label
Sun visor: Child Safety/Airbag Warning Label
Front engine compartment: Cooling Fan Warning Label
Door pillar: Side Airbag Warning Label
Door pillar: Side Airbag Warning Label
OMA7M-0063

Shown in the figure are examples of the locations of labels. These labels are intended to indicate potential risks that could cause serious injury even death. Read these labels carefully.

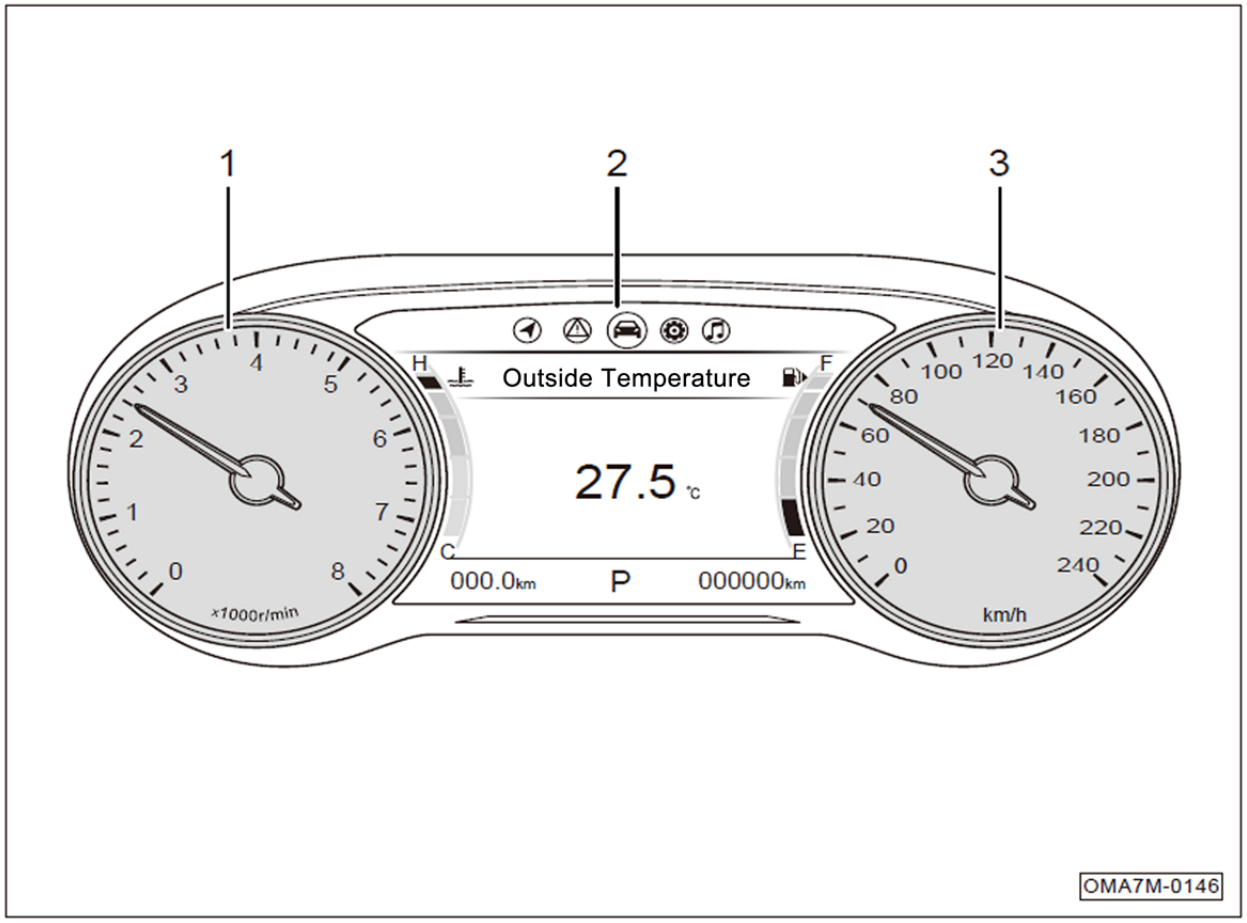
If any label comes off or becomes illegible, contact a GAC MOTOR dealer for replacement.

Hint

Note that actual locations and quantities of labels may be different from those shown in the figure.

4.1 Cab

4.1.1 Instrument Cluster

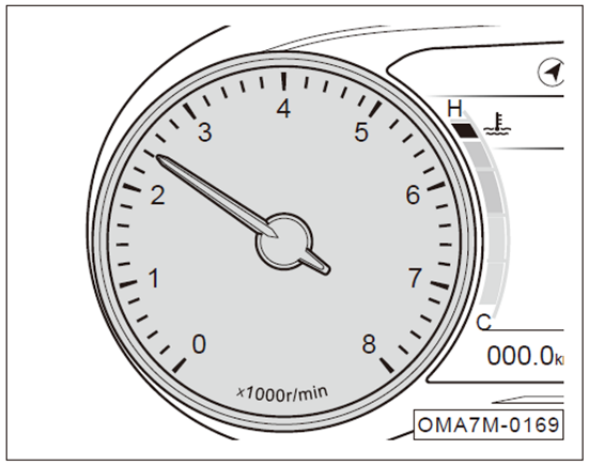


1. Engine tachometer
2. Instrument cluster display

– Included information: engine coolant temperature gauge, fuel gauge, travel information, menu setting information, navigation information*, audio and entertainment system information*, door opening indication, gear display, mileage and graphic & text alarm information.

3. Speedometer

Engine Tachometer

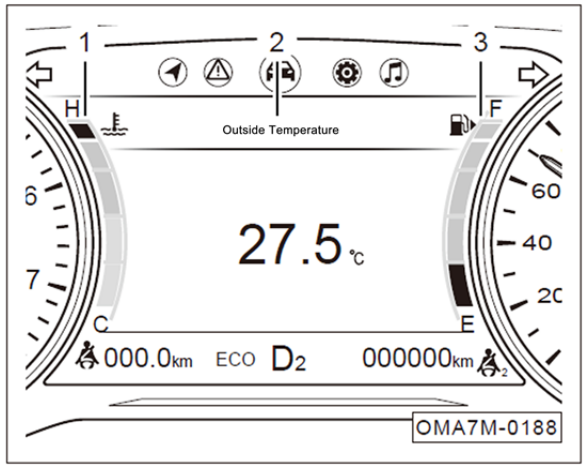


The engine tachometer is used to indicate the current engine speed, in x1,000 r/min, minimum scale 200 r/min, ranging from 0 r/min to 8,000 r/min.

Hint

- The red warning area (6,000 r/min ~ 8,000 r/min) on the speed dial means the heavy-duty area of the car. Do not let the car operate in this area. Doing so can cause fuel cut-off due to engine self-protection.
- Damage to the engine probably occurs if the tachometer reading is in the red zone while the running-in period of the car does not expire.
- Even if the running-in period has expired, damage to the engine probably occurs if the tachometer reading is in the red zone.

Instrument Cluster Display



1. Engine coolant temperature gauge (i.e., water temperature gauge) used for indicating the current engine coolant temperature.

– There is a total of four major sections (each major section is subdivided into two minor sections), indicating the range of C - H, in which, "C" represents low temperature and "H" indicates high temperature. An appropriate number of sections are illuminated depending on the temperature. The un-illuminated sections are gray.

– When the engine coolant temperature is >50°C, the temperature gauge lights up gradually from the first major section.

– After the engine starts and works for some time, 2~3 major sections are lit.

– When the 4th major section is lit, it indicates that the current engine coolant temperature is too high. Meanwhile, the high coolant temperature red indicator light ( ) in the instrument cluster is lit and the buzzer alarms to alert the driver. And now the engine load shall be reduced (for example, do not run the engine at a high speed for a long time, or not long drive at steep road), park the car timely and check the coolant level. =>Refer to Page 413

Caution

- If the engine coolant temperature is too high, do not continue driving even if the coolant level is normal, unless the temperature reaches the normal range. If the temperature remains high, please have your car checked and repaired at GAC MOTOR dealer as soon as possible.
- If additional part is installed at air inlet, it may reduce cooling effect of coolant. The engine overheats easily at high ambient temperature and when the engine running under high load.

2. Included information displayed in the middle: travel information => refer to Page 55 , menu setting information => refer to Page 58, audio and entertainment system information*=> refer to Page 64, door opening indication, gear display, mileage information, graphic & text alarm information. =>Refer to Page 62

Gear Information

– The “P” location is used to indicate current gear, for example, display P, R, N, D based on received signal.

ECO (Indicator Light for Economy Mode)

– If the green light is lit, it indicates that ECO mode is activated.

000.0 km (Short-mileage Trip)

– Display range from 0km to 999.9km. When a short-mileage trip exceeds 999.9km, it will be reset and then continue to accumulate.

– Short-mileage TRIP, may be reset by the total mileage in the settings of menu on display. =>Refer to Page 59

000000 km (Total mileage)

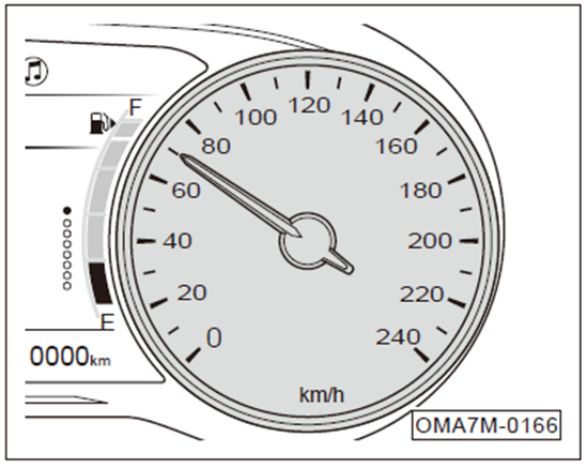
– Display range: 0 km~999999 km.

3. Fuel gauge is used to indicate the current fuel remaining in the tank.

– There is a total of four major sections (each major section is subdivided into two minor sections), indicating the range of E~F, in which, "E" represents the fuel tank is empty, and "F" represents the fuel tank is full. An appropriate number of sections are illuminated depending on the residual fuel. The un-illuminated sections are gray.

– Only the first red bar or no bar coming on indicates insufficient fuel in the fuel tank. Meanwhile, the fuel low level yellow indicator light (⛽) on the instrument cluster flickers telling the driver that the fuel is insufficient and to add fuel as soon as possible.

Speedometer



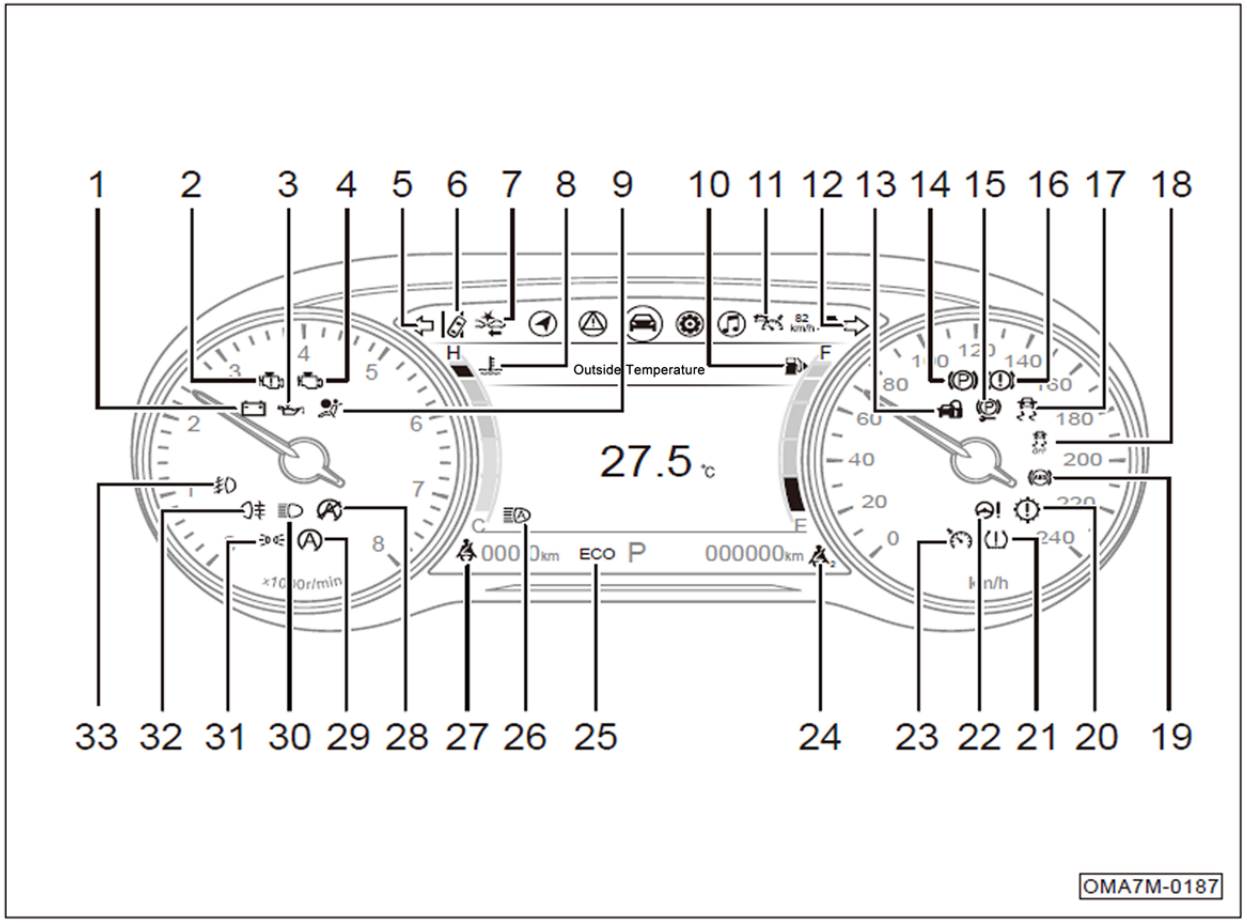
Speedometer is used for indicating the current vehicle speed, in km/h, minimum scale of 10km/h, ranging from 0km/h to 240km/h.

Caution

- 200km/h ~ 240km/h represents the heavy-load range. To protect your car, avoid prolonged driving in this range.
- Strictly abide by traffic rules. Do not overspeed at will.

‘

4.1.2 Indicator Light



Caution

If any indicator light or warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates after car starting or during driving, it indicates relevant system or function may work or failure occurs. You should read through the indications of each indicator light, warning light carefully; please have your car checked and repaired at the GAC MOTOR dealer timely when failure occurred.

S/N	Icon	Name	Color	Function
1		Charging system warning light	Red	With the Start switch at "ON" position, the warning light is lit when the engine is not started and is off after the engine is started.
				After the engine starting, if the warning light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the charging system.
2		Engine malfunction indicator light	Yellow	With the Start switch at "ON" position, the indicator light illuminates for a few seconds and then extinguishes after self-checking of the system if the engine is not started and there is no fault.
				After the engine starting, if the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the engine system.
3		Low engine oil pressure warning light	Red	With the Start switch at "ON" position, the warning light is lit when the engine is not started and is off after the engine is started.
				After the engine starting, if the warning light is still on, it indicates that the engine oil pressure is low.
4		Emission failure indicator light	Yellow	With the Start switch at "ON" position, the indicator light is lit when the engine is not started and is off after the engine is started.
				After the engine starting, if the indicator is still on, it indicates that there is a fault in the exhaust system.
5		Left turn signal and hazard warning indicator light	Green	When the left turn signal indicator light flashes alone, it indicates that the left turn light is turned on. When the hazard warning indicator light switch is pressed, the left/right turn signal indicator lights will flash together with all the outside turn signal lights.

S/N	Icon	Name	Color	Function
6		High engine coolant temperature indicator light	White	White indicator light coming on indicates the symbol of the coolant (water) temperature gauge, this means it is normal.
			Red	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the engine coolant temperature is too high.
7		Supplemental restraint system (SRS) indicator light	Red	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the SRS system.
8		Low fuel indicator light	White	White indicator light coming on indicates the symbol of fuel gauge, this means it is normal.
			Yellow	If the indicator light flashes (yellow), it indicates that less fuel remains in the tank.
				If the indicator light is lit (yellow), it indicates a possible fault with the fuel pump.
9		Right turn signal and hazard warning indicator light	Green	When right turn signal indicator light flashes alone, it indicates that the right turn lights are turned on. When the hazard warning indicator light switch is pressed, the left/right turn signal indicator lights will flash together with all the outside turn signal lights.
10		Immobilizer lock system indicator light	Red	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the engine immobilizer system or the car anti-theft system is enabled.
11		EPB status indicator light	Red	If the indicator light is lit (red), it indicates that the EPB is applied.
				If the indicator light (red) flashes, it indicates that the EPB is partly engaged or failed.
			Green	If the indicator light is lit (green), it indicates that electronic automatic parking is activated.

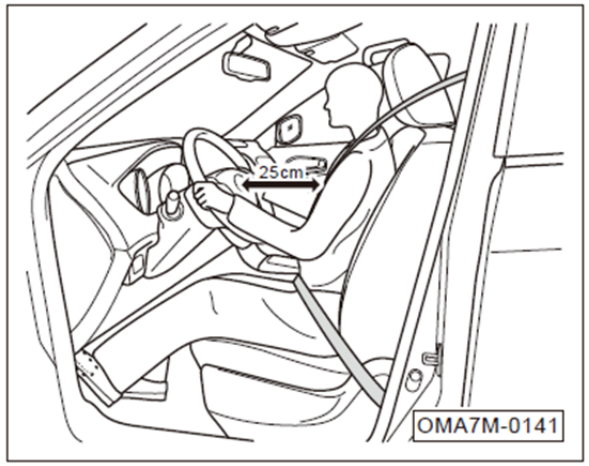
S/N	Icon	Name	Color	Function
12		EPB malfunction indicator light	Yellow	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the EPB system.
13		Parking brake and brake system indicator light	Red	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the brake fluid level is too low or there is a fault in the electric brakeforce distribution (EBD) system.
14		Vehicle Stability Program (ESP) indicator light	Yellow	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the ESP system. If the indicator light flashes, it indicates the ESP is working.
15		Electronic Stability Program Off (ESP OFF) indicator light	Yellow	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the ESP system is switched off.
16		Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) indicator light	Yellow	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in ABS.
17		Transmission malfunction indicator light	Yellow	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the transmission system. If the indicator light flickers, it indicates that the oil temperature of the automatic transmission is high.
18		Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator light*	Yellow	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the TPMS.
19		Electronic Power Steering (EPS) indicator light	Yellow	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the EPS system.
20		Cruise control indicator light*	White	If the indicator light is lit (white), it indicates that the adaptive cruise system is making preparation.
			Green	If the indicator light is lit (green), it indicates that the adaptive cruise system is enabled.
21		Front passenger seat belt indicator light	Red	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the front passenger seat belt is not fastened or there is a fault in the belt system.
22	ECO	ECO mode indicator light	Green	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that ECO mode is activated.
23		Intelligent high beam indicator light*	White	If the indicator light (white) is lit, it indicates that the intelligent high beam is activated.
			Yellow	If the indicator light (yellow) is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in intelligent high beam.
24		Driver seat belt indicator light	Red	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the seat belt is not fastened or there is a fault in the belt system.

S/N	Icon	Name	Color	Function
25		Start-Stop system malfunction indicator light	White	If the indicator light is lit (white), it indicates that the start-stop conditions are not met temporarily.
			Yellow	If the indicator light is lit (yellow), it indicates that there is a fault in the Start- Stop system.
26		Start-Stop system indicator light	Green	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the Start-Stop system is activated.
27		High beam indicator light	Blue	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that high beams are turned on.
28		Position light indicator light	Green	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the position lights, instrument panel light, number plate lights, atmosphere light, etc. are turned on.
29		Rear fog light indicator light	Yellow	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that rear fog lights are turned on.
30		Front fog light indicator light	Green	If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that front fog lights are turned on.

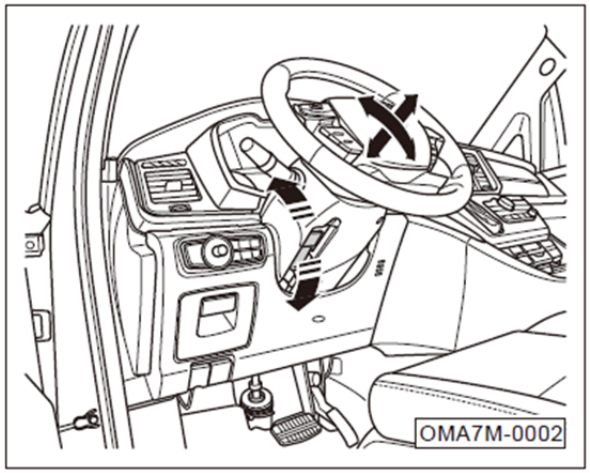
4.1.3 Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Position Adjustment

The driver is allowed to adjust the height of and the distance to steering wheel according to own body size.



– Adjust the driver's seat to a proper position.



– Push downward the locking handle.

– Move the steering wheel upward, downward, forward, or backward to adjust it to a proper position. The steering wheel shall face the driver's front chest, and the position of the steering wheel shall ensure that the driver can see all instruments and indicators on the instrument panel.

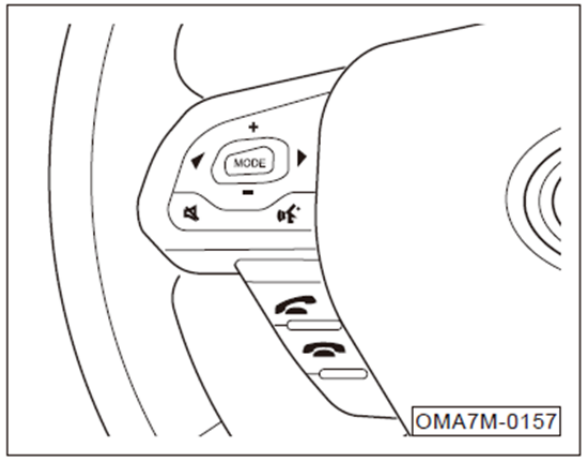
– Push the locking handle upward to lock the steering wheel.

– Move the steering wheel upward, downward, forward or backward to ensure that it is securely locked.

⚠ Warning

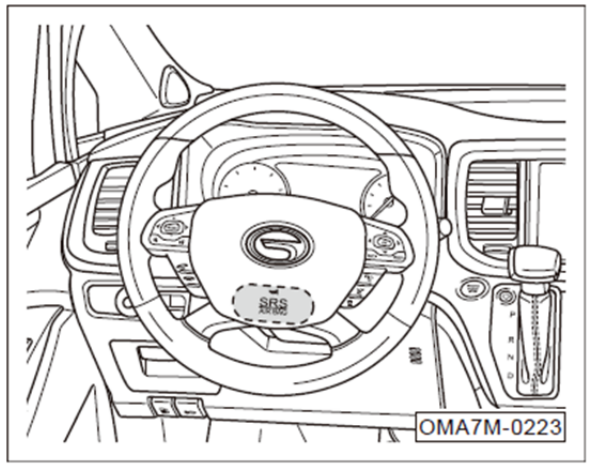
- **After adjusting the steering wheel, remember to push the locking handle upward to lock the steering wheel to prevent automatic displacement of steering wheel during driving.**
- **To avoid traffic accident, it is not allowed to adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stopped.**
- **The steering wheel shall not just face the driver's face. Otherwise, effective protection by driver's frontal airbag cannot be achieved during a crash. After adjustment, the steering wheel shall face the driver's front chest.**

Steering Wheel Button (Left)



– The buttons at left of the steering wheel are for audio system control. For its function and operation, =>Refer to Page 182

Horn Button on Steering Wheel

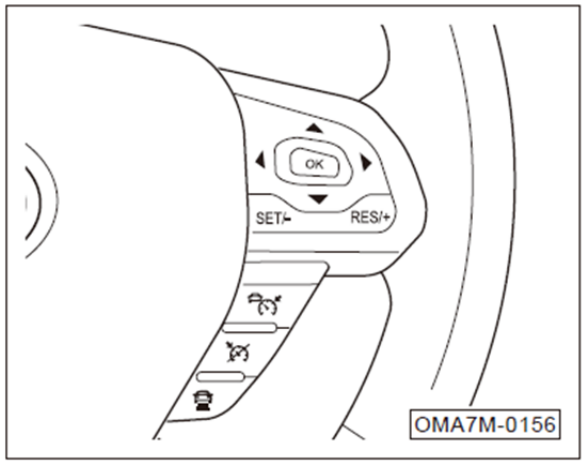


– Press the horn button on the steering wheel, the horn sounds. Release the button, the horn stops sounding.

⚠ Warning

Do not press the horn button for a long time. Otherwise, it will be easily damaged.

Steering Wheel Button (Right)



The buttons at right of the steering wheel include the instrument cluster display control button and constant speed cruise control button.

1. Instrument cluster display screen control button

– OK: select/confirm

- Short press: Select current menu item.
- Long press: Reset the current data in travel information memorizer.

– ◀/▶: Left/ right

- Previous/next item on the current menu may be switched on orderly.

– ▲/▼: Previous/ next

- At the travel information interface, short press this button to switch to the previous or next travel information.

- At the menu setting interface, short press up/down to move the selection bar, or adjust values up/ down.

2. Cruise control buttons

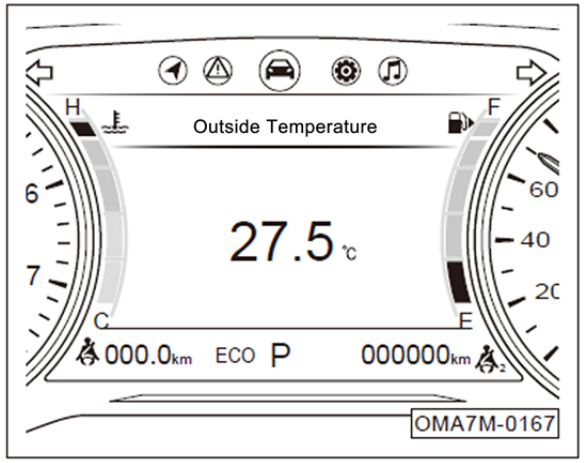
– Cruise control button* =>Refer to Page 336

Description of Travel Information

Press ◀/▶ button on the right side of the steering wheel to enter the travel information interface when the start switch is at the "ON" position; press ▲/▼ button to switch between the following information interfaces.

- Outside temperature
- Endurance mileage
- Battery voltage
- Speed
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Short-term memory
- Long-term memory
- Tire pressure/tire temperature*

Outside Temperature

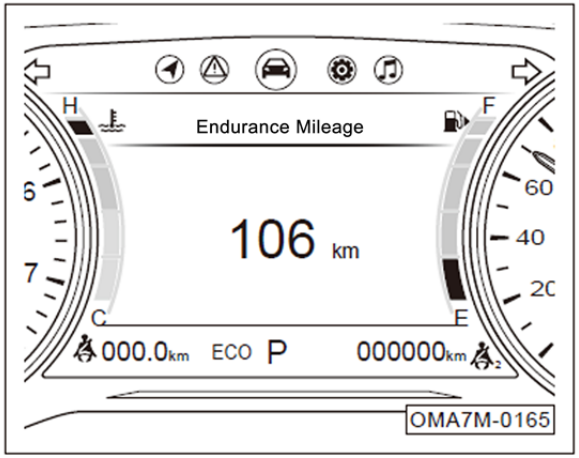


Indicate current ambient temperature outside the car

Hint

- Displayed based on outside temperature signal from the air conditioning system, expressed in ℃ / ℉.
- When no outside temperature signal is received, the symbol “--:-” is shown on the screen.

Endurance Mileage

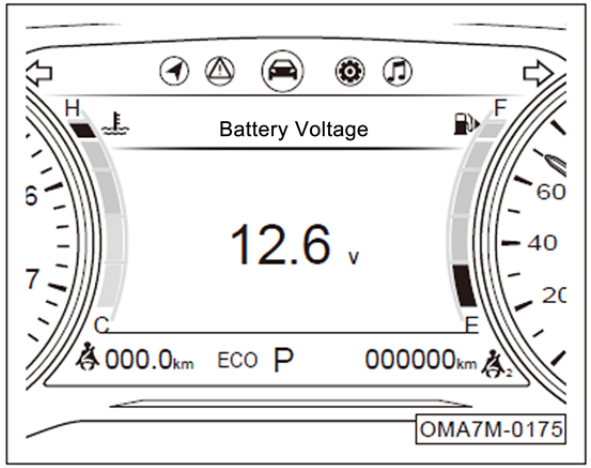


Indicate approximately distance that can be covered by remaining fuel in the fuel tank. “Low” is displayed in the case of too little fuel herein. In this case, fuel should be refilled timely.

Hint

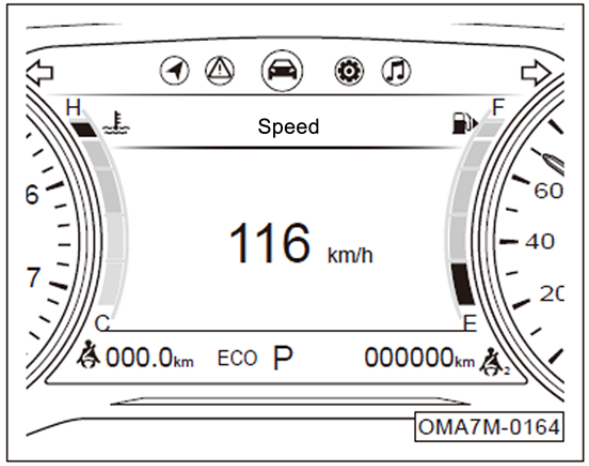
The parameter is shown for reference only and cannot be preset, which varies with the remaining fuel volume in the fuel tank.

Battery Voltage



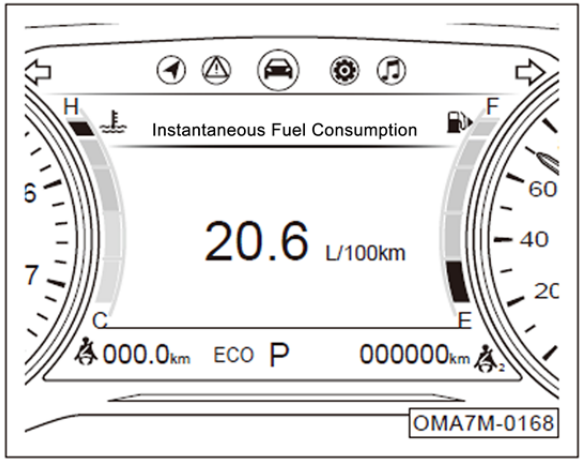
Indicate current battery voltage. This parameter cannot be preset.

Speed



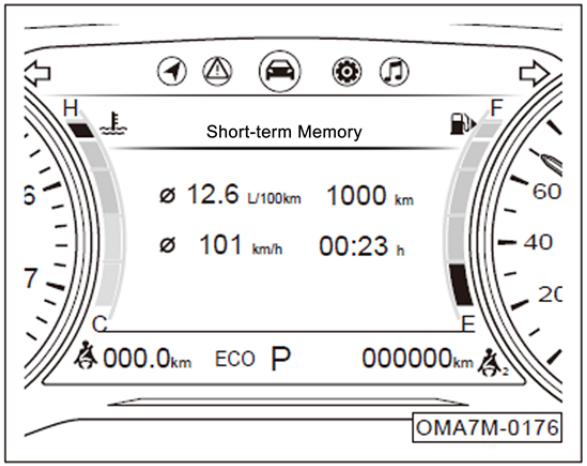
Indicate current instantaneous speed of the car. This parameter cannot be preset.

Instantaneous Fuel Consumption



Indicate fuel consumption in the past 1s. This parameter cannot be preset.

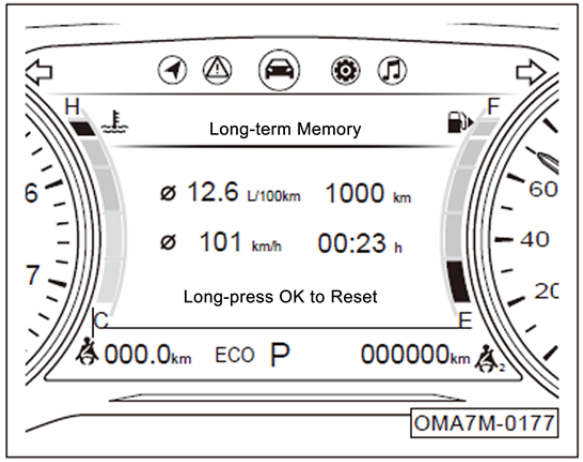
Short-term Memory



Indicate the one-time travel information after turning on the Start switch, which is average fuel consumption (unit: L/100km), driving mileage (unit: km), average vehicle speed (unit: km/h), driving time (unit: h).

This parameter cannot be preset. It resets when a certain period elapses since the Start switch is turned off. But the data is permanently saved in the memory.

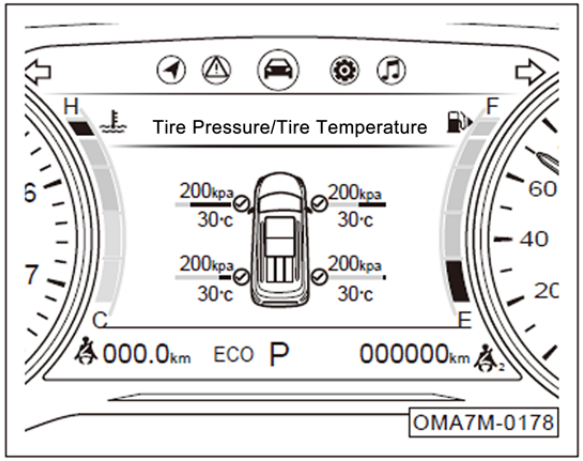
Long-term Memory



Indicate the travel information reset last time, which is average fuel consumption (unit: L/100km), driving mileage (unit: km), average vehicle speed (unit: km/h) driving time (unit: h).

This parameter can be preset. It resets by long pressing the OK button.

Tire Pressure/Tire Temperature*



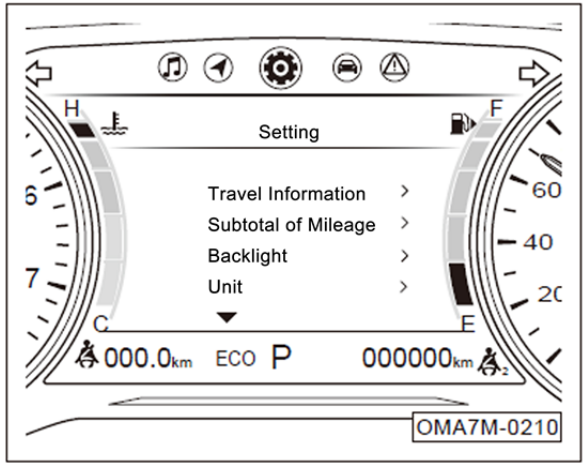
Indicate the tire pressure/tire temperature corresponding to four wheels of the car.

Hint

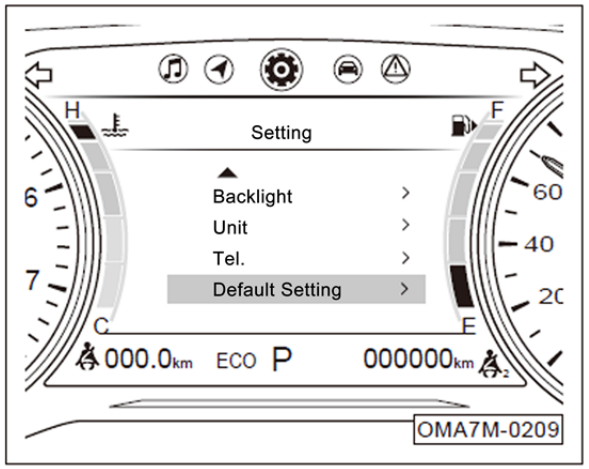
Indication of tire pressure/tire temperature is dependent upon vehicle model/configuration. In case of no such configuration, no such data is displayed.

Menu Setting for Instrument Cluster Display

First-Class Menu

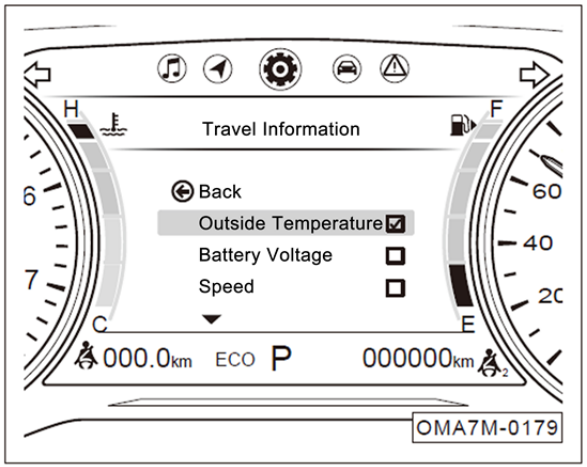


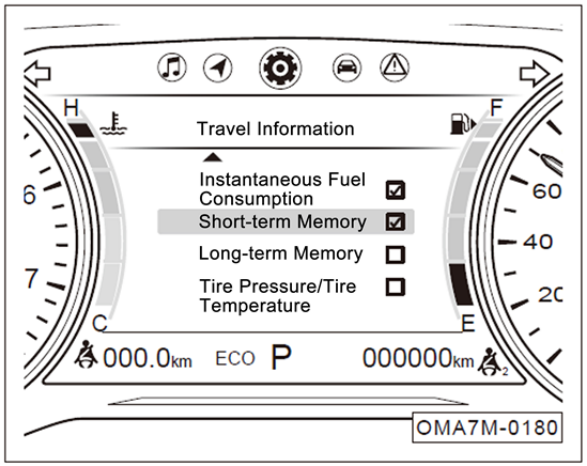
When the vehicle speed is zero, press ◀/▶ to enter the menu setting interface.



Press ▲ /▼ button to move the cursor and press OK to enter the menu at the lower level.

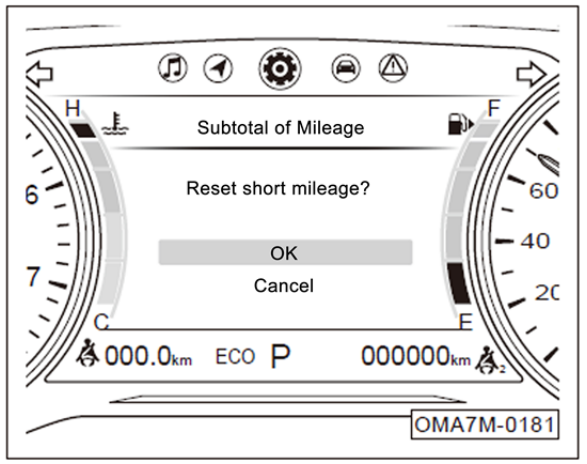
Travel Information Setting





– Move the cursor by pressing ▲/▼ and select or cancel by pressing OK button.
– Multi-selections are available; the selected items display alternately in the travel information interface by pressing ▲ / ▼ button while unselected ones will not be displayed.
– Select “RETURN” and press OK to return to the previous menu.

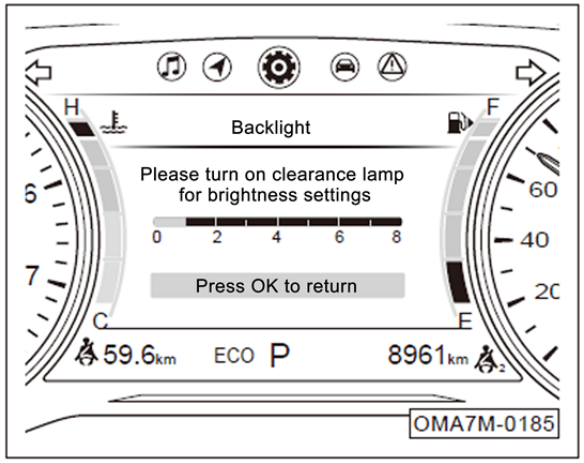
Mileage Setting



Short-mileage can be reset.

– Select “Confirm” and press OK button to reset the short-mileage trip.
– Select “Cancel” and press OK to return to the previous menu.

Backlight Setting



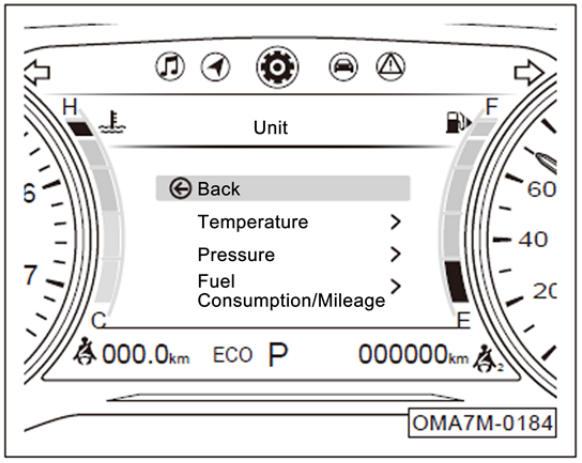
The backlight grade in the car can be adjusted.

– The backlight cannot be adjusted before the position light is switched on.

– When the position light is switched on, press ▲/▼ button to adjust the backlight, with ▲ for increase and ▼ for decrease.

– Press OK button to return to the previous menu.

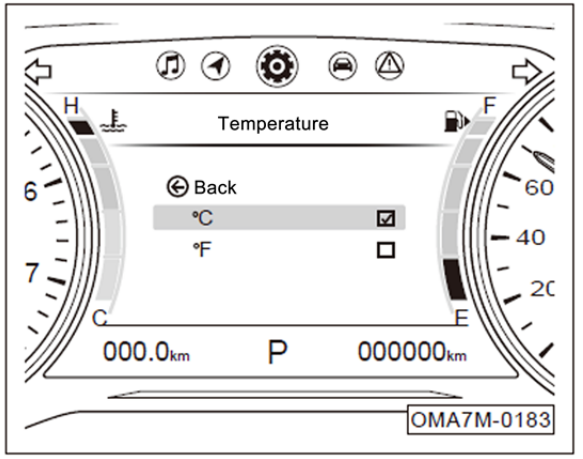
Unit Setting



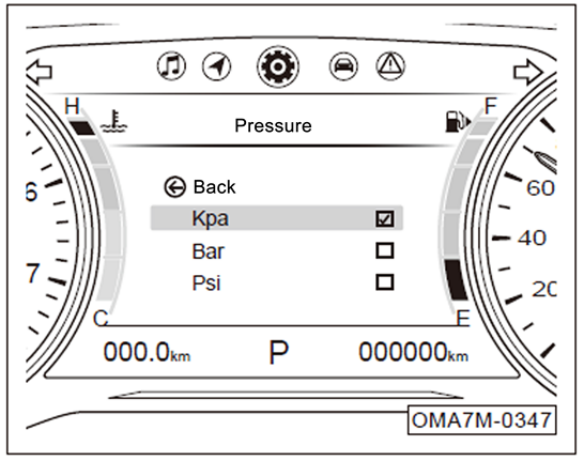
The units of temperature, pressure, fuel consumption/mileage can be displayed.

– Move the cursor by pressing ▲/▼ button and select or cancel by pressing OK button.

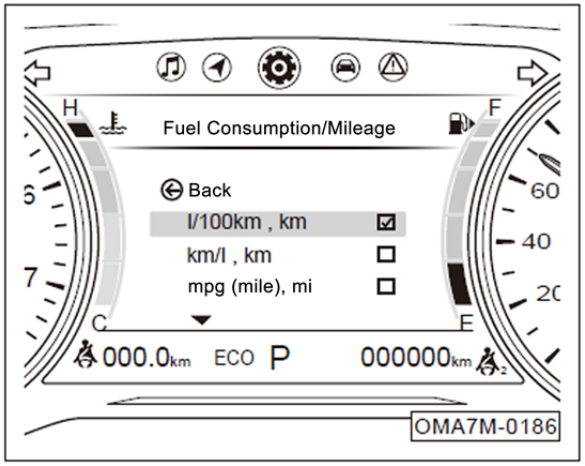
– Select “RETURN” and press OK to return to the previous menu.



– The Figure shows the unit setting of temperature.

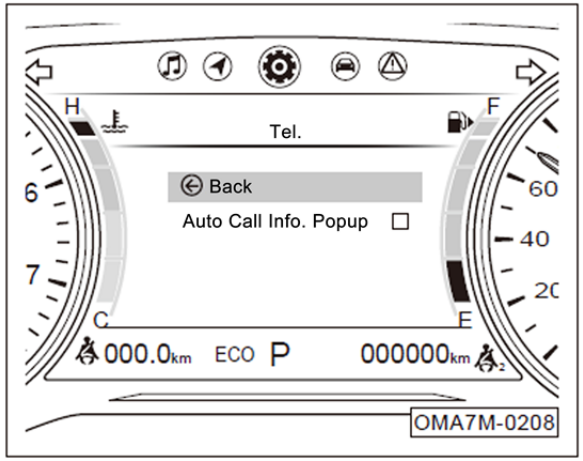


– The Figure shows the unit setting of pressure.



– The Figure shows the unit setting of fuel consumption/mileage.

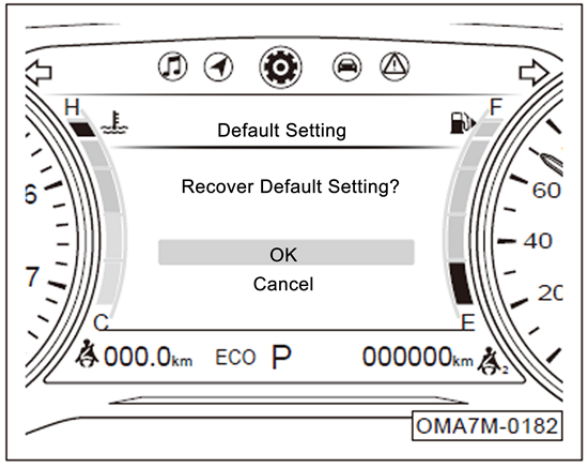
Phone Setting*



– Select “Auto Call Info. Popup”; the option box is ticked after pressing OK button. After Bluetooth is activated and call information is received, the instrument cluster can automatically display the call information. If the option is not ticked, no call information will pop up. In this case, the call information can be viewed by pressing ◀/▶ button to enter the audio and entertainment information interface.

– Select “RETURN” and press OK to return to the previous menu.

Default Setting

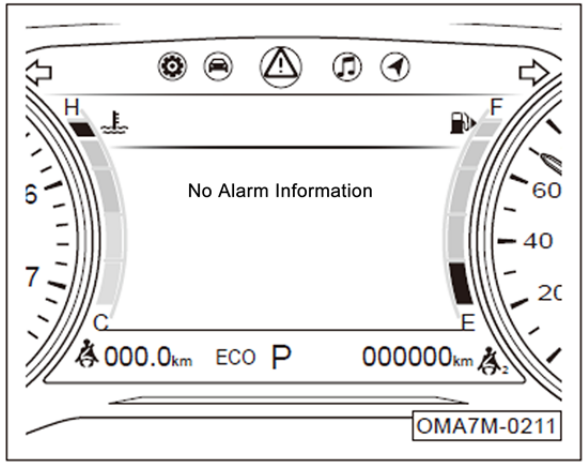


Default settings can be recovered.

– Select “Confirm” and press OK to recover default settings.

– Select “Cancel” and press OK to return to the previous menu.

Graphic & Text Alarm Information



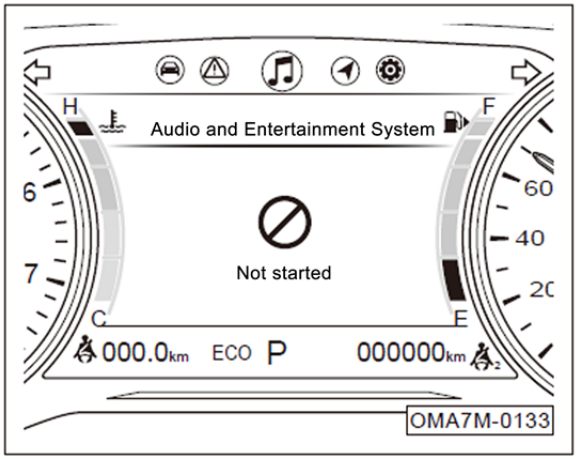
When the Start switch is at "ON" position, press ◀/▶ button to enter the graphic & text alarm information interface to check abnormal alarm prompt information of the car.

– In case of any abnormality, the instrument cluster prioritizes the display of graphic & text alarm information which can be checked by pressing OK.

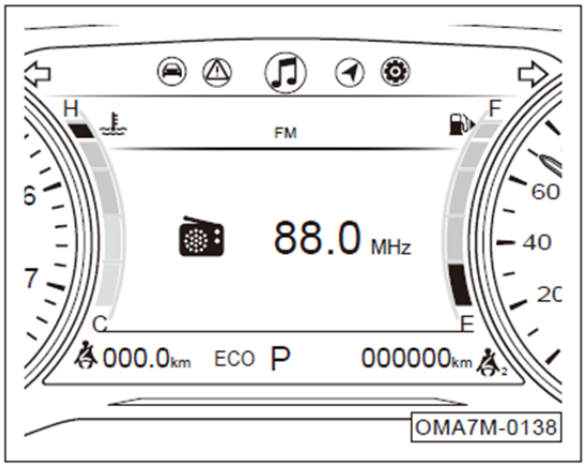
– In the case of multiple graphic & text alarm information, all the information can be checked by continuously pressing OK.

– The text “no alarm information” will be displayed if the car is in good state and involves no graphic & text alarm information.

Audio and Entertainment System Information*

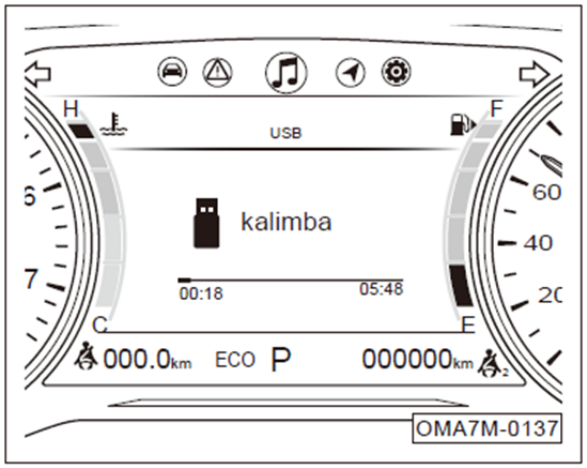


– When the Start switch is at "ON" position, press ◀/▶ to enter the audio and entertainment system information interface. Before the audio system is started, this interface displays “not started”.



– When the play mode is in radio mode, it displays radio information, including AM/FM radio band information, radio icon as well as current radio frequency and unit.

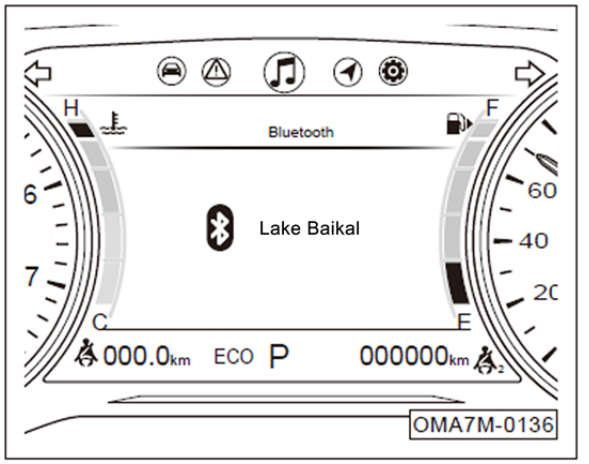
– When searching for radio station, this interface displays “Searching”.



– When the play mode is in USB mode, it displays USB music play information, including USB music source type, play progress/time, song name.

Hint

The song name can be only displayed in Chinese, English, Arabic numerals and some special characters. Other rarely-used characters, Korean, Japanese information, if any, is displayed in the form of blank space.



– When the play mode is in Bluetooth music mode, it displays Bluetooth music play information, including Bluetooth music source type and song name.

Hint

No time and progress bar information are displayed in Bluetooth music mode.

4.2 Start and Stop Vehicle

4.2.1 Smart Key

This car is provided with two smart keys (which contain emergency mechanical keys) and key bar codes. If you need to recustomize the key, inform your dealer of the key bar code. If the key bar code is lost, inform the GAC MOTOR Dealer of the vehicle VIN.

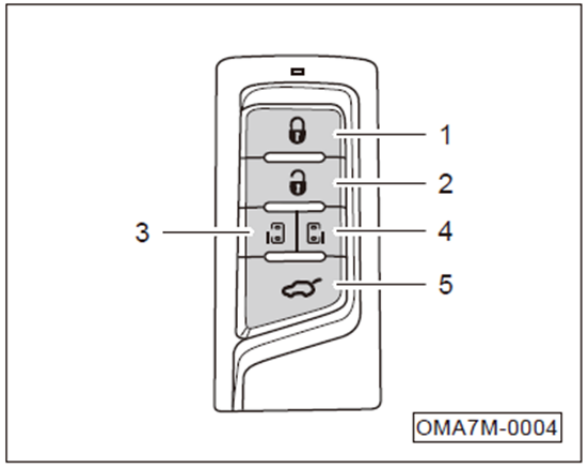
Smart keys can realize the functions of locking/unlocking all the doors, lifting/descending windows, opening/closing the sunroof, opening the hatchback door and opening/closing the sliding door* in a remote way.

Operation of one-key start or shutdown of engine, keyless entry, automatic opening of hatchback door* may be available through the intelligent sensing function of the smart key.

Hint

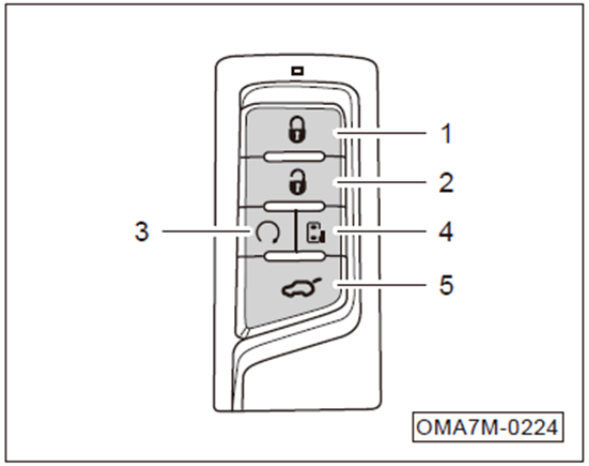
There is transceiver chip inside the smart key. This chip is equipped with electronic code that will be sent to the vehicle. The smart key can be used to operate the vehicle only when the chip electronic code is consistent with the registered vehicle ID code.

Operation of Buttons



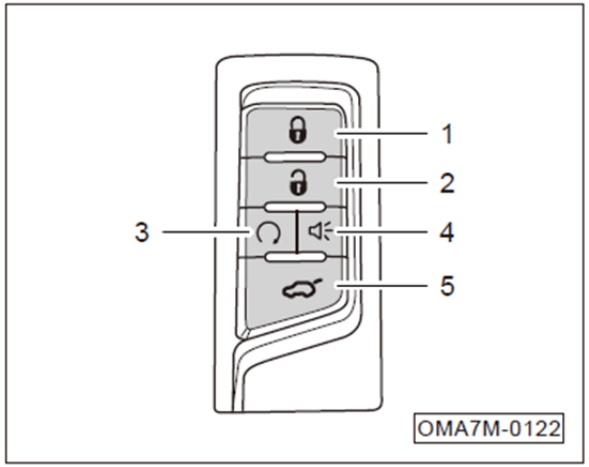
Applicable to models with electric sliding doors at both sides

1. Lock button
2. Unlock button
3. Open/close button of left electric sliding door
4. Open/close button of right electric sliding door
5. Hatchback door unlock button



Applicable to models with electric sliding doors at one side

1. Lock button
2. Unlock button
3. Engine Start/Stop button
4. Open/close button of right electric sliding door
5. Hatchback door unlock button



Applicable to models with manual sliding doors

1. Lock button
2. Unlock button
3. Engine Start/Stop button
4. Anti-theft alarm button
5. Hatchback door unlock button

Hint

- The standard remote control distance is 50m, and the longest remote control distance is 100m.
- When the Start switch is at "ACC" or "ON" position, the operation of any button on the smart key is not available.
- Quickly press the buttons on the smart key shortly for 3 times to recover its function when the lock or unlock function is failed.

1. Lock Button Operation

– Short pressing this button once within the effective range, all doors will be locked; pressing this button and hold for 2s, the window at driver side will close automatically; pressing this button and hold for 3s, the sunroof will close automatically. If this button is released while the window or sunroof is closing automatically, the closing will be stopped.

– Pressing this button continuously within 0.5s, the vehicle locating function can be activated, and the turn signal light will flash quickly for 4 times.

Hint

When the door is locked, the turn signal light will flash once.

Caution

In case one door is not closed and the lock button is pressed, the four doors will be locked and then be unlocked immediately. In case the engine hood or hatchback door is not closed and the lock button is pressed, then system will alarm.

2. Unlocking Button Operation

– Short pressing this button once within the effective range, all doors will be unlocked; pressing this button and hold for 2s, the window at driver side will open automatically; pressing this button and hold for 3s, the sunroof will open automatically. If this button is released while the window or sunroof is opening automatically, the opening will be stopped.

Hint

When the door is unlocked, the turn signal will flash twice.

Through the "Car Setting" under the audio system, it can be set to unlock all doors or only the left front door by pressing button on smart key. =>Refer to Page 225

Caution

After pressing the unlock button to unlock the door, the system will lock the door again if it is not opened within about 30s.

3. Open/close button of left electric sliding door*

– Within the effective range and with the sliding door fully closed, the left electric sliding door opens and the speaker rings intermittently when of the smart key is long pressed.

– Within the effective range and with the sliding door fully opened, the left electric sliding door closes and the speaker rings intermittently when of the smart key is long pressed.

– When the electric sliding door is opening or closing, it stops acting when of the smart key is short pressed.

Hint

- Only when the electric function of the sliding door is enabled =>Refer to Page 86, can the smart key open or close the electric sliding door in a remote way.
- When the car is locked and of the smart key is long pressed to open the left sliding door, the horn will sound twice.

Engine Start/Stop button*

– In the effective range, press the button on the smart key, within 2s press and hold the button until the turn signals flash. You can remotely start the engine.

– With the engine remotely started, press the button and hold for 3s. You can remotely stop the engine.

Hint

- Before remote shutdown of the engine, confirm whether the car is locked. If this cannot be confirmed, press button once and then long press button before shutting down the engine.
- In remote startup of the engine, stay within effective range. Otherwise, it is possible to trigger the unlock function but fail in startup.
- The function of remotely starting engine remains on at a time for at most 5 minutes in default. To change the period, contact a GAC MOTOR dealer.

4. Open/close button of right electric sliding door*

– Within the effective range and with the sliding door fully closed, the right electric sliding door automatically opens and the speaker rings intermittently when of the smart key is long pressed.

– Within the effective range and with the sliding door fully opened, the right electric sliding door closes and the speaker rings intermittently when of the smart key is long pressed.

– When the electric sliding door is opening or closing, it stops acting when of the smart key is short pressed.

Hint

- Only when the electric function of the sliding door is enabled =>Refer to Page 86, can the smart key open or close the electric sliding door in a remote way.
- When the car is locked and of the smart key is long pressed to open the right sliding door, the horn will sound twice.
- When the fuel tank lid is open, the right electric sliding door cannot be power-operated; it can be opened or closed manually, but it cannot be manually opened fully due to restriction by the mechanical stopper so as to avoid interference with the fuel tank lid. After the fuel tank lid is closed, the electric function is recovered.

Anti-theft Alarm Button*

– Pressing this button for more than 3s activates anti-theft alarm, with the horn sounding and the turn signals flashing 30s. Short press or long press to stop anti-theft alarm.

5. Hatchback Door Unlocking Button Operation

– Within effective range, long pressing this button (≥2s), the hatchback door can be unlocked.

– If the vehicle is equipped with an electric hatchback door, pressing this button while the hatchback door is opening can interrupt opening.

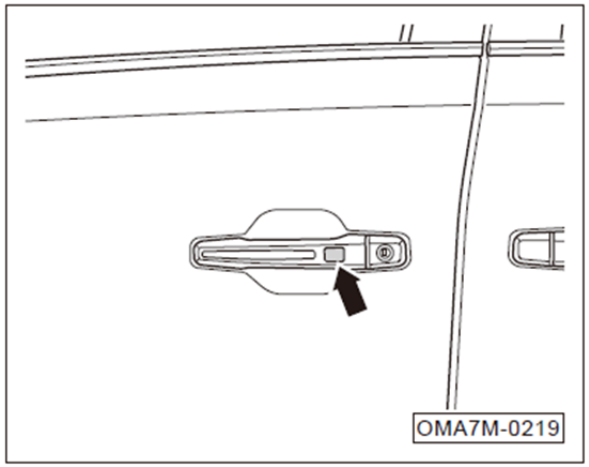
Caution
Once the vehicle speed exceeds 1.5km/ h, it is forbidden to unlock the hatchback door.

"Sound" and "Light" Alarm Switching

The "light" alarm indicates the vehicle warns the driver only with light, while the "sound and flash" alarm mode indicates the vehicle warns the driver both with light and horn sound.

When the Start switch is at "OFF" position, press the button and button on the smart key at the same time for 2s, the "sound" alarm mode and "sound and flash" alarm mode can be switched. With the switchover successful, the left and right turn signals flash simultaneously for three times.

Keyless Entry*



– With the Start switch at OFF, carry the smart key with you, approach the car, and put your hand on the inner side of the handle of the driver' s door (unlocking area), then effective sensing unlocks all the doors.

– With the Start switch at OFF, carry the smart key with you, press once the depression in the driver's door handle (see the arrow) (locking area) after all the doors are closed, then effective sensing locks all the doors.

Caution

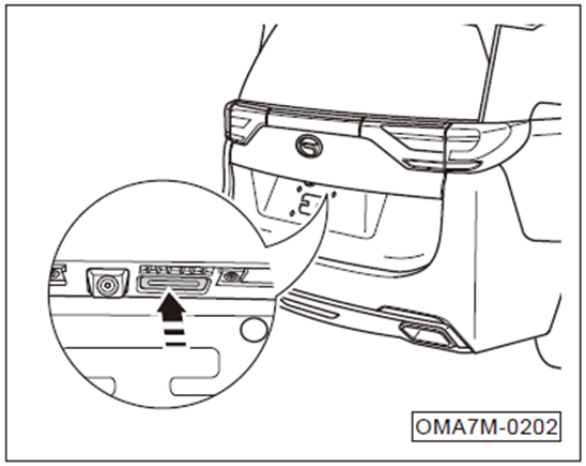
- After locking doors using keyless entry function, it takes 3s before the keyless entry function can be activated to unlock doors.
- If touching unlocking area and locking area with hand simultaneously, unlocking may be preferred. It is recommended not to touch locking and unlocking areas simultaneously.
- Snow or ice on the vehicle door handle should be removed as soon as possible, which affects the keyless entry function.
- Pressing the locking area by mistake while closing the door can activate the horn, indicating that the door is not closed securely. Touch the locking area only when it is necessary to lock the door.
- If the front door handle is wet due to rain or vehicle washing while the smart key is in the effective range, it is possible for the vehicle door to be unlocked.

Caution

- Holding the front door handle with your hand wearing a glove could cause the vehicle door sensor to slowly or impossibly respond to vehicle unlocking.

Caution

- Pulling the front door handle immediately after holding it, perhaps you cannot open the door. Please grasp the handle again and confirm door has been unlocked, then pull the handle.
- Even if the smart key is in the 1-meter range from the vehicle, locking/unlocking vehicle door may be impossible if the remote controller of the smart key is quite above or below the external door handle.
- The smart key could not operate if it is too close to the car door or door window. If the effective range of the transmitter varies, possible cause is a weak battery.



– When the Start switch is at "OFF" position, if the user with smart key approaches to the hatchback door, pressing the release button of the hatchback door may unlock and open the hatchback door.

– If the vehicle is unlocked and stationary, then you may open the hatchback door without carrying the smart key. In addition, the hatchback door may also be released automatically*. =>Refer to Page 94

Immobilizer System

The vehicle is provided with the immobilizer function to prevent the vehicle from being stolen. If an improperly-coded key (or other tool) is used to start the engine, the fuel system will not work and the vehicle cannot be started normally.

Caution

If matched smart key is used, the immobilizer system will be deactivated automatically.

There is an electric loop inside the smart key to trigger the immobilizer system. If this loop is damaged, it may fail to start the engine. Thus:

- Protect the smart key from direct sunlight, high temperature or high humidity.
- Avoid dropping the smart key from a high place or crushed with a heavy thing.
- Avoid mixing the smart key with fluids. Use a piece of soft cloth to dry it when got wet.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle. Please take it with you at all times.

Low Intensity of Signal from the Smart Key

To lock/unlock the vehicle door, release the hatchback door, or start the engine, the vehicle emits radio waves to locate the smart key. If the battery power of the smart key is adequate, it is able to work within the effective range.

In the following cases, it is impossible or difficult to lock/unlock the vehicle door, release the hatchback door, or start the engine:

– The equipment nearby is emitting strong wireless electric wave.

– The smart key is carried together with telecommunication equipment, laptop, mobile phone or wireless signal transmitter.

– The smart key is contacted with covered by any metallic objects.

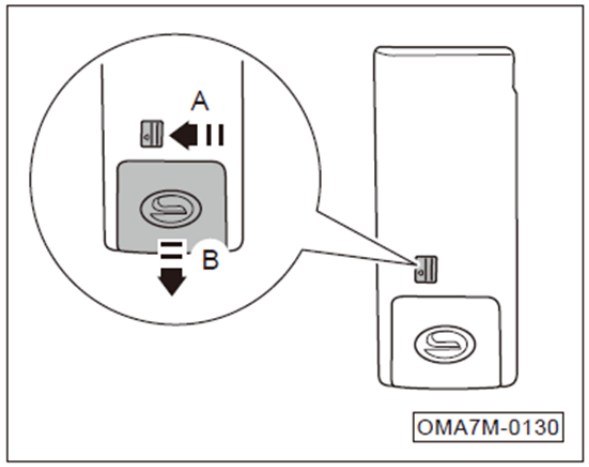
Battery Replacement

The indicator light of the smart key flashes once every time the button on the smart key is pressed. If it does not flash when the key is pressed, or if the button has to be pressed several times to lock or unlock the door, the battery could be run out or nearly run out. In this case, it is recommended to replace the battery at a GAC MOTOR dealer as required.

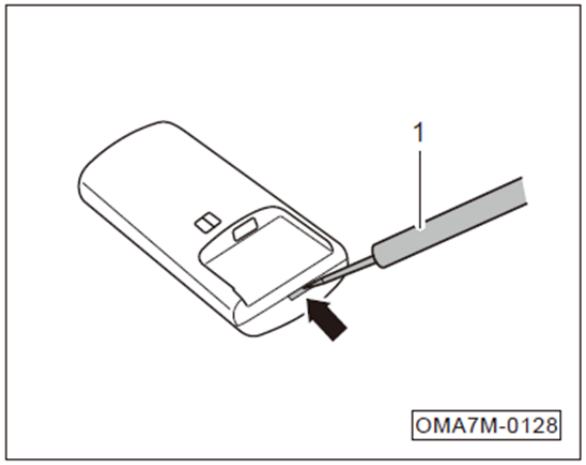
Caution

- Be sure to use a new battery with the same rated voltage and size for replacement.
- Using of improper battery may damage the smart key.
- Used batteries must be disposed as per relevant regulations and laws for environment protection.

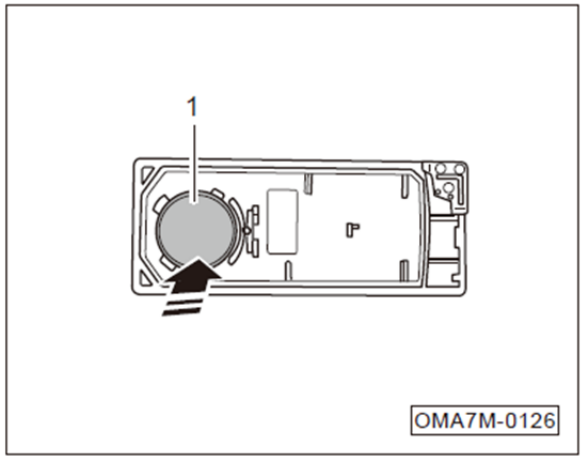
Steps to Replace Battery



– Move the switch in the direction of arrow A and pull out the emergency mechanical key in direction of arrow B.



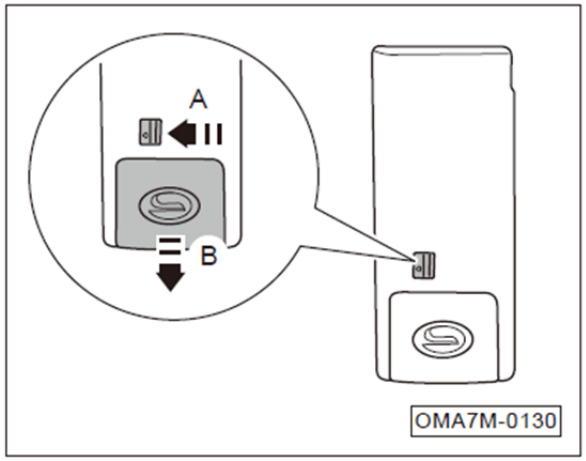
– Use a mini straight screwdriver ① to prise out the smart key housing at the position of the arrow.



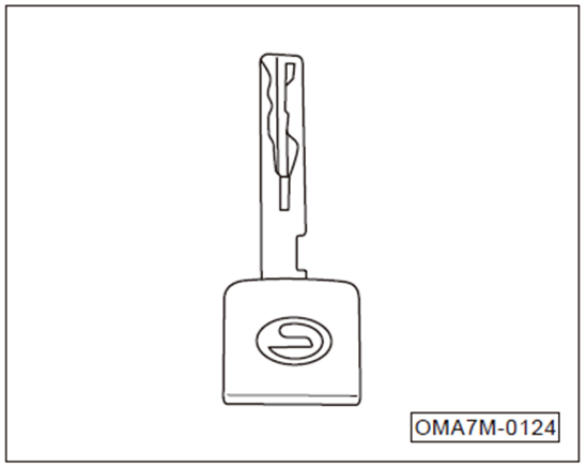
– Use your finger to press the battery in the direction of arrow and take out the smart key battery ①.

– Install the smart key in the reverse order.

4.2.2 Emergency Mechanical Key



– Move the switch in the direction of arrow A and pull out the emergency mechanical key in direction of arrow B.



– Insert the emergency mechanical key into the lock hole of door at driver side to lock all doors or unlock the door at driver side. =>Refer to Page 83

Hint

The emergency mechanical key can only be used to lock all doors or unlock the door at driver side, while it cannot be used to start the engine.

4.2.3 Central Locking System

The central locking system can be operated in following two methods to lock or unlock all doors:

1. Press the lock or unlock button on the smart key to operate the central locking system.
2. Use the central locking button to operate the central locking system.

Hint

- If the anti-theft function is activated using the smart key, the central locking button can only be used to lock doors, but cannot be used to unlock doors.
- Through the "Car Setting" under the audio system, it can be set to unlock all doors or only the left front door by pressing button on smart key. =>Refer to Page 225

Auto-Unlock Function

If the vehicle stops with the doors locked, the door at driver side can be unlocked automatically when the Start switch is switched to "OFF" position.

Hint

The “automatic unlocking” function is optional, which can be activated or deactivated via the "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 225

Locking Function of Vehicle Speed

With the Start switch at "ON" position, and all doors closed:

– The central locking system will automatically lock all doors if the vehicle speed exceeds 20km/h.

– The central locking system will automatically lock all doors if the vehicle speed is at 5km/h to 20km/h for more than 30s.

Hint

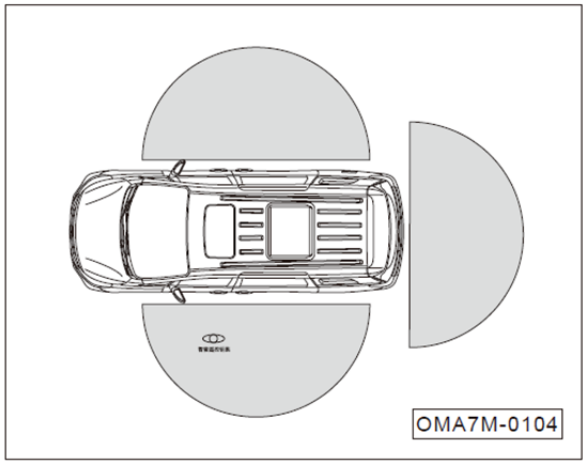
The “vehicle speed locking” function is optional, which can be activated or deactivated via the "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 225

After speed locking, all doors can be unlocked by pressing the central locking button.

Collision Unlocking Function

If the vehicle is collided during driving, four doors can be unlocked at the same time when the Start switch is at "ON" position. Four doors can be unlocked again 3s after first unlocking operation.

Smart Active Locking and Unlocking*

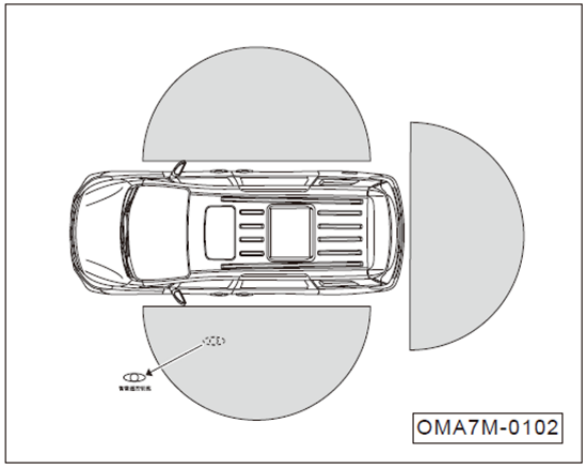


Smart Active Unlocking

– With this function activated, the car can unlock automatically when the user with the smart key is about 1m from the front right or left door handle.

Hint

"Smart Active Unlocking" function can be activated or deactivated via the "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 224



Smart Active Locking

– "Smart Active Locking" function is activated when the user takes the smart key away from the car, doors are closed and no smart key is inside the car.

– The turn signal light flickers once, the horn sounds once and the car locks automatically when the user takes the smart key away from the car but stays more than 1min at a place within 2m from the car or stays at a place more than 2m from the car.

– When the key is kept in the range of 2m for more than 2 minutes, for the purpose of saving power, the system will deactivate active locking function temporarily; user needs to open any door again to reactivate this function.

– When the user with the smart key remains within 2m from the car, the indicator light on the smart key flickers continuously till the doors are locked.

Hint

- "Smart Active Locking" function can be activated or deactivated via the "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 224
- If all the doors are closed but the smart key is inside the car, or the smart key is not detected in the range less than 2 meters from the vehicle, or any of the doors is not securely closed, the smart active locking function cannot be activated.

Hint

- With the smart active locking function active, if you approach again the car within 3s, the system thinks you are checking for any door not securely locked. In this case, the system does not activate the smart active unlocking function. You can pull the rear door handle to check whether the doors are securely locked.

The smart active locking function becomes inoperative in any of the following cases:

– Smart key is inside the car.

– Vehicle door, hatchback door or engine hood is not closed.

– Start switch is at the "ACC" or "ON" position.

– The smart key is not detected in the range less than 2 meters from the car, after you leave the vehicle and close the doors.

– Smart key is thrown through the window into the car.

– You stand too close to the car.

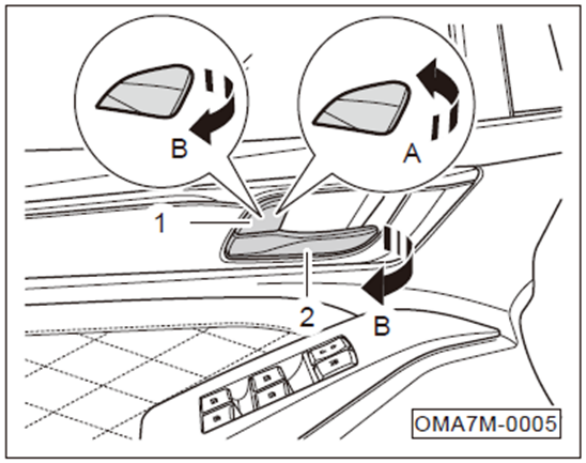
– Smart key is in the trunk.

If you have walked for more than 2 meters from the car but heard no horn sounding, check whether any of above conditions occurs to avoid failure of locking due to incorrect operation. After checking, re-open/close all the doors to confirm that they are securely closed and the smart key is not in the car before leaving.

Caution

- Windows cannot close automatically with the smart active locking function. Please confirm that all the windows and sunroof are closed before leaving.
- Do not leave any child in the car when using the smart active locking function.

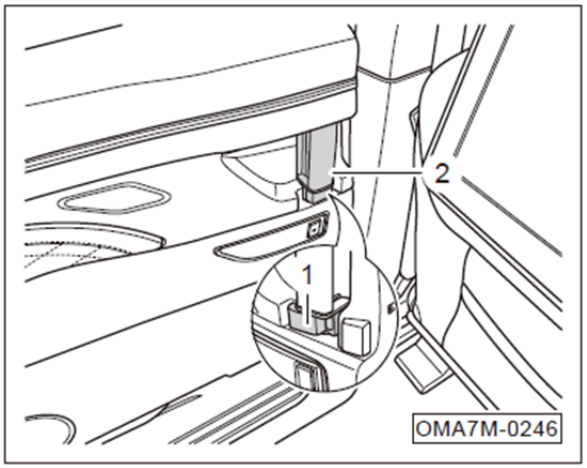
Door Lock Latch and Inner Handle



Each front door has a lock latch ① and an inner handle ②.

– Pushing the door latch ① inward in direction of arrow A, corresponding door can be locked.

– Pulling the door latch ① outward in direction of arrow B, corresponding door can be unlocked. Then, pull the inner handle ② in direction of arrow B to open corresponding door.



Each sliding door has a lock latch ① and an inner handle ②.

– Corresponding door can be locked by pushing the door latch ① forward.

– Corresponding door can be unlocked by pushing the door latch ① backward, and corresponding sliding door can be opened by pulling the inner handle ② backward.

Hint

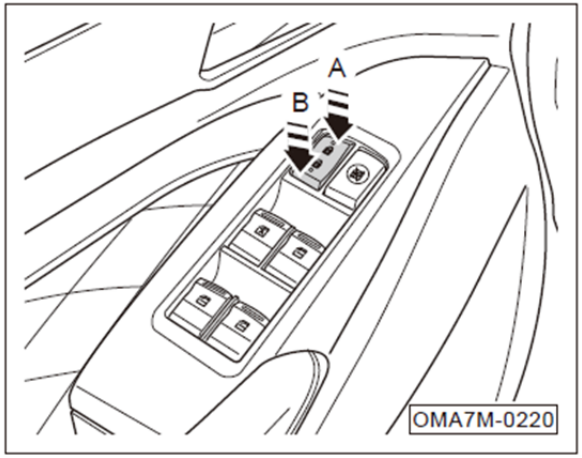
The door lock latch can only lock or unlock the corresponding door.

If the sliding door lock latch is unlocked and the sliding door cannot be opened by inner handle, a possible cause is that the child safety lock is activated =>Refer to Page 84. In such case, the sliding door can be opened from outside. Do not rudely pull the inner handle. Otherwise, it may be damaged.

Caution

When the door latch is locked, do not forcedly pull the inner handle.

Central Locking Button



The central locking button at the driver side can lock and unlock the doors inside the vehicle.

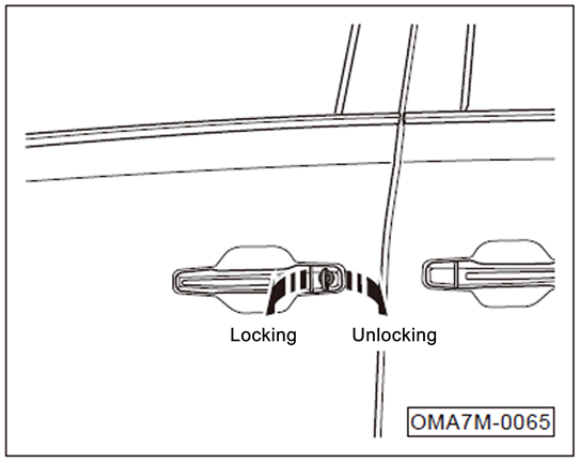
Door locking:

– In direction of arrow A, press the end of the central locking system button to lock all the doors.

Door unlocking:

– In direction of arrow B, press the end of the central locking system button to unlock all the doors.

Door Lock Hole



– Take out the emergency mechanical key; => Refer to Page 78

– Insert the emergency mechanical key into the lock hole of door at driver side;

– Rotate the key anticlockwise, and all doors can be locked;

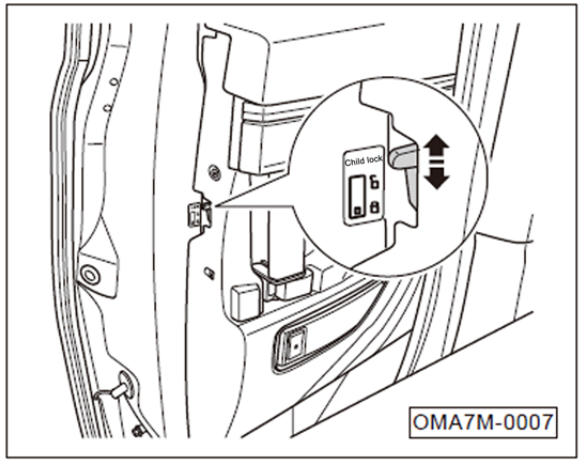
– Rotate the key clockwise, and only the door at driver side can be unlocked.

⚠ Warning

To protect the door lock motor, if the door is successively locked and unlocked for 6 times, the body control system will enter door lock motor protection status (one more unlocking can be executed). In such case, the door lock can be operated 5s later.

Child Safety Lock

The child safety lock can prevent the child from opening the door unintentionally, which is able to reduce the accident risk. After the child safety lock is activated, the door only can be opened from outside.



Unlocking Child Safety Lock:

– Open the door whose child safety lock needs to be unlocked.

– Turn the child safety lock from 🔓 to 🔒 as shown in the picture to close the child safety lock.

Locking Child Safety Lock:

– Open the door that needs to lock the child safety lock.

– Turn the child safety lock from 🔒 to 🔓 as shown in the picture to activate the child safety lock.

i Hint

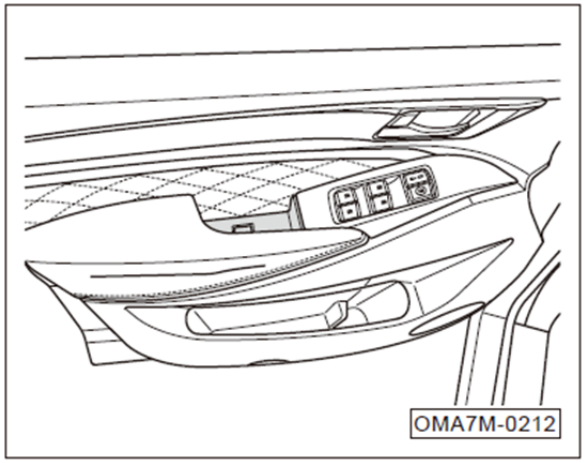
When the child safety lock is activated, the rear door cannot be opened by inner handle. In such case, the rear door can be opened from outside. Do not rudely pull the inner handle, otherwise it may be damaged.

⚠ Warning

Never leave the child or the disabled alone in the vehicle. Once the lock button is pressed, the door will be locked immediately. When an emergency occurs, it is hard for the child or the disabled to leave the vehicle by self. In the event of accidents, locked doors will certainly increase the difficulty of rescue.

4.2.4 Door

Opening and Closing of Front Doors



– Pull inward the handle from inside.

– Push the front door directly from outside.

Caution

When opening the door, observe whether any vehicle or pedestrian is around to avoid occurrence of collision accident.

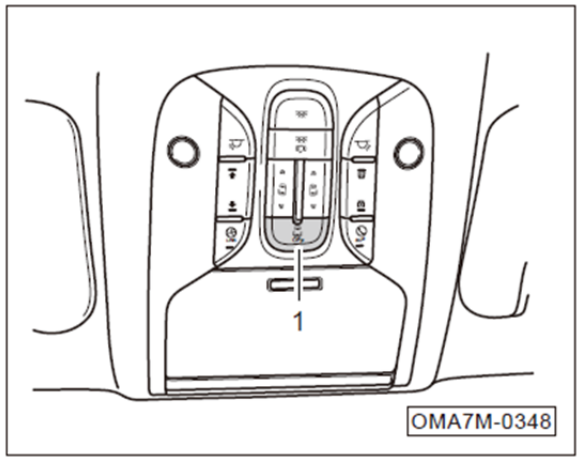
Warning

- **Before driving off, check that all doors are closed. Insecurely closed doors may be opened suddenly during travel, causing injury or accident.**
- **The doors can only be opened or closed when the car is stationary.**
- **To avoid pinch, hands must be away from the door edge while the door is closed.**

Hint

- If the door is insecurely closed, for example when the applied force is insufficient, open and close the door again.
- An alert will appear on the instrument cluster display if any door is insecurely closed; When the vehicle speed exceeds 5km/h, you will hear a warning beep.

Electrically Control Opening and Closing of Sliding Door*



Sliding Door Electric Function “OFF” Keypad

The electric function “OFF” keypad ① of the sliding door is on the combination switch of the front roof light.

– When keypad ① is pressed (keypad recessed), the electric function of the sliding door is deactivated. In this case, the sliding door can be opened or closed manually only.

– The electric function can be recovered by pressing keypad ① (rebound) again.

Hint

- When the electric function is deactivated, corresponding auxiliary actuation function is still effective. When the sliding door is half-closed, the actuation function can be still triggered to ensure the sliding door can close completely.
- Please avoid opening/closing switchover on a slope as this may result in accident due to sudden loss of assistance for the sliding door. In this case, the speed protection mode will be enabled so as to avoid any possible danger due to sudden action of the sliding door so that the sliding door can only work step by step till it opens or closes completely.

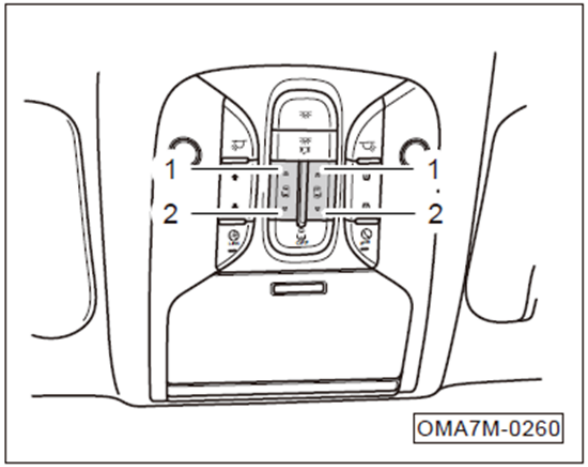
Dynamic Protection of Electric Sliding Door

– When the vehicle speed is higher than 3km/h, the sliding door cannot continue opening and can only start stopping. In this case, the speaker gives short warning sound.

– When the vehicle speed is higher than 3km/h and the sliding door does not close completely yet, the speaker continues alarming to remind you of closing the sliding door.

Hint

- When the fuel tank lid is open, the right electric sliding door cannot be power-operated; it can be opened or closed manually, but it cannot be manually opened fully due to restriction by the mechanical stopper so as to avoid interference with the fuel tank lid. After the fuel tank lid is closed, the electric function is recovered.
- When the sliding door is locked, its electric function (opening and closing) is deactivated.
- If the car is locked when the sliding door is open, the sliding door can only close automatically and lock under actuation.
- The speaker will alarm when the sliding door is opening or closing or the anti-pinch function is triggered.



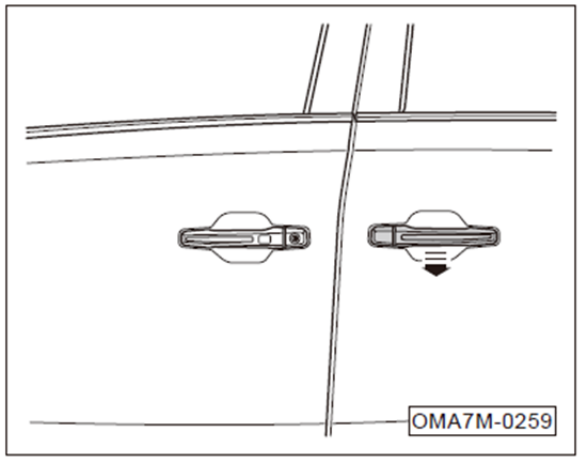
Operation of Buttons

If the electric function of the sliding door is effective, the sliding door at corresponding side will open or close automatically when the button on the combination switch of the front roof light is pressed down.

– Press Button ① to open the sliding door at corresponding side.

– Press Button ② to close the sliding door at corresponding side.

– Press the button again during moving of the sliding door to stop its moving.



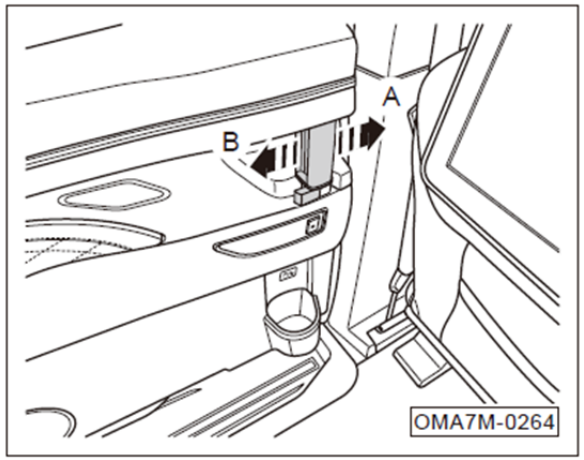
Outer Handle

When the electric function of the sliding door is effective, the sliding door can be opened or closed by pulling the outer handle.

– When the sliding door is open completely, it can be closed by pulling the outer handle.

– When the sliding door is closed completely and unlocked, it can be opened by pulling the outer handle.

– When the sliding door is moving, it will stop moving by pulling the outer handle and resume moving firstly towards the opening direction till it is opened completely.



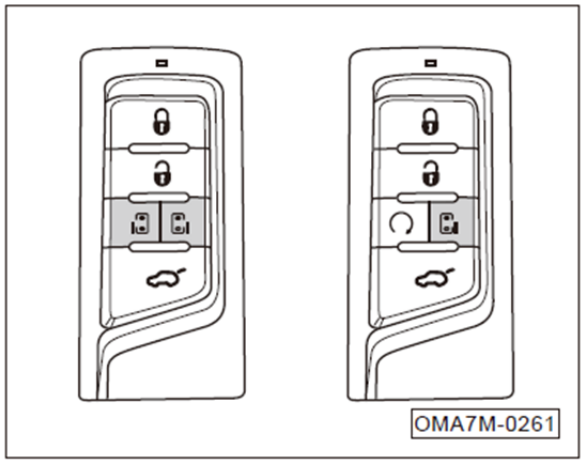
Inner Handle

When the electric function is effective and the door lock latch and child safety lock are unlocked, the sliding door can open or close automatically by pulling the inner handle.

– Close corresponding sliding door by pulling the inner handle in the direction of arrow A.

– Open corresponding sliding door by pulling the inner handle in the direction of arrow B.

– Stop the sliding door from moving by pulling the inner handle again.



Smart Key

– Long press the button on the smart key to open or close the sliding door automatically at corresponding side when the electric function is effective. =>Refer to Page 68

Anti-Pinch Function of Sliding Door

1. Anti-pinch Strip Mode

This feature remains effective while the hatchback door is automatically closing:

– If the feature is triggered, the sliding door stops closing and automatically opens completely.

2. Obstacle Detection Mode

This feature remains effective while the hatchback door is automatically opening or closing:

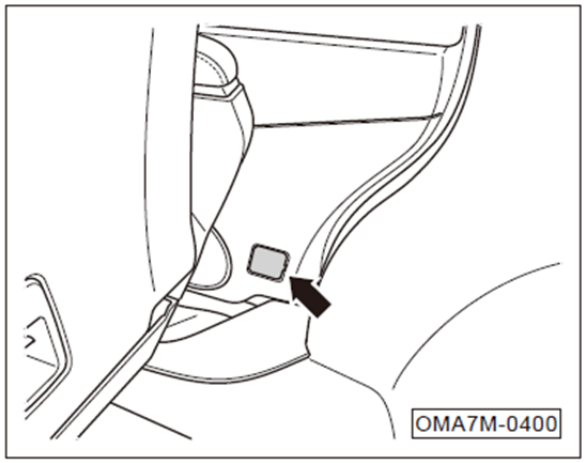
– If any obstacle is detected when the sliding door is closing automatically and the anti-pinch function is triggered, the sliding door stops closing and automatically opens completely.

– If any obstacle is detected when the sliding door is closing automatically and the anti-pinch function is triggered, the sliding door closes slightly and then stops closing.

Hint

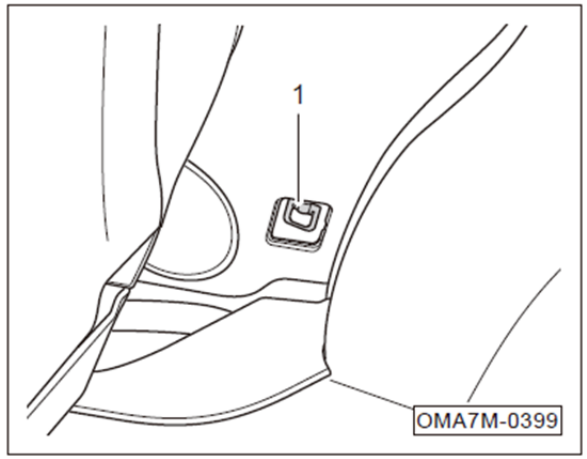
The speaker will alarm when the anti-pinch function is triggered.

Emergency Opening of Sliding Door*



The sliding door may be opened from inside the car when it cannot open normally as the battery is disconnected or the electric lock is faulty:

1. Pry up the trim panel below the rear of the sliding door as indicated by the arrow.

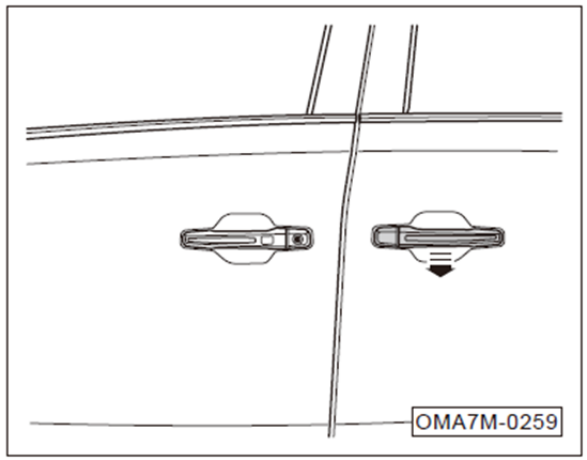


2. Try to open the sliding door by simultaneously pulling the emergency handle ① and inner handle of the sliding door.

Hint

If it cannot be opened, please go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your car checked and repaired.

Manually Control Opening and Closing of Sliding Door

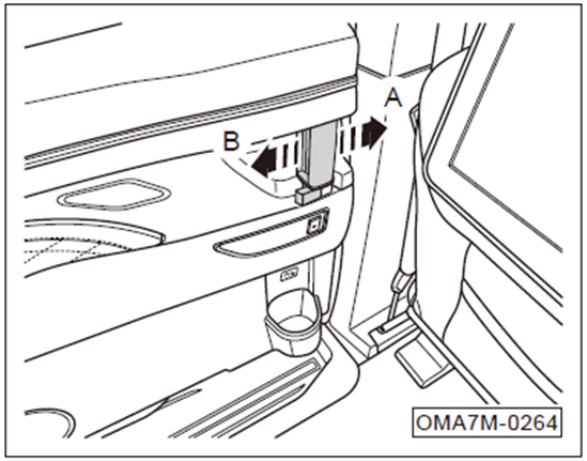


Outer Handle

When the electric function of the electric sliding door is closed, or this function is not configured for the sliding door, the sliding door can be opened or closed manually.

– When the sliding door is open completely, corresponding sliding door can be closed by pulling the outer handle to unlock and pull the sliding door.

– When the sliding door is closed completely and unlocked, corresponding sliding door can be opened by pulling the outer handle to unlock and pull the sliding door.



Inner Handle

– When the sliding door is open completely, corresponding sliding door can be closed by pulling the inner handle in the direction of arrow A.

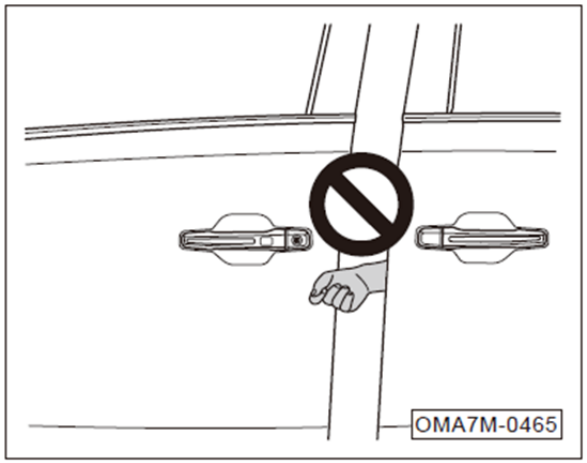
– When the sliding door is closed completely and both the door lock latch and child safety lock are unlocked, corresponding sliding door can be opened by pulling the inner handle in the direction of arrow B.

i Hint

- If the sliding door is insecurely closed for example when the applied force is insufficient, open and close the door again.
- An alert will appear on the display of instrument cluster if the sliding door is insecurely closed; When the vehicle speed exceeds 3km/h, the speaker will sound warning beep continuously.

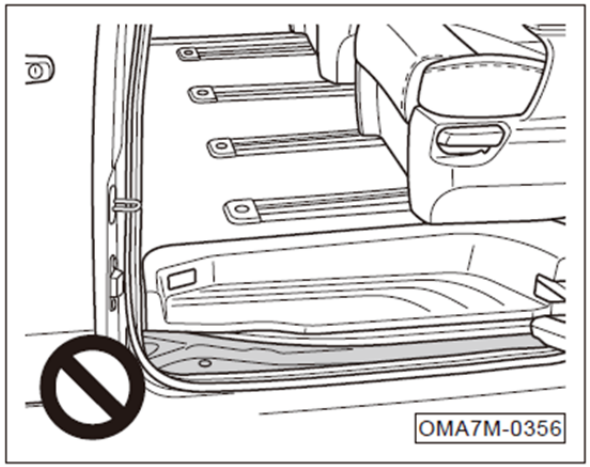
⚠ Warning

- **Before driving off, check that all sliding doors are closed. Insecurely closed doors may be opened suddenly during travel, causing injury or accident.**
- **The sliding doors can only be opened or closed when the car is stationary.**



Caution

To avoid pinch, hands must be away from the door edge while the sliding door is closed.

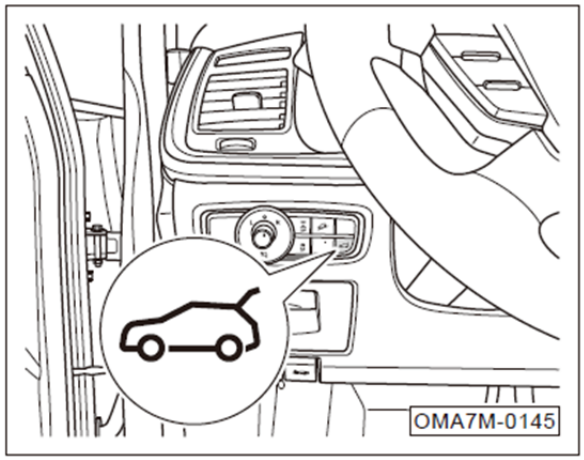


Caution

Never tramp the guide slot of the sliding door.

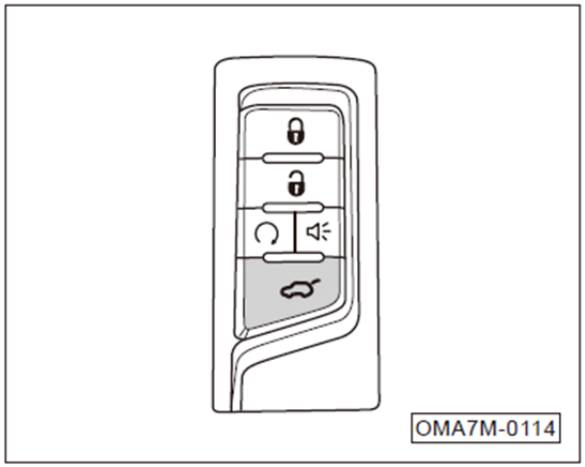
4.2.5 Hatchback Door

Opening Hatchback Door with Button on the Instrument Panel*



– Long press the hatchback door button on the instrument panel and hold for 2s or more, the electric hatchback door automatically opens to the highest position. Press the button again in the process, the hatchback door can stop opening.

Releasing Hatchback Door with the Smart key

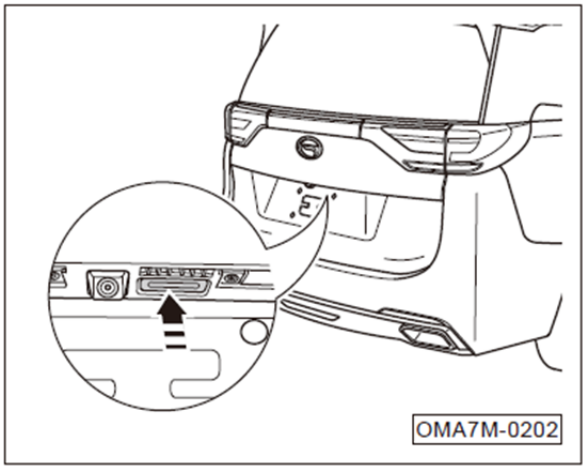


In the effective range, press the button on the smart key for approximately 2s:

– In the case of a general hatchback door, you can manually open it to the highest position.

– In the case of an electric hatchback door, it can open to the highest position. Pressing the button again while it is opening can stop the opening process.

Opening Hatchback Door with PEPS*



Carrying the smart key with you, press the hatchback door release button in the range approximately 1.0m from the hatchback door:

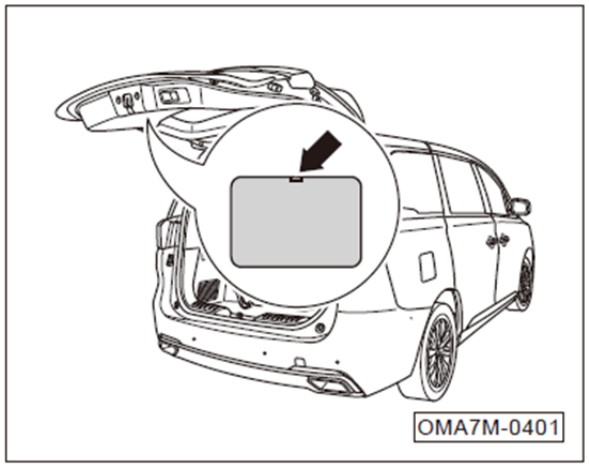
– In the case of a general hatchback door, you can manually open it to the highest position.

– In the case of an electric hatchback door, it can open to the highest position. Pressing the button again while it is opening can stop the opening process.

Hint

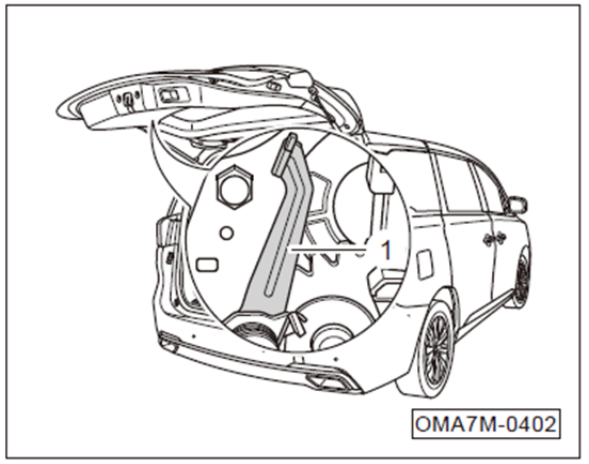
- If the car is unlocked and stationary, then it is not necessary to carry the smart key.
- When the hatchback door begins to open automatically, both the left and right turn signals flash twice.
- While the electric hatchback door is opening automatically, the buzzer sounds once.

Opening Hatchback Door in Emergency



When the car is powered off or the hatchback door cannot open as normal, you can try to open it from inside the car in emergency:

1. Pry up the trim panel on the hatchback door as indicated by the arrow.

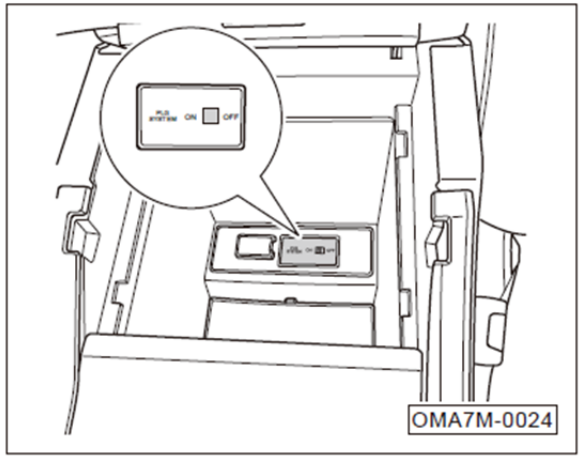


2. Press its emergency switch ① to unlock and open the hatchback door.

Hint

If it cannot be opened, please go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your car checked and repaired.

Master Switch of the Electric Hatchback Door System*



The master switch is located in the central armrest box. To operate the switch, open the central armrest box first:

– Setting the master switch of electric hatchback door system at ON enables the automatic opening/closing function of the hatchback door;

– Setting the master switch of electric hatchback door system at OFF deactivates the automatic opening/closing function of the hatchback door.

Conditions for Automatic Opening

When the vehicle speed is lower than 3km/h, electric opening function is effective.

Conditions for Automatic Closing

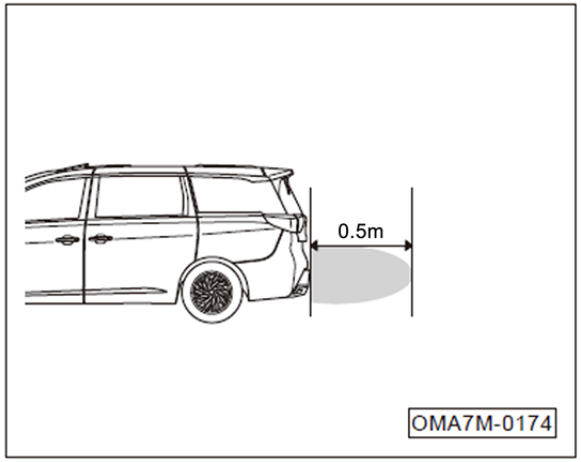
The automatic closing function can be performed regardless vehicle speed and transmission gear.

Hint

If the hatchback door cannot open/close automatically, check whether the master switch of the electric hatchback door is set to “ON”.

If the master switch is set to ON but the problem remains there, have the system checked by a GAC MOTOR dealer.

Automatic Opening of Hatchback Door*



– With the Start switch at "OFF" and the four doors closed, carry the smart key with you into the hatchback door sensing area. When you are approximately 0.5m from the hatchback door, the horn sounds once, the high brake light flickers four times and the turn signal light flickers twice. If you remain there or retreat one step, the hatchback door opens automatically 3s later.

– If within the period in which the high brake light flickers you leave the hatchback door sensing area or short press on the smart key, it can pause the automatic opening function.

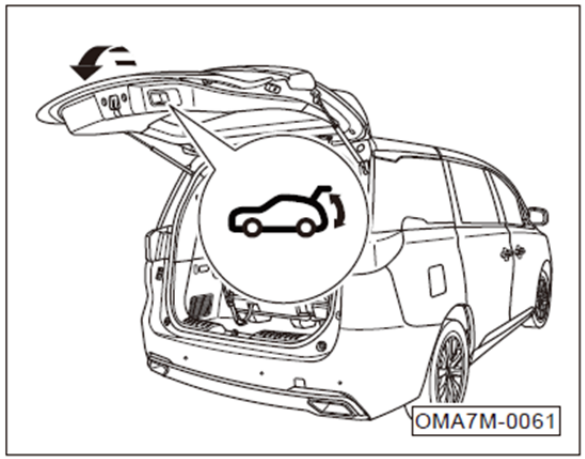
Hint

- To reactive the hatchback door automatically opening function after pausing it using the button on the smart key, you should open then close either front door.
- The “automatic opening of hatchback door” function is optional, which can be activated or deactivated via "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 225

Caution

- Be sure that the smart key is at least 1m away from the hatchback door when you are cleaning the car. This function should be deactivated during cleaning as the hatchback door may be triggered to be opened when a car washer is in the hatchback door sensing area.
- Your pickup with the smart key near the hatchback door could result in automatic opening of the hatchback door.
- When automatic sensing function of opening the hatchback door is enabled, please check that no people or obstacles are within the hatchback door coverage.

Closing the Hatchback Door



General Hatchback Door

– Lower the hatchback door down to the rear bumper cover in the direction of the arrow, and then press it down to close it with hands.

Electric Hatchback Door

- Press the Close button on the hatchback door, the electric hatchback door can automatically lower to close. Press the button again in the process, the hatchback door can stop closing.
- In the effective range, press the button on the smart key and hold for about 2s, the electric hatchback door can automatically lower to close. Press the button again in the process, the hatchback door can stop closing.

– Long press the hatchback door button on the instrument panel and hold for 2s or more, the electric hatchback door automatically lowers to close. Press the button again in the process, the hatchback door can stop closing.

– Check whether the hatchback door is locked securely.

Hint

- When the hatchback door begins to close automatically, the turn signal lights flash twice.
- While the electric hatchback door is closing automatically, the buzzer sounds once.
- An alert will appear on the instrument cluster display if the hatchback door is insecurely closed; When the vehicle speed exceeds 5km/h, you will hear a warning beep.
- The hatchback door is locked immediately after it is closed.

Caution

Always check that the hatchback door is closed securely. Otherwise, it can cause accidents easily.

- Before closing the hatchback door, please check that no people or animals are within the hatchback door coverage.
- Check that the hatchback door is securely locked. Otherwise, it could open accidentally while the vehicle is traveling.

Height Setting of Electric Hatchback Door*

Electric hatchback door opening height setting can be performed when it opens by more than half the preset height. Next time, the electric hatchback door can open to the new setting.

Opening Height Setting

Open the hatchback door to desired height. Long press the hatchback door Close button and hold for more than 2s, and release after the alert from the buzzer is heard. The height setting is hence completed.

Hint

With the height setting completed, the buzzer sounds intermittently twice.

Canceling Height Setting

Manually open the hatchback door to above the set height, this cancels the height setting.

Hint

When height setting is canceled, the buzzer sounds once for a long time.

Anti-Pinch Function of Electric Hatchback Door*

1. Anti-Pinch of Anti-pinch Strip

This feature remains effective while the hatchback door is automatically closing:

– If the feature is triggered while the hatchback door is automatically closing, the hatchback door stops closing and automatically opens to initial position.

2. Obstacle Detection

This feature remains effective while the hatchback door is automatically opening or closing:

– If the feature is triggered while the hatchback door is automatically closing, the hatchback door stops closing and automatically opens to initial position.

– If the feature is triggered while the hatchback door is automatically opening, the hatchback door stops opening, closes slightly then stops moving.

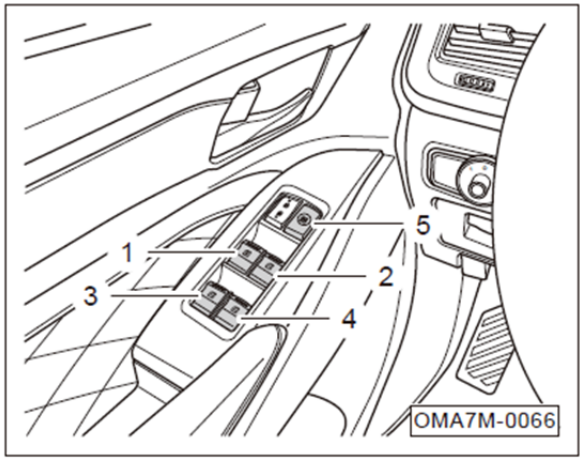
Hint

With the anti-pinch function triggered, the buzzer sounds intermittently three times.

4.2.6 Electric Windows

With the Start switch at “ON” position, the electric windows can be operated. Within 40s after the Start switch is turned to “ACC” or “OFF” from “ON”, the electric windows can be operated. However, if the door is opened within this 40s, the electric windows cannot be operated.

Electric Window Button on the Driver's Side



1. Front left electric window button
2. Front right electric window button
3. Rear left electric window button
4. Rear right electric window button
5. Passenger window lock button

– When button ① is pulled up lightly, the electric window moves up. It stops moving if it has reached the highest position or the button is released.

– Lightly press button ①, the electric window moves down. It stops moving if it has reached the lowest position or the button is released.

– When Button ① is heavily pressed, the electric window moves down all the way to the lowest position.

– Buttons ②, ③ and ④ are operated in the same manner as Button ① and are used to operate respective window.

Hint

To interrupt the window movement during the automatic lowering process, pull up Button ① again.

– The window on the driver's side can be lifted by one key. Namely, the electric window on the driver's side can automatically rise to the highest position by pulling up Button ①.

Hint

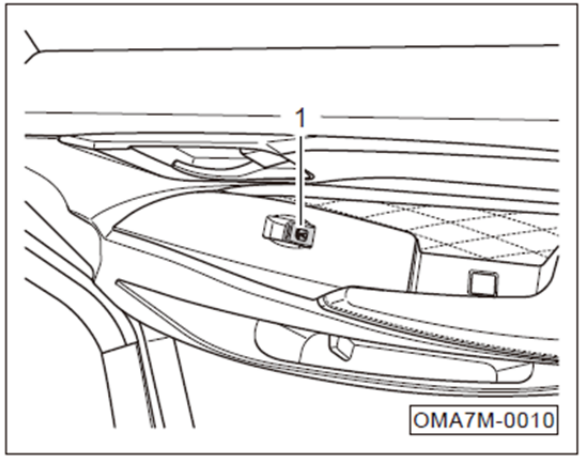
- To interrupt the window movement during the automatic lifting process, please press Button ① again. Other electric windows are not equipped with this function.

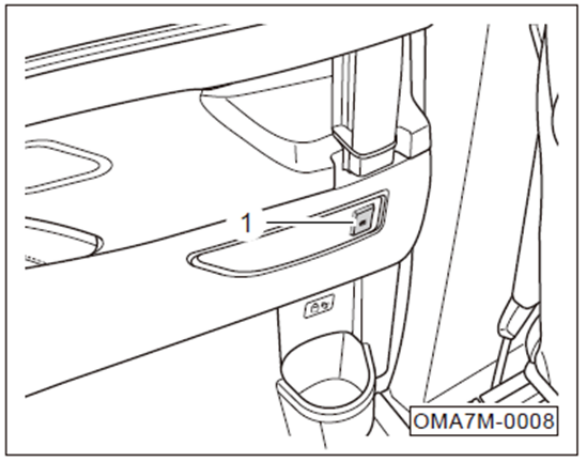
– If the passenger window lock button ⑤ is activated, the button indicator is on. Buttons ①, ②, ③ and ④ can be used for effective operation of respective window while the passenger side electric window button cannot the used for operation of respective window. To unlock, press the button again. Then, the button indicator is off.

Caution

- Please close all the doors and windows when leaving the car.
- To avoid pinch, hands must be away from the door/window edge while the door/window is being closed.

Passenger Side Electric Window Button





– When button ① is pulled up lightly, the electric window moves up. It stops moving if it has reached the highest position or the button is released.

– Lightly press button ①, the electric window moves down. It stops moving if it has reached the lowest position or the button is released.

– When Button ① is heavily pressed, the electric window moves down all the way to the lowest position.

Hint

- To interrupt the window movement during the automatic lowering process, pull up Button ① again.
- If the passenger window lock button is activated (the button indicator is on), passenger side electric window button ① cannot the used for operation of respective window.

Anti-Pinch Function

The driver side electric window is equipped with anti-pinch function. If the window encounters an obstacle when it moves up in the anti-pinch area, it stops there and moves down immediately. If the above situation occurs, check out the reason before closing the window again.

If the anti-pinch function has been activated for quite a few times in a short period, the initialization data of anti-pinch is automatically erased to protect the window movement system. In this case, check carefully for obstacle again. Remove the obstacle if any. Perform the initialization learning to recover the anti-pinch function.

Caution

- In spite of the anti-pinch function, it is necessary to check for obstacle before closing windows. In some cases (for example, thin or flexible obstacles), anti-pinch function may not be triggered.
- Do not install any accessories within window movement range. Otherwise, anti-pinch function could be affected or accidentally triggered thus the windows cannot be closed normally.

Anti-Pinch Initialization

Initialization must be performed again if the driver side electric window cannot move up automatically due to anti-pinch function failure, or if initialization data of anti-pinch has been automatically erased due to the anti-pinch function being activated for quite a few times in a short period.

1. When the electric window button on the driver's side is pulled up, the window moves up step by step until it is closed completely.
2. Then continue to pull up and hold the button for 2s to 3s. The initialization is thus completed.

Hint

During initialization learning, the window has no anti-pinch function, so do not use any part of the body or other articles to obstruct the window movement. Otherwise, injury may be caused and the initialization affected. If the electric window system fails, contact your authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.

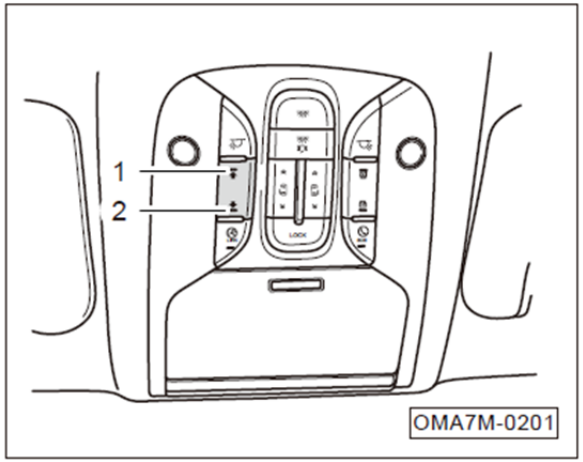
4.2.7 Electric Sunroof

With the Start switch at “ON” position, the electric sunroof can be operated. Within 40s after the Start switch is turned to “ACC” or “OFF” from “ON”, the electric windows can be operated. However, if the door is opened within this 40s, the electric sunroof cannot be operated.

Hint

With the Start switch at "OFF", the instrument cluster will display "Sunroof Not Closed" and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver if the door on the driver's side is opened but the electric sunroof is not closed. In this case, please check whether the sunroof is closed timely.

Open and Close the Electric Sunroof



The electric sunroof is a sliding-type electric sunroof. Tilting and sliding can be performed for the completely closed sunroof.

– To slightly open the sunroof, briefly press Button ①. The sunroof will move a short distance and then stop.

– To slightly close the sunroof, briefly press Button ②. The sunroof will move a short distance and then stop.

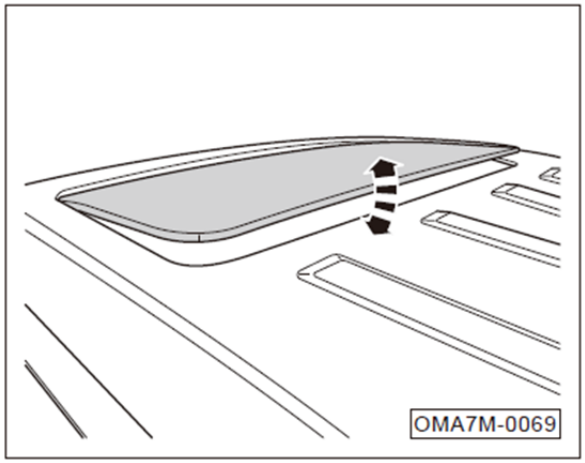
– Press and hold Button ① for a short time, the sunroof will automatically open completely.

– Press and hold Button ② for a short time, the sunroof will automatically close completely.

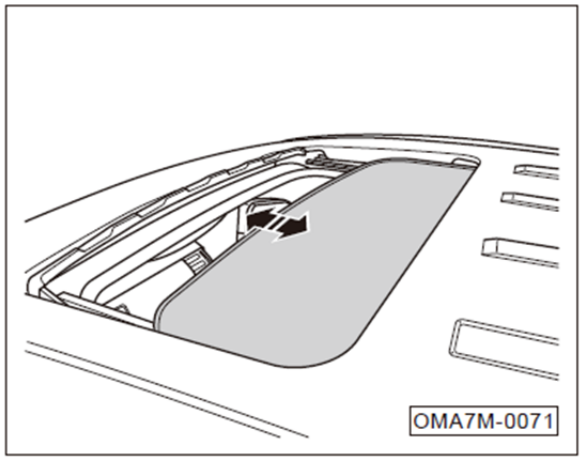
– If you want some fresh air, press Button ② when the sunroof is closed and the sunroof will automatically move to the tilt position; if you want to close it, press Button ① until the sunroof is fully closed.

Caution

Before leaving the car, fully close the sunroof. If not, rain or foreign matters may enter the car.

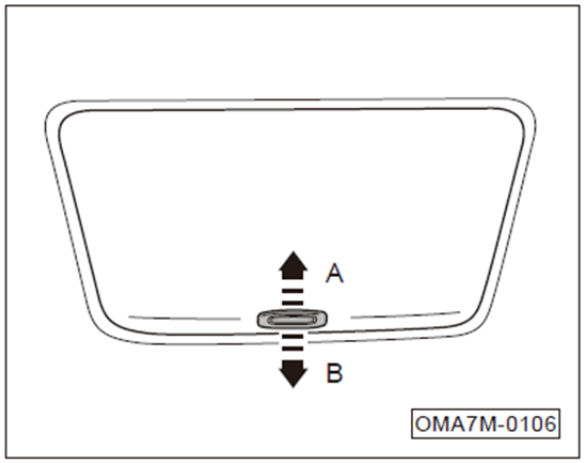


– The figure shows the rear end of sunroof tilting.



– The figure shows that the electric sunroof slides to fully open position.

Open and Close the Sunroof Visor



Hold the groove:

– Pull open the sunroof visor in the direction of arrow A;

– Close the sunroof visor in the direction of arrow B.

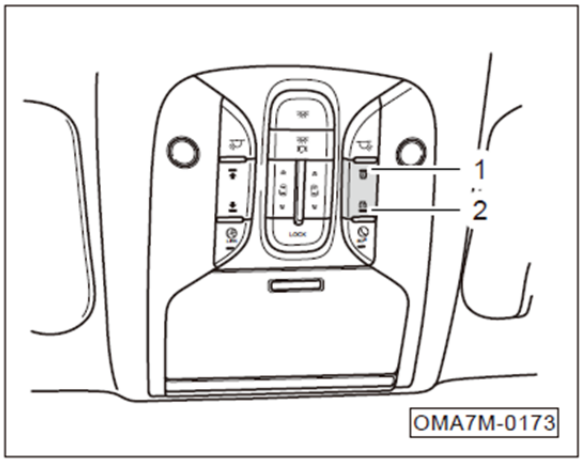
Hint

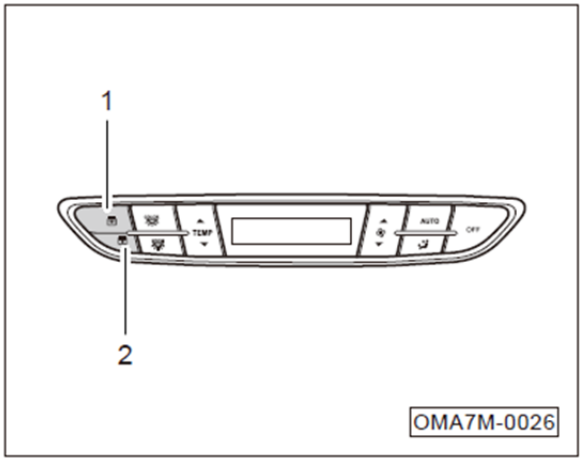
When the sunroof opens, the electric sunroof visor automatically opens too.

Caution

- Only when the sunroof is closed completely can the sunroof visor be closed completely. Otherwise, the sunroof visor could be damaged due to the air flow produced when the vehicle is moving.
- Close the electric sunroof before closing the sunroof visor.
- If the sunroof visor is closed but the sunroof is not, rainwater can enter the vehicle when it rains.

Electric Sunshade*





With the Start switch at "ON" position, open or close the electric sunshade by pressing the front roof light combination switch buttons ① and ② or rear central control switch group buttons ① and ②.

– To slightly open the sunshade, briefly short press button ①, the sunshade will move for a short distance and then stop.

– To slightly close the sunshade, briefly short press the button ②, the sunshade will move for a short distance and then stop.

– Press and hold Button ① for a short time, the sunshade will automatically open completely.

– Press and hold Button ② for a short time, the sunshade will automatically close completely.

Sunroof Anti-pinch Function

When the sunroof slides to close or closes downwards from tilting, the anti-pinch function will be activated.

- During sliding, if the anti-pinch function is triggered, the sunroof will move a certain distance along the open direction and then stop.
- When the sunroof is in the tip-up area, if the anti-pinch function is triggered, the sunroof will move along the tilt direction until the maximum tilt position.
- The anti-pinch function can prevent the sunroof from pinching big items during closing. If the sunroof comes into an obstacle when closing, it will automatically stop closing and immediately move backwards a bit.

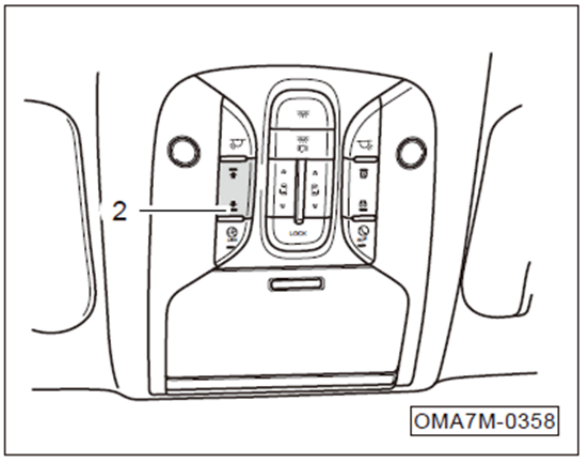
Caution

Do not try to operate the sunroof at low temperature (below -20°C). In such environment, the anti-pinch function may not be activated, resulting in accidents. Also, low temperature can damage the sunroof motor.

Warning

- Be sure to close the sunroof with extra care. To avoid pinch, make sure that nobody stays within movement range of the sunroof.
- The anti-pinch function cannot prevent the sunroof from pinching human fingers or other items in small size.
- The electric sunroof stops sensing obstacle when it is almost closed. At this time, there is no anti-pinch function.
- Do not attempt to activate the anti-pinch function by hand or your body part. Otherwise, serious pinch may be caused.

Sunroof Manual Initialization



In some cases (sudden out of power of battery or no use of vehicle for a long time), you may need to manually initialize the sunroof and perform its adaptive learning. Details are as follows:

1. When the sunroof is closed, press Button ② and release it until the sunroof moves to the fully tip-up position.
2. Press Button ② for over 10s to initialize the sunroof. After two clicks, the initialization is completed.

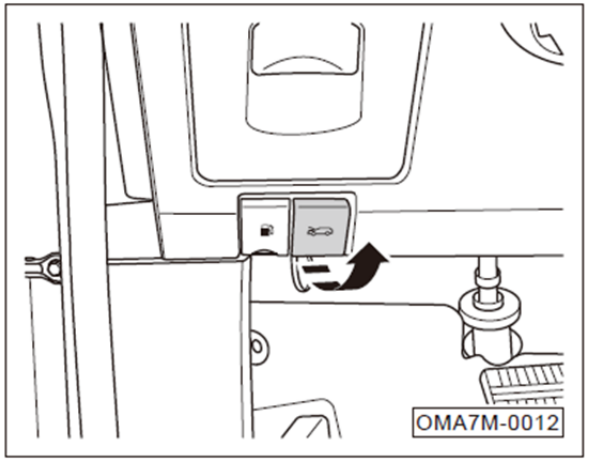
3. After the initialization, press and hold button ② and stop movement of the sunroof after the movement “tip-up position → OFF position → sliding open → OFF position” to finish adaptive learning of the sunroof.

Caution

If the electric window system fails, contact your authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.

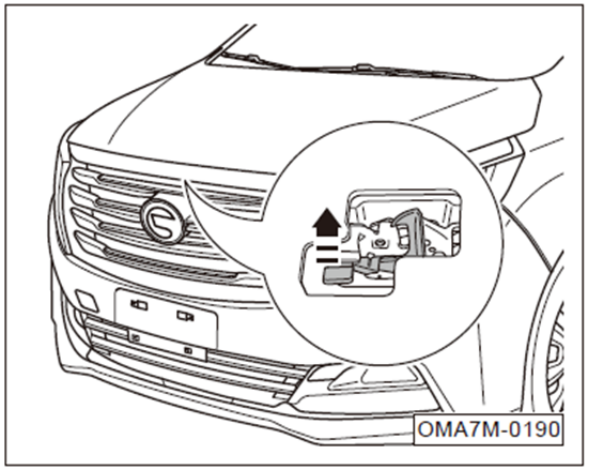
4.2.8 Engine Hood

Open and Close the Engine Hood

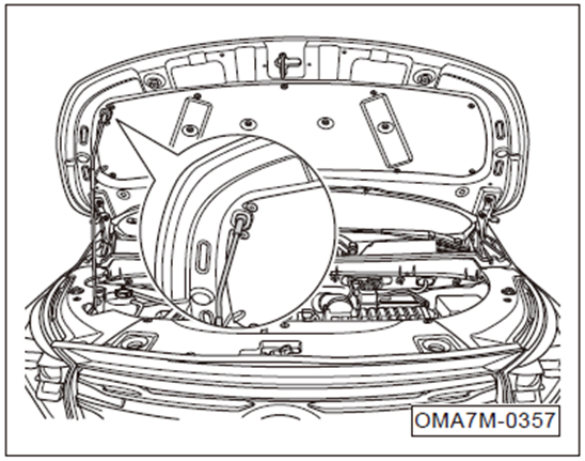


– Park your car properly and apply the parking brake.

– In the direction of arrow, pull the hood release handle that is located below the instrument panel on the driver side, the hood is unlocked and slightly springs up.



– Push upward the lockup mechanism in direction of the arrow to fully unlock the engine hood.



– Open up the engine hood and support it with stay bar.

– To close the engine hood, drop it to the position near the fenders, push heavily its front end downward using both hands.

– After the engine hood is closed, inspect whether the buckle is locked firmly.

Hint

- Lubricate the moving part of the lockup mechanism of the engine hood properly to help open or close the engine hood.
- An alert will appear on the instrument cluster display if the engine hood is insecurely closed; When the vehicle speed exceeds 5km/h, you will hear a warning beep.

Warning

Engine compartment is a hazard area where improper operation may cause serious injuries or deaths.

- **If you see vapor or coolant overflowing from the engine compartment, do not open the hood to avoid scald. Please contact your authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.**
- **When the engine is hot, do not touch it. Doing so can seriously scald you.**
- **Never open the coolant expansion tank cover when the engine is in hot condition. At this moment, the cooling system is at high temperature and pressure condition.**
- **During the startup or running of the engine, do not touch the drive belt, alternator, radiator fan and other rotating components, the high-voltage ignition system and high-temperature exhaust system.**

4.2.9 Basic Operations of Anti-Theft on Vehicle Body

Anti-Theft on Vehicle Body - Unlock

With the Start switch at “OFF” position and the car locked, carry the smart key with you, approach the car, and put your hand on the inner side of the handle of the driver's door (unlocking area), after effective sensing or remote unlocking, the anti-theft system unlocks the door and the instrument panel turn signal indicator and turn signal light flash twice.

Anti-Theft on Vehicle Body - Lock

With the Start switch at “OFF” position and four doors, engine hood and hatchback door are closed, you can take the smart key away from the car and press the handle groove of the door on driver’s side or the lock button on the smart key to lock the car. Meanwhile, both the turn signal indicators in the instrument cluster and the turn signal light flicker once, and the car will enter anti-theft status.

1. If the engine hood or the hatchback door is not securely closed, press on the smart key to start alarm. The left and right turn signals will flash 3 times, the anti-theft horn will sound shortly with a cycle of 2s, and the car will enter anti-theft status 10s later.
2. If any door is not closed, after on the smart key is pressed, the four doors will be locked and then immediately unlocked without any alarm.

Hint

During warning, if the door insecurely closed is fully closed, the vehicle will enter anti-theft status. During warning, if the button on the smart key is pressed, warning will stop and the car will enter unlocking status.

Activate the Anti - Theft on Vehicle Body

With the Start switch at “OFF” position, the car is locked. If any door, engine hood, or hatchback door is unlocked forcibly or using an illegal key, the anti-theft system will trigger the horn beep and flashing of turn signals for about 28s.

When the car is locked at anti-theft status by smart key, the immobilizer system will trigger horn sound and both turn signal lights will flicker for alarm within several seconds after the door on the driver's side is opened with the mechanical key.

Hint

Before the alarm is triggered or during an alarm, if on the smart key is pressed or the Start switch is switched to “ON” position, the alarm stops and the car is unlocked. In an alarm cycle, the alarm can be triggered 10 times at most.

Anti-Theft on Engine

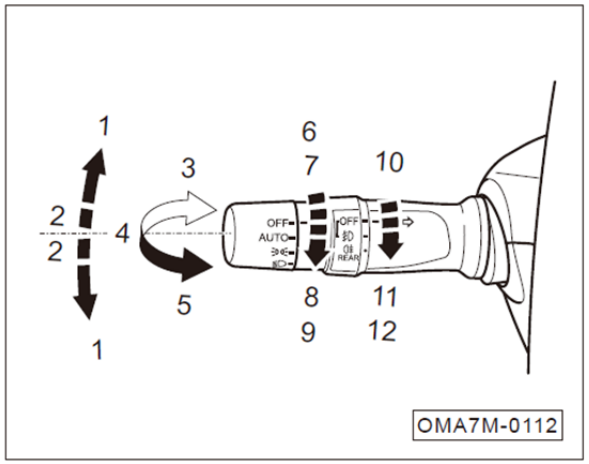
With the Start switch at "OFF", car body immobilizer system released and the smart key inside the car, if the Start switch is switched to “ON” position and the engine immobilizer system passes validation, the system will releases the engine anti-theft.

If it fails the validation, the immobilizer system prevents from starting the engine and triggers anti-theft alarm.

4.3 Lights and Visual Field

4.3.1 Exterior Lights

Light Combination Switch



1. Turn signal light
2. Lane change flashlight
3. High beam
4. Low beam
5. High beam flashing
6. OFF (Lights off)
7. AUTO (Auto lighting)*
8. Position light (manual open)
9. Low beam (manually turn on headlight)
10. OFF (Fog lights off)
11. Front fog light
12. Rear fog light

Hint

After driving in rainy days or washing the car, frosting/fogging may occur on inner side of the light due to difference of temperature inside and outside the light. This is similar to fogging on window in rainy days and has not impact on the service life of the light. The fog can be eliminated by turning on the light. If a great quantity of water droplets or water is found inside the light, please contact your authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.

Turn Signal Light

– By pushing the light combination switch lever up or down to position ①, the right or left turn signal is turned on and ⇨ or ⇦ in the instrument cluster flashes.

Caution

If any turn signal on the front end or rear end fails, flashing frequency of the turn signal indicators in the instrument cluster will be doubled.

Lane Change Signal Light

– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position.

– By pushing quickly (within 0.1~0.7s) the light combination switch lever up or down to position ②, and then releasing it to let it return to the original position, the corresponding turn signal flashes three times, and the turn signal indicator in the instrument cluster also flashes three times.

– By pushing the light combination switch lever up or down to position ② and keeping it at this position, the corresponding turn signal and also the turn signal indicator in the instrument cluster flash continuously. If the lever is released to let it return to the original position, the flashing stops.

High Beam

– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position.

– Turn the light combination switch to position.

– By pushing forward (forward direction of the car) the light combination switch lever to position ③, high beams are turned on and in the instrument cluster flashes.

– By pulling back (backward direction of the car) the light combination switch lever to position ④, high beams are turned off but low beams are still on.

– To turn off all the vehicle lights, turn the light combination switch to the OFF position.

⚠ Warning

High beams may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles nearby and result in accidents. Please use them properly.

Low Beam

– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position.

– When the light combination switch lever is at position ④, turn the light combination switch to position to turn on low beams.

– To turn off all the vehicle lights, turn the light combination switch to the OFF position.

High Beam Flashing

– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position.

– Pull back (backward direction of the car) the light combination switch lever to position ⑤ to turn on headlight high beams.

– Release the light combination switch lever to let it return to position ④ to turn off the headlight high beams.

Hint

Even if no light is turned on, high beams remain on and in the instrument cluster remains on if the light combination switch lever is pulled back (backward direction of the car).

AUTO (Auto Lighting)*

– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position.

– Turn the light combination switch to AUTO Position to turn on auto lighting.

Hint

- With auto lighting enabled, lights of the car will be turned on or off depending on the environmental light. When the ambient lighting outside the car dims gradually, the position lights and low beams are turned on at the same time. When the ambient lighting outside the car brightens gradually, the position lights and low beams are turned off at the same time. When entering or exiting a tunnel or garage or other dark environment, the position lights and low beams will be automatically turned on or off at the same time.
- You can adjust auto light sensitivity via the "Car Setting" on audio system => Refer to Page 227.

Caution

- If the instrument cluster display prompts "The sensor fails, please control the lighting manually", and for the sake of safety, the system will keep low beams turned on. In this case, you can choose to control the lighting manually, and go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your car checked and repaired.
- Auto lighting may fail in heavily foggy or misty weather. Manually turn on the lights then.

Headlight not Off Warning

After the Start switch is switched to “OFF” position, if the headlights are on when the door on driver side is opened, the system will raise the alarm of buzzing. Meanwhile, the message “Light Not Off” appears on the instrument cluster display.

Headlight Lag Off Function (Follow Me Home)

Within 10 minutes after the Start switch is switched to “OFF” position, if the light combination switch is rotated from OFF position to another position and then back to OFF position within 2s, headlight lag off function is activated.

After this function is activated, the low beams will be on for 30s. If any door (including four doors, engine hood and hatchback door) is opened within this 30s, the time will be reset and the low beams will remain on for 80s. If all doors are closed during this period, the time will also be reset and the low beams will be on for 30s. If any door is opened during this period, the time will then be reset, the low beams will be on for 80s, and so on.

Hint

You can set the function of "Follow Me Home" via the "Car Setting" on audio system. => Refer to Page 227

Position Lights / Daytime Running Lights

– With the engine started, the daytime running lights can be automatically turned on. When the position lights or headlights are off or the engine stops work, the daytime running lights will be automatically turned off.

– By turning the light combination switch to position to turn on position lights, the position lights, instrument panel lighting lamp, number plate lights are turned on and in the instrument cluster is on accordingly.

– If you forget to turn off the position lights, after the Start switch is at "OFF" position and the car is locked for 15 minutes, these lights will be off automatically to save battery power.

Hint

"Daytime running light" function is optional, and can be activated or deactivated via "Car Setting" under the audio system. => Refer to Page 227

⚠ Warning

Never turn on the position light alone when driving at night or in other road environment of low visibility. Otherwise, it can cause accidents easily.

Fog Lights

– Switch the Start switch to "ON" position.

– Turn the light combination switch to ≡D◐≡ or ≡D position.

– Turn the fog light switch from OFF to ≡D position to turn on the front fog lights.

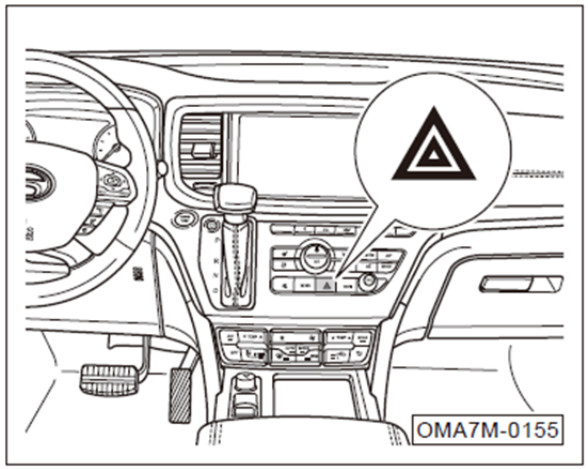
– Turn the fog light switch from ≡D to ◐≡ position, and release it to let it return to ≡D position to turn on the rear fog lights. Changeover between the mode of only front fog lights on and the mode of both front and rear fog lights on is available.

– Turn the fog light switch to OFF position to turn off front and rear fog lights.

i Hint

When the front and rear fog lights are on, they can be turned off by turning the light combination switch to "OFF" position; in this case, the front fog lights can be turned on again by turning the light combination switch to the position of the position light while the rear fog lights can be turned on again by using the fog light switch.

Hazard Warning Indicator Light



With the Start switch at any position, if ⚠ switch is pressed, the red background light of the switch is on, i.e. the hazard warning indicator light turned on. After the switch is pressed again, the light is turned off.

After the hazard warning indicator light is turned on, all turn signals flash at the same time, as well as the two turn signal indicators in the instrument cluster.

In case of emergency, use the hazard warning indicator light to attract the attention of other people on the road, so as to reduce the risk of accidents. Turn it on in one of the following conditions:

- In case of any car fault;
- At the end of traffic flow during traffic jam.
- Towing another vehicle or being towed.

Hint

- The hazard warning indicator light will consume battery. Turn them off if permitted.
- Follow the relevant laws and regulations when using the hazard warning indicator light.
- If the hazard warning indicator light fails in emergency, other warning means must be taken to attract attention of other people on the road provided that these means are safe and comply with relevant traffic regulations.

Emergency Braking Warning Light

In emergency braking of the car traveling at high speed, the brake light turns on and the left and right turn signal lights flicker to alert the vehicles behind.

Approach Light

– By pressing unlock button on the smart key when you get close to the car, the position lights will be on for 25s as auxiliary lighting so that you can see clearly obstacles if any. If unlock button on the smart key is pressed again, the position lights will be on for another 25s. If switching the Start switch to "ON" position after getting on the car, the position lights go out.

Lighting for Locating the Car

– If on the smart key is pressed twice successively within 0.5s, the position lights will be on for 8s and left and right turn signals will flash 4 times so that the car can be located easily.

Guest Greeting Light*

– When the Start switch is at “OFF” or “ACC” position, the guest greeting light will be on if the door is unlocked or opened.

– The guest greeting light is turned off if the Start switch is switched to “ON” position or after a while (the door is kept opening for 15 minutes).

Intelligent Guest Greeting Light*

– When the Start switch is at “OFF” position and all the doors are closed and locked, approach the car with smart key. When you are less than 3 meters to the car, the exterior rear-view mirrors unfold automatically*, and the ground lights, interior dome lights and atmosphere lights automatically turn on. After 15s, if the door is not opened, or you leave the car with the smart key, these lights go out automatically.

Hint

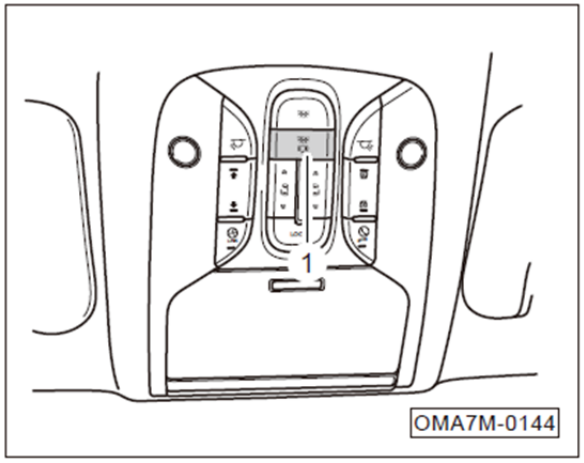
"Intelligent guest greeting light" function is optional, and can be enabled or disabled via "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 228

Caution

If the car engine is not started for more than 7 days, the intelligent guest greeting light function will be disabled automatically. After the car engine is started, the intelligent guest greeting light function will be activated again.

4.3.2 Interior Lights

Auto On Function of Roof Lights



– Press the switch ① (depressed) to deactivate the Auto On function of the roof lights.

– Press the switch ① (rebounded) again to enable the Auto On function of the roof lights.

Lag Off Function of Interior Lights

In the case that the Auto On function of roof lights is enabled:

– With the Start switch at "OFF", the roof light automatically turns on when any door is opened and turns off about 25s after the door is closed.

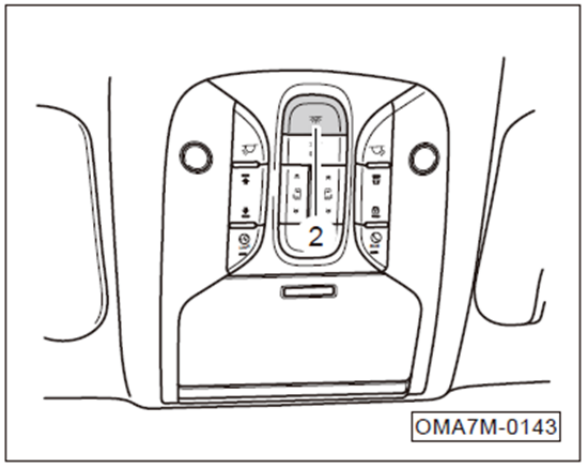
– With the Start switch at "OFF", the roof light automatically turns on and then turns off about 25s later when the door is unlocked by smart key.

– When the Start switch is switched from "ON" to "OFF", the roof light automatically turns on and then turns off about 25s later.

Hint

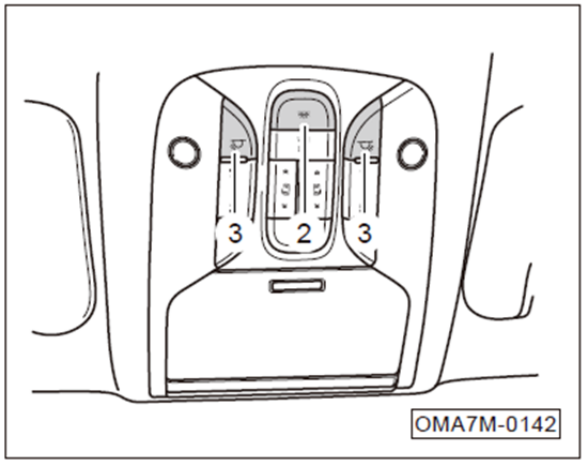
With the Start switch at "OFF", the doors closed and roof lights on, the roof lights will automatically turn off if locking with smart key or switching the Start switch to "ON".

Roof Lights



– Press the roof light switch ② (depressed) to turn on all the roof lights.

– Press the roof light switch ② (rebounded) again to turn off all the roof lights.



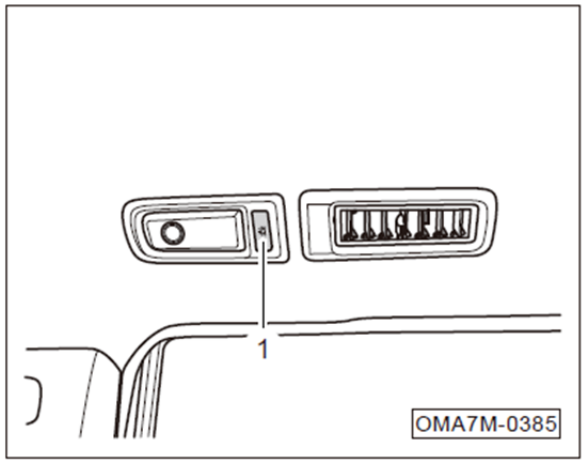
When the front roof light switch ② is not pressed (not depressed):

– Press the front roof light switch ③ (depressed) to turn on corresponding roof light.

– Press the front roof light switch ③ (rebounded) again to turn off corresponding roof light.

– If you forget to turn off this light, after the Start switch is at “OFF” position and the car is locked for 15 minutes, this light will be off automatically.

Second or Third Row Roof Light



– Press the second/third-row roof light switch ① (depressed) to turn on corresponding roof light.

– Press the second/third-row roof light switch ① (rebounded) again to turn off corresponding roof light.

– If you forget to turn off this light, after the Start switch is at “OFF” position and the car is locked for 15 minutes, this light will be off automatically.

Glove box light

– By opening the glove box on front passenger side, the glove box light will turn on automatically.

– By closing the glove box on front passenger side, the glove box light will go out automatically.

Trunk Light

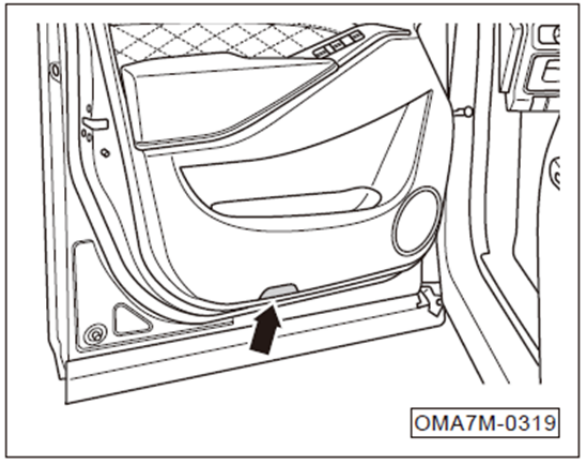
– By opening the hatchback door, the trunk light turns on automatically.

– By closing the hatchback door, the trunk light goes out automatically.

i Hint

With the Start switch at "OFF" position, interior lights automatically goes off if the doors remain locked for a period of time.

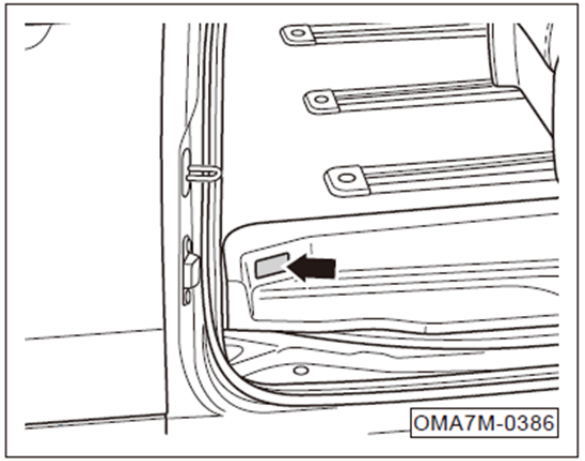
Front Door Open Warning Light



– When the door is opened, the door open warning light turns on automatically.

– When the door is closed, the door open warning light turns off automatically.

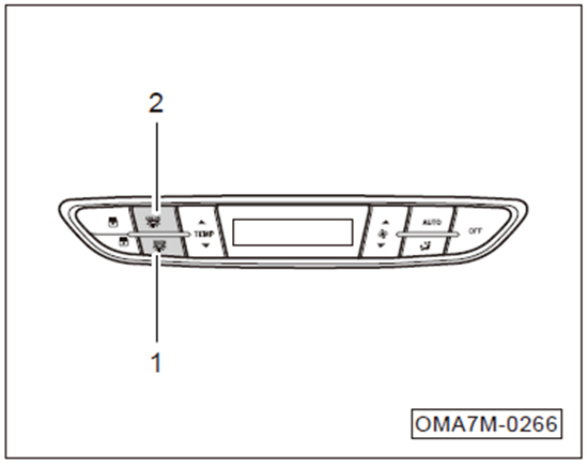
Second-Row Guest Greeting Light



– When the sliding door is opened, the guest greeting light will turn on automatically.

– When the sliding door is closed, the guest greeting light will turn off automatically.

Intelligent Atmosphere Light*



– The intelligent atmosphere light on the roof can be turned on or off by long pressing Button ①.

– After the intelligent atmosphere light is turned on, its luminance can be adjusted by short pressing Button ① and its color effect can be adjusted according to your preference by short pressing Button ②.

Hint

Intelligent atmosphere lights can be set via the "Car Setting" under the audio system. => Refer to Page 227

Comfort Functions

1. Color

– The intelligent atmosphere lights have a total of 32 colors. You can choose the appointed color on the atmosphere light adjustment interface, to meet your preferences and actual needs.

2. Brightness

– The intelligent atmosphere lights have a total of 8 luminance levels. You can choose the appointed brightness on the atmosphere light adjustment interface, to meet your actual needs.

3. Alert

– The intelligent atmosphere light can flicker for alert based on the alarm of the car, e.g., alert of "door not closed" or "window not closed".

4. Guest greeting function

– When any door is opened, the intelligent atmosphere lights will flash for 5s in the color and luminance level that it is operated with last time, to create the greeting effects.

Safety reminder function

If intelligent atmosphere lights flash slowly once a second, it indicates that any door, window or key is currently at abnormal status.

1. Reminder for door not yet closed

In the following two cases, remind the user any door is not yet closed:

– If one or more doors are not securely closed while driving, the intelligent atmosphere light on the corresponding door interior trim panel flashes.

– If one or more doors are not securely closed due to smart key failure, the intelligent atmosphere light on the corresponding door interior trim panel flashes.

2. Reminder for window not yet closed

– If one or more windows are not securely closed when the engine is stopped or the locking function is performed with the smart key, the intelligent atmosphere light on the corresponding door interior trim panel flashes for reminder purpose.

3. Reminder for Smart Key Leaving the Car

– If the smart key is beyond the effective range when the car is in start status, all atmosphere lights flash for reminder purpose.

Footlight

Footlights are arranged at both sides of the instrument panel or below front seats and used for lighting at the foot areas of the occupants in the front and second rows. The foot light turns on at maximum brightness when the door is opened and turns on for foot lighting at low brightness when the door is closed, the car is powered on and the low beam is turned on.

Lighting Lamp for Cigarette Lighter

– When the position lights are on, the lighting lamp for cigarette lighter goes on.

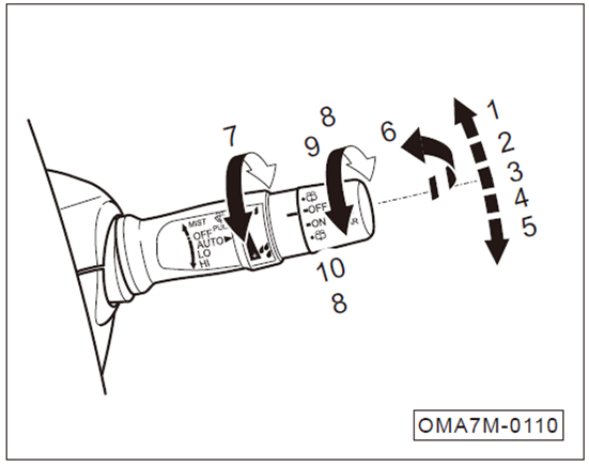
– When the position lights are off, the lighting lamp for cigarette lighter goes out.

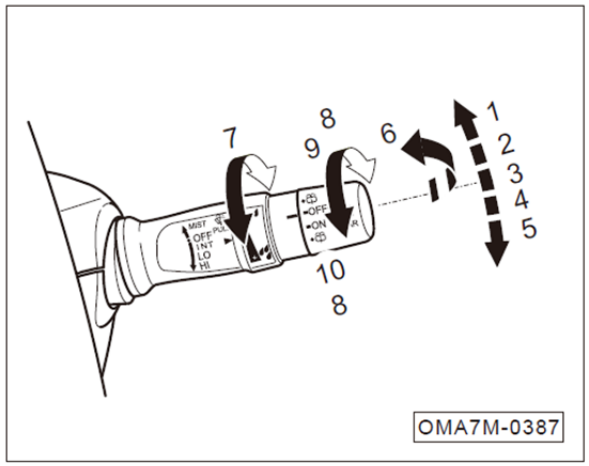
Vanity Mirror Light

– The vanity mirror light automatically turns on when the vanity mirror cover is opened.

– The vanity mirror light automatically turns off when the vanity mirror cover is closed.

4.3.3 Wiper Combination Switch





1. MIST: Continuous Wiping
2. OFF: Wiping Off
3. AUTO: Automatic Wiping*

   INT: Intermittent Wiping*
4. LO: Low-speed Wiping
5. HI: High-speed Wiping
6. Turning on front windshield washer system
7. Adjusting automatic wiper sensitivity*

   Adjusting wiping frequency*
8. : rear windshield washer system on
9. OFF: rear windshield washer system or rear wiper off
10. ON: rear wiper on

MIST: Continuous Wiping

– If the wiper combination switch lever is shifted to limit position ① MIST position, the front wipers will work continuously.

– If the lever is released to let it return to OFF position ②, the front wipers will stop work.

OFF: Wiping Off

– If the wiper combination switch lever is shifted to limit position ② OFF position, the front wipers will stop wiping.

AUTO: Automatic Wiping*

– If the wiper combination switch lever is pushed to ③ AUTO position, the front wipers will work automatically, and the wiper system will adjust the wiping speed based on the current rainfall and real-time vehicle speed.

– The wiper sensitivity can be adjusted by turning up/down the knob ⑦. The sensitivity increases from up to down and the reaction is sensitive to raindrop gradually.

Caution

- Worn or dirty wiper blades will affect the visibility adversely and reduce driving safety.
- When the instrument cluster display prompts "The sensor fails, please control the wipers manually", for the sake of safety, the wipers will keep operating at a low speed. In this case, you can choose to control the wipers manually based on actual situation, and go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your car checked and repaired.
- Before auto wiping in winter, make sure the wiper blades are not frozen.

INT: Intermittent Wiping*

– If the wiper combination switch lever is pushed to ③INT position, the front wipers will work intermittently at a certain frequency.

– The wiping frequency can be adjusted via ⑦. The time interval between wiping increases from up to down when the knob ⑦ is turned up/down.

LO: Low-Speed Wiping

– If the wiper combination switch lever is pushed to ④LO position, the front wipers will work at a low speed.

HI: High-Speed Wiping

– If the wiper combination switch lever is pushed to ⑤ HI position, the front wipers will work at a high speed.

Turning on Front Windshield Washer System

– If the wiper combination switch lever is pulled back (backward direction of the car) to position ⑥, the front windshield washer system is started; the washer jets water and a little later the front wipers begin to work.

– If the wiper combination switch lever is released to let it return to the original position, the front windshield washer system is off and the front wipers continue to work for about 4s.

– After a pause of 6s, the front wipers operate once to remove residual water stains on the glass.

Turning on Rear Windshield Washer System

– If the rear wiper knob is turned up/ down to position ⑧, the rear windshield washer system is started, the washer jets water and a little later the rear wipers begin to work.

ON: Rear Wiper On

– If the rear wiper knob is turned to ⑩ ON, the rear wipers begin to work.

OFF: Rear Windshield Washer System or Rear Wiper Off

– If the rear wiper knob is turned to position ⑨ OFF, the rear windshield washer system will be closed, or the rear wipers will stop work.

Front Wiper Maintenance

– Within 10s after the Start switch is switched to “OFF” position, if the wiper combination switch lever is pushed to MIST and then pulled back rapidly, the front wipers will move to the highest positions and then stop.

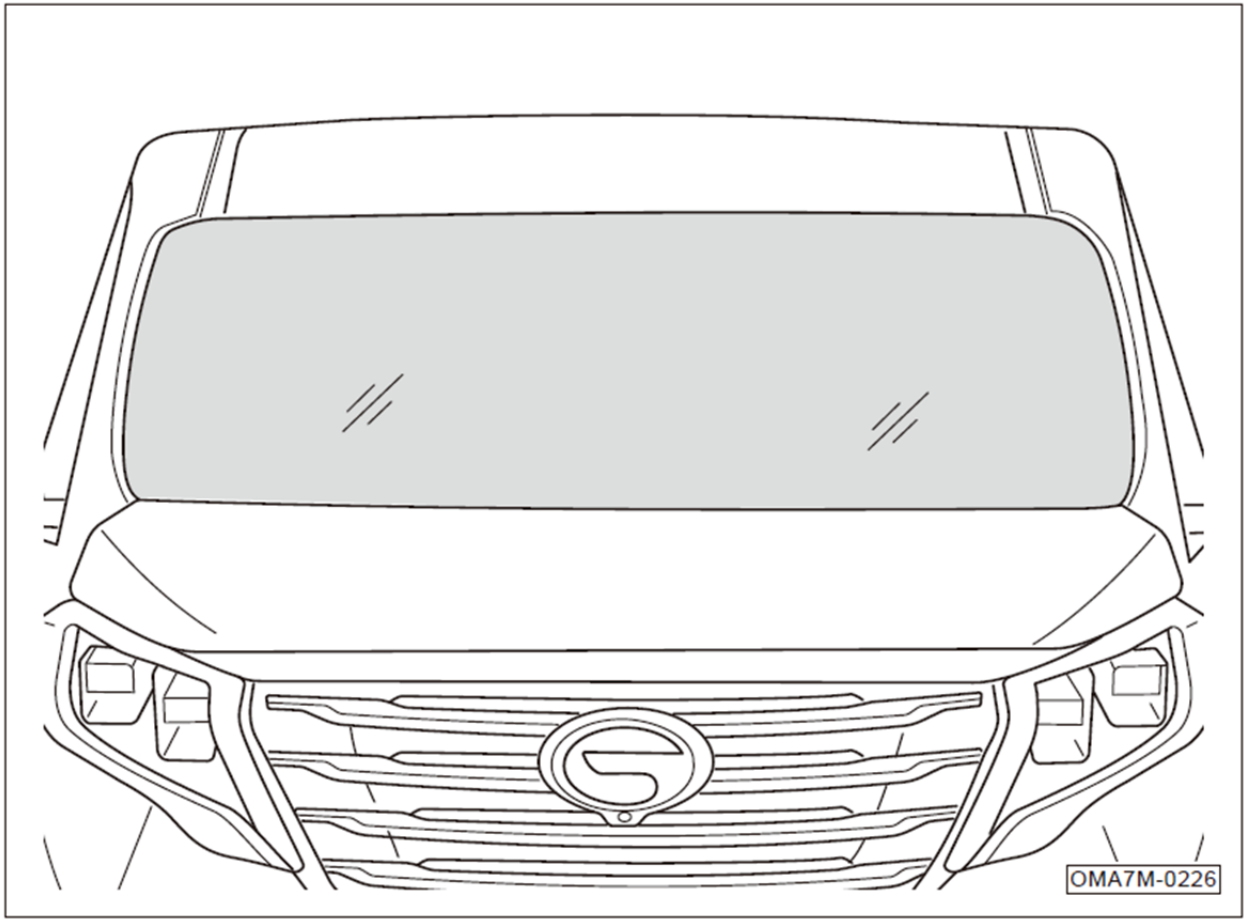
Rear Wiper Maintenance

– Within 10s since the Start switch is set to "OFF", turn the rear wiper knob to ON and then quickly return the wiper to initial position, the rear wipers move to the highest positions and then stop.

Hint

- The maintenance functions of the front and rear wipers can be enabled or deactivated by "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 226

4.3.4 Windshields



Windshield

The front windshield, of green, insulated, laminated and anti-scattered glass, can effectively reduce the risk of injury during a crash.

⚠ Warning

- **Always keep the windshield clean.**
- **Stick certificates to the windshield in accordance with local traffic regulations. Do not apply irrelevant stickers or attach articles to the front windshield. They may obstruct driver's view and could result in accident.**

4.3.5 Rear-View Mirror

Interior Rear-View Mirror

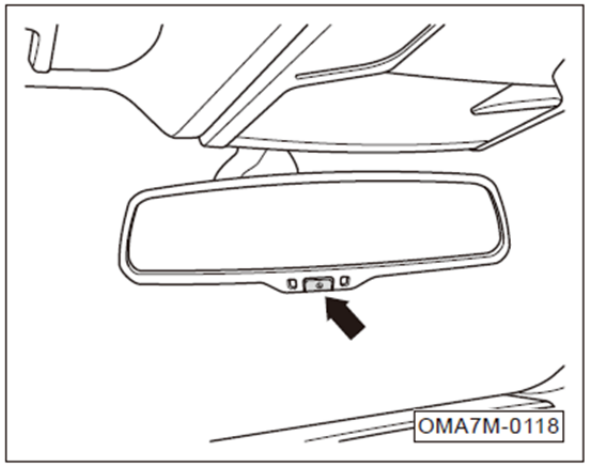
Not seeing the rear situation clearly through the interior rear-view mirror is extremely dangerous to driving!

The interior rear-view mirror has the automatic anti-glare function. During nighttime driving:

– For models equipped with manual anti-glare interior rear-view mirror, the interior rear-view mirror can be adjusted to reduce the intensity of reflection of light rays coming from behind the car and provide excellent rear view.

– For models equipped with automatic anti-glare interior rear-view mirror, the light sensor in the interior rear-view mirror can monitor light rays behind and ahead of the car to reduce the intensity of reflection of light rays coming from behind the car and provide excellent rear view.

Automatic Anti-Glare Interior Rear-view Mirror*

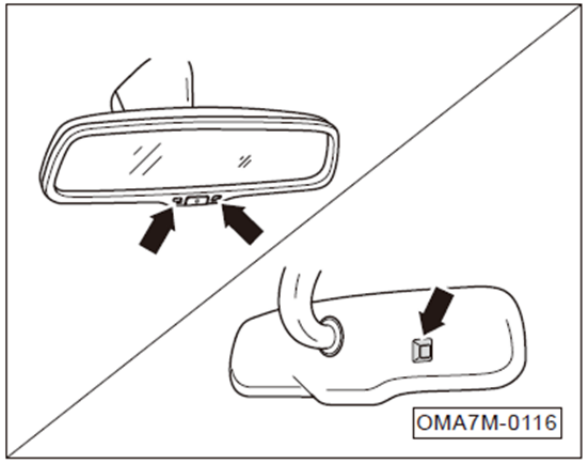


– When Start switch is "ON", auto anti-glare function starts automatically, and switch light turns on. Press the switch (see the arrow) to disable the auto anti-glare function.

– Press the switch again to enable this function again.

Hint

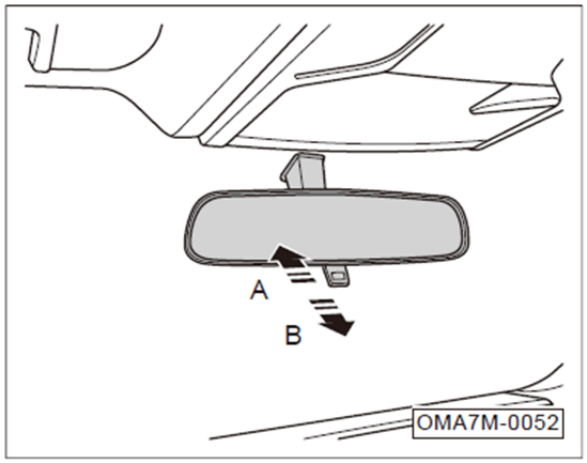
If the temperature in the car is low, it could take a little longer time for the anti-glare rear-view mirror to respond to intense light rays.



Caution

To ensure the anti-glare rear-view mirror sensor functioning normally, do not cover it (see the arrows) with finger or cloth.

Manual Anti-Glare Interior Rearview Mirror*



– Move the rear-view mirror adjustment handle in the direction of arrow A to bias reflection of light rays coming from behind the car and achieve anti-glare effect.

– Move the rear-view mirror adjustment handle in the direction of arrow B to back to the normal rear view angle.

Exterior Rear-View Mirror

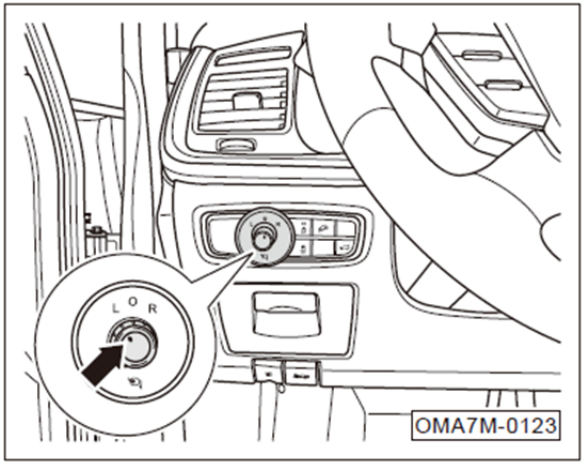
The exterior rear-view mirror system has the following functions:

- Power adjustment
- Power folding-up*
- Automatic folding-up*
- Turning around while vehicle reversing*
- Defogging function*

⚠ Warning

The exterior rear-view mirrors with curved surface (convex and spherical) are able to expand view, but compared with the real objects, their reflected images are smaller and further. Do not judge the distance from the rear vehicle based on its reflected image when changing a lane. Doing so can cause accidents due to misjudgment.

Power Adjustment



– Turn the exterior rear-view mirror adjustment knob to L or R position (i.e. select left or right exterior rear-view mirror).

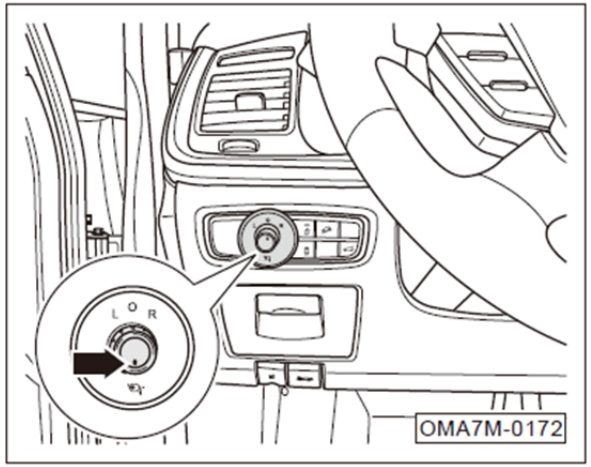
– Move the knob up, down, leftward, and rightward so that the selected mirror provides a good rear view.

– Turn the knob to O position after the adjustment.

Hint

If the electric function of the exterior rear-view mirror fails, please go to your GAC MOTOR dealer as soon as possible to have your car checked and repaired.

Power Folding-Up*



– Turn the exterior rear-view mirror adjustment knob to position to fold up exterior rear-view mirrors.

– Turn the knob out from position to unfold exterior rear-view mirrors.

Caution

- As the folding-up is performed by a motor, do not manually fold up the exterior rear-view mirror.
- If manual folding-up is required in emergency, the exterior rear-view mirror must be unfolded also manually rather than turning the exterior rear-view mirror adjustment knob. In case of manual unfolding, a click can be heard when the mirror reaches the locked position.
- Special attention should be paid not to make your fingers injured by the rear-view mirror or its base when an exterior rear-view mirror is folded.

Automatic Folding-Up*

– If the car is locked from outside, the exterior rear-view mirrors can be folded up automatically.

– If the car is unlocked from outside, the exterior rear-view mirrors can be unfolded automatically.

Hint

- "Automatic folding-up" function can be enabled or deactivated via the "Car Setting" under the audio system. => Refer to Page 226
- If the exterior rear-view mirror adjustment knob is turned to position, the exterior rear-view mirrors cannot be unfolded automatically.

Exterior Rear-View Mirror Tilting-down in Reversing*

The function of exterior rear-view mirror tilting-down in reversing is that the exterior rear-view mirror automatically tilts down by a certain angle, so that the driver can see clearly the area behind the car while reversing. Rear-view mirror tilting down in reversing is divided into manual tilting down and automatic tilting down.

Saving Modes of Mirror Surface Position:

1. Combined operation for position memory of exterior rear-view mirror tilting-down in reversing:

– Enter "Car Setting" under the audio system to enable the function of "Exterior Rear-View Mirror Manual Tilting-down in Reversing".

– Switch the Start switch to "ON", depress the brake pedal and put to "R" Gear.

– Hold the brake pedal down, adjust the exterior rear-view mirror surface position at corresponding side to the position suitable for tilting-down in reversing, release the brake pedal after adjustment to save the position at the position of tilting-down in reversing.

2. Operation via AUDIO main unit for position memory of exterior rear-view mirror tilting-down in reversing:

– Enter "Car Setting" under the audio system to enable the function of "Exterior Rear-View Mirror Automatic Tilting-down in Reversing".

– Click the soft button "Setting" of exterior rear-view mirror automatic tilting-down in reversing, adjust the angle of exterior rear-view mirrors at both sides to the position suitable for tilting-down in reversing, click "Confirm" after adjustment to save the position.

Activating the function of manual tilting-down in reversing

– The function of "Exterior Rear-View Mirror Manual Tilting-down in Reversing" under the audio system is in the enabled state.
– Park the car on the level road with good visibility, switch the Start switch to "ON", depress the brake pedal and put to reverse gear after checking that the car is parked stably.
– Turn the exterior rear-view mirror adjustment knob to L or R Gear.
– The mirror tilts to the position saved.

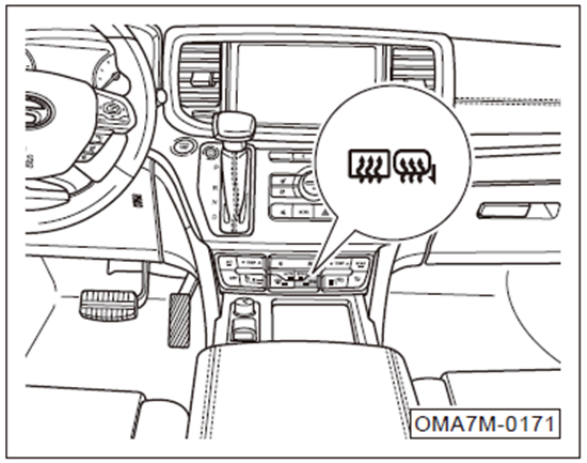
Activating the function of automatic tilting-down in reversing

– The function of "Exterior Rear-View Mirror Automatic Tilting-down in Reversing" under the audio system is in the enabled state.
– Park the car on the level road with good visibility, switch the Start switch to "ON", depress the brake pedal and put to reverse gear after checking that the car is parked stably.
– The exterior rear-view mirror surfaces on both sides tilt down automatically to the position saved.

Hint

The function of manual tilting-down in reversing is affected by current position of the adjustment knob, while the function of automatic tilting-down in reversing is regardless of current position of the adjustment knob.

Defogging/Defrosting Function*

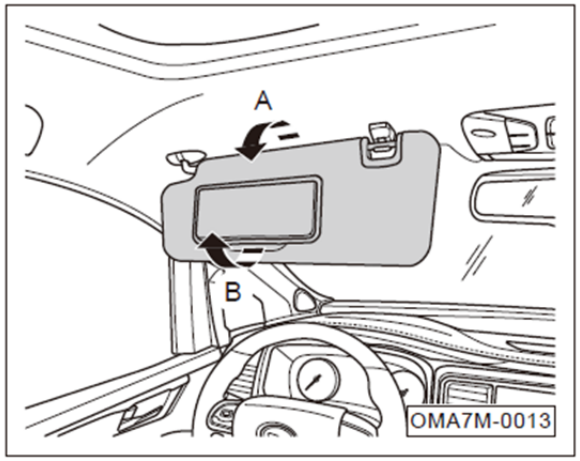


– Press button to enable heating function and remove fog or frost from exterior rear-view mirrors and rear windshield. Indicator light of the button is on at this time. The function will be disabled automatically about 15 minutes later; also, the function can be manually disabled if the button is pressed again during heating.

Caution

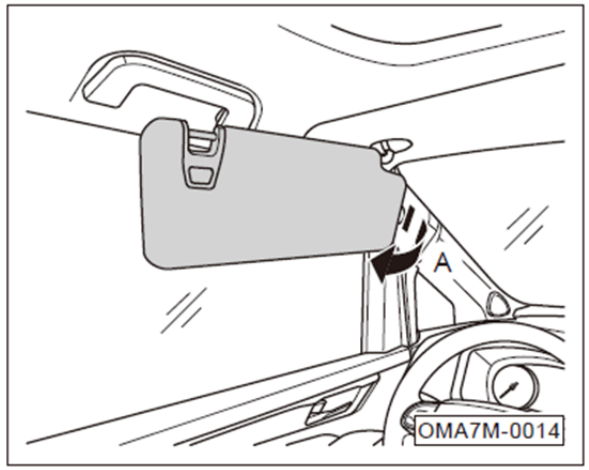
- If defogging/defrosting is necessary after the function is automatically disabled, press the button again.
- Do not have the defogging/defrosting function operating for a long time. This could cause overheating or damage to the heater.
- To save battery power, press the button to disable the defogging/defrosting function when it is unnecessary.

4.3.6 Sun Visor



– Pull down the sun visor on the driver side or the front passenger side in the direction of arrow A to block sunshine coming in through the front windshield.

– To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sun visor, and then open the vanity mirror cover in the direction of arrow B. The vanity mirror light goes on automatically at the same time.



– Draw out the sun visor on the driver side or the front passenger side from the movable support on one side in the direction of arrow A to block sunshine coming in through the side windows after it is pulled down.

Hint

The vanity mirror light above the sun visor automatically turns off when the Start switch is at "OFF" position, or after the car is locked for several minutes.

4.4 Seats and Storage Devices

4.4.1 Importance of Adjusting Seats Properly

To maximize the protection from the seat belts and airbags, adjust the seats properly.

Driver's seat or front passenger's seat can be adjusted according to the body shape.

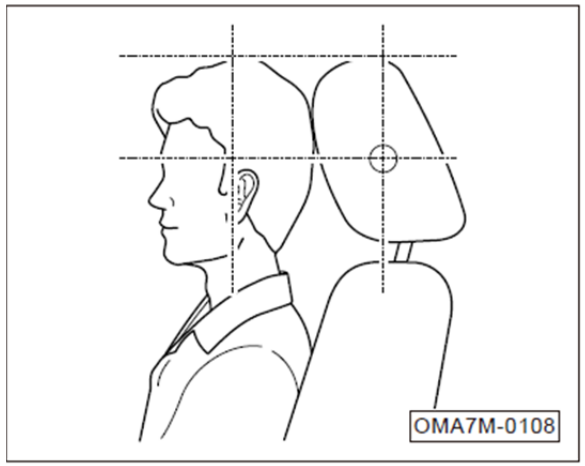
Before the car moves off, seats shall be adjusted properly, so that the driver or passenger can:

- Operate all control mechanisms on the instrument panel in an accurate, effective and safe manner;
- Have a correct sitting posture and do not get fatigued easily.
- Be fully protected by seat belts and airbags.

⚠ Warning

- **Any passenger should sit upright and well back in the seat.**
- **Be sure to adjust the seats with care. Negligence or improper operation can cause personal injury.**
- **Never adjust the front seats while traveling. To adjust the seat, you need to deviate from your correct sitting posture. Therefore, front seats must be adjusted when the car is stationary.**
- **After the Start switch is switched to "OFF" position, the electric adjusting mechanism of front seats still works. Never leave a child alone in the car to prevent her/him from improper operation of electrical device and causing accidents.**

4.4.2 Headrest



Adjusting the headrests properly is of great importance to protect the driver and passengers and reduce the risk of injury.

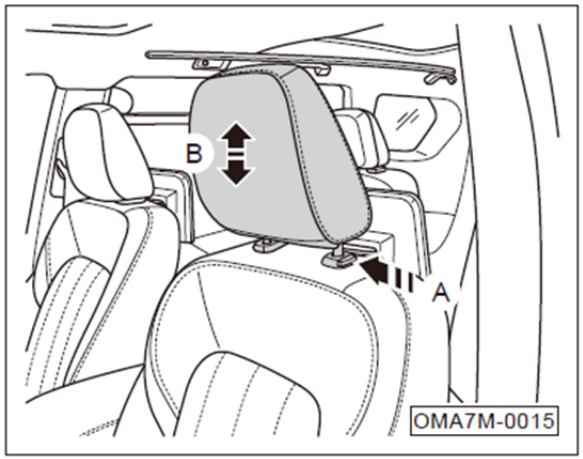
All the drivers and passengers must adjust their headrests to correct positions according to their own body types. The top of the headrests must be even with the top of their heads as far as possible but not lower than their eyes. The central back of their heads should rest against the headrests as far as possible.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of injuries and deaths during accidents, be sure to observe the following matters:

- **While driving, do not adjust the headrests.**
- **The headrests must always be in their mounting positions. Driving with the headrests removed or improperly installed can cause serious injury during a crash.**
- **Passengers of smaller size should adjust their headrests as low as possible. Taller persons should adjust their headrests as high as possible. Improperly-adjusted headrests will increase the risk of injury during a crash or emergency braking.**

Adjusting Front Seat Headrests

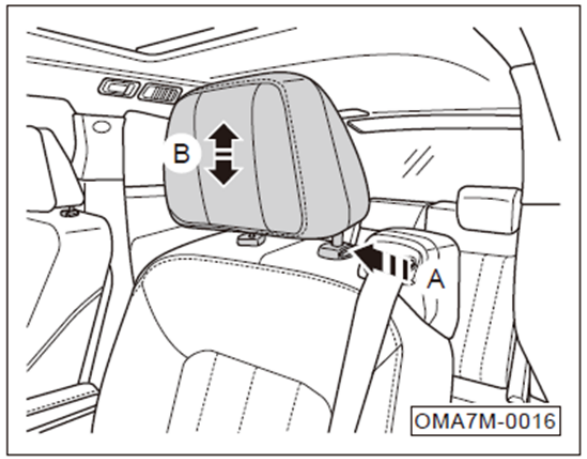


– Grasp both sides of the headrest, and press and hold the button in the direction of arrow A and press the headrest down in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.

– Grasp both sides of the headrest, and lift up the headrest directly in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.

– Make sure that the headrest is in place and positioned properly after adjustment.

Adjusting Second-Row Seat Headrests

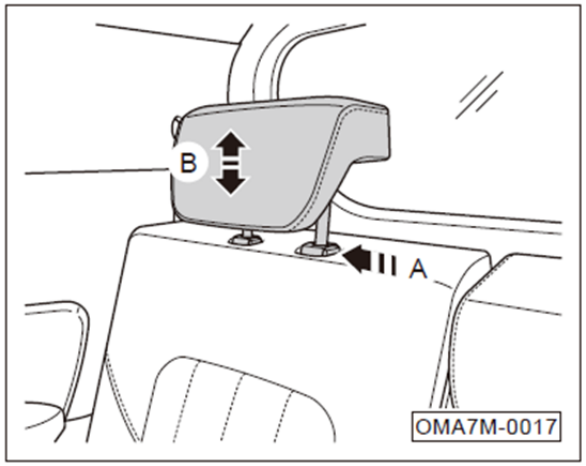


– Grasp both sides of the headrest, and press and hold the button in the direction of arrow A and press the headrest down in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.

– Grasp both sides of the headrest, and lift up the headrest directly in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.

– Make sure that the headrest is in place and positioned properly after adjustment.

Adjust the Third Row Seat Headrests



– Grasp both sides of the headrest, and press and hold the button in the direction of arrow A and press the headrest down in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.

– Grasp both sides of the headrest, and lift up the headrest directly in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.

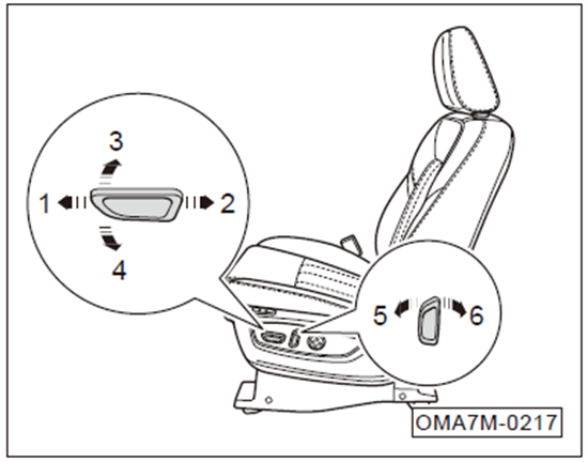
– Make sure that the headrest is in place and positioned properly after adjustment.

Hint

When you sit in a second- or third-row seat and cannot adjust the headrest to proper position according to your shape, please sit in the adjacent seat.

4.4.3 Front Seats

6-Way Electric Adjustment of Driver's Seat



Forward/Backward adjustment of seat:

– Move the switch in the direction of arrow ① or ② to slide the seat forward or backward.

Up/Down adjustment of seat:

– Move the switch in the direction of arrow ③ or ④ to raise or lower the seat.

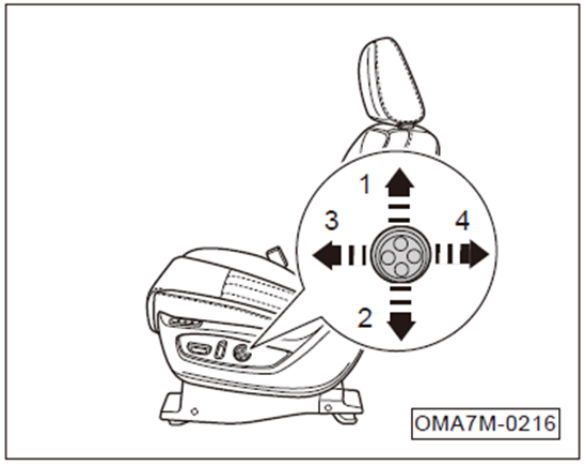
Forward/Backward adjustment of backrest:

– Move the switch in the direction of arrow ⑤ or ⑥ to tilt the backrest forward or backward.

Hint

When measuring the depth of seat cushion, adjust the seat to the middle of the sliding rail and adjust the seat backrest to serviceable condition (25°).

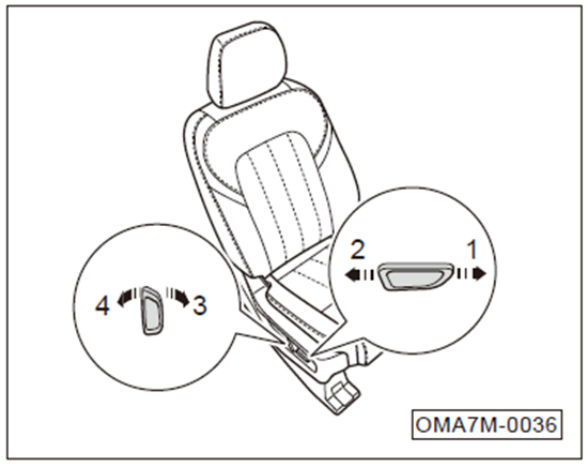
4-Way Pneumatic Adjustment of Lumbar Support of Driver's Seat*



Adjustment of lumber support:

– Enable the upward support, downward retraction, forward support and backward retraction respectively by pressing the switch in the directions of arrows ①, ②, ③ and ④.

4-Way Electrically Adjustable Front Passenger Seat*



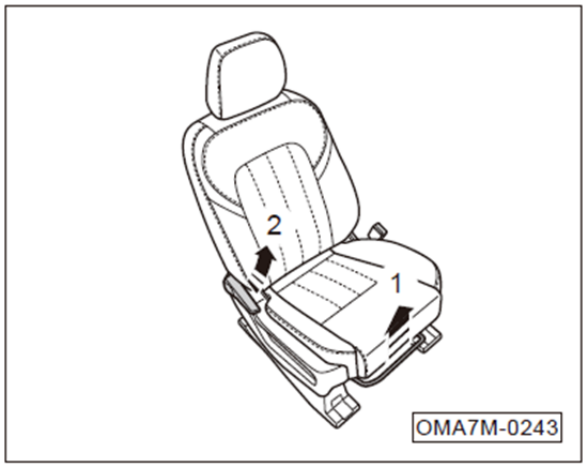
Forward/Backward adjustment of seat:

– Move the switch in the direction of arrow ① or ② to slide the seat forward or backward.

Forward/Backward adjustment of backrest:

– Move the switch in the direction of arrow ③ or ④ to tilt the backrest forward or backward.

4-Way Manually Adjustable Front Passenger Seat*



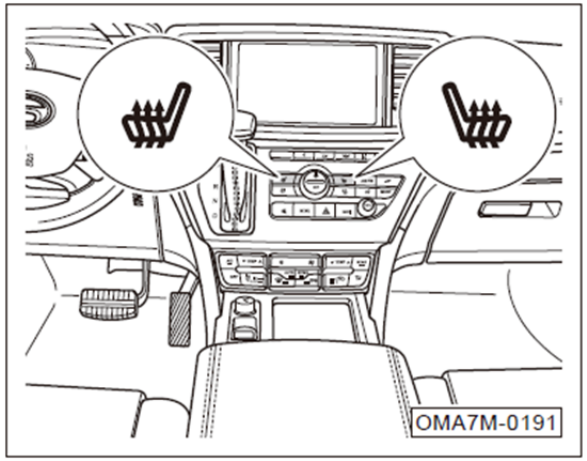
Forward/Backward adjustment of seat:

– Pull up the adjusting handle in the direction of arrow ① to slide the seat forward or backward. Release the handle, and slide slightly the seat forward or backward until the seat lockup mechanism is engaged.

Forward/Backward adjustment of backrest:

– Pull up the adjusting handle in the direction of arrow ② to adjust the backrest to proper position and then release the handle.

Seat Heating*



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position.

– Press the / button in the center of instrument panel to turn on the button light and start heating the corresponding seat.

– Long press (exceeding 1.5s) / button to directly disable the heating function.

There are three seat heating positions corresponding to three different seat surface temperatures: position 3 for the highest temperature, position 2 for the second highest temperature, and position 1 for the lowest. Pressing the button once changes the position once. The position will change in the circular order of 0→3→2→1→0. Corresponding number of indicator light is lit on the button surface.

If the heating/ventilation button is pressed in the process of automatic heating, the car exits automatic heating, and the heating position moves to the next one.

Hint

The "Auto Ventilation and Heating" function of the front seats can be enabled or deactivated via "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 223

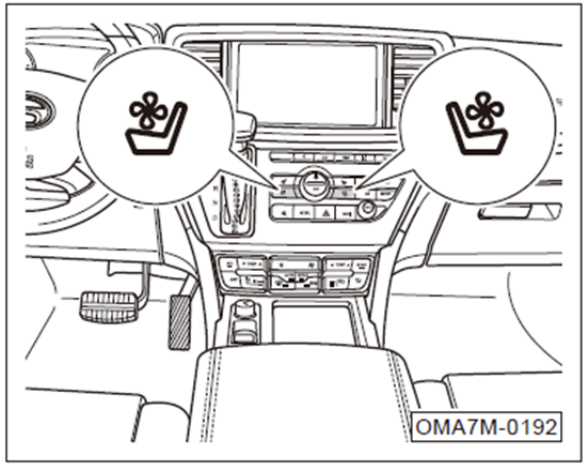
Warning

If your sensitiveness to pain or temperature decreases, never use seat heating function, to avoid your back, hips and legs being burnt by the heater.

Caution

- To avoid damage to electrical components inside the front seat, never knee on the seat or apply force to some point of seat cushion and backrest.
- If you cannot feel the seat temperature change or feel hot after being heated for a long time, immediately disable seat heating and go to GAC MOTOR dealer for inspection and maintenance.

Seat Ventilation*



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position.

– Press the / button in the center of instrument panel to turn on the button light and start ventilating the corresponding seat.

– Long press (exceeding 1.5s) / button to directly disable the ventilation function.

There are three seat ventilating positions corresponding to three different seat ventilating force: position 3 for the highest force, position 2 for the second highest force, and position 1 for the lowest. Pressing the button once changes the position once. The position will change in the circular order of 0→3→2→1→0. Corresponding number of indicator light is lit on the button surface.

If the ventilation button is pressed in the process of automatic ventilation, the car exits automatic ventilation, and the ventilating position moves to the next one.

Hint

The "Auto Ventilation and Heating" function of the front seats can be enabled or deactivated via "Car Setting" under the audio system. =>Refer to Page 223.

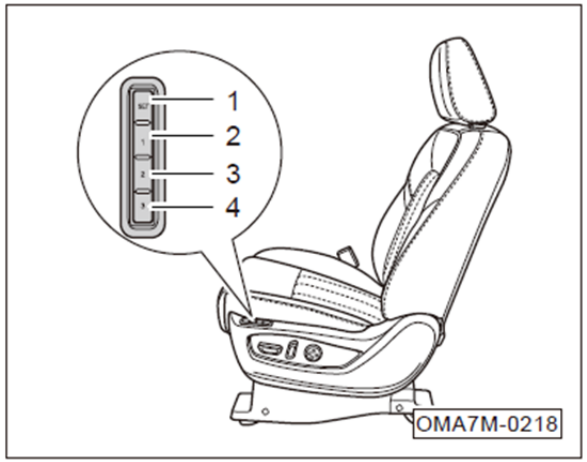
Seat / Exterior Rear-View Mirror Memory System*

The seat/exterior rear-view mirror memory system mainly consists of the seat memory module, seat adjustment switch, seat motor, exterior rear-view mirror motor and memory switch. Through relevant button operations, the following functions can be realized:

- Manual operation of seat and exterior rear-view mirror.
- Saving and extraction of positions of seat and exterior rear-view mirror surface.
- Seat guest greeting.
- Rear-view mirror tilting-down in reversing
- Automatic recognition function of smart key

Caution

In the seat/exterior rear-view mirror memory system, the seat refers to driver's seat rather than passengers' seats.



1. "Set" Button
2. "Position 1" Button
3. "Position 2" Button
4. "Position 3" Button

Position Saving

The position memory of seat and exterior rear-view mirror surface can be realized through the following steps:

1. Adjust the seat and the exterior rear-view mirror surface to the desired position.
2. Press the "Set" Button
3. When SET button is released, and any one position button of 1/2/3 corresponding to the position to be saved is pressed within 3s, the seat memory module will save the current positions of seat and exterior rear-view mirror surface to the corresponding position. After it is saved successfully, the buzzer sounds once.

Position Extraction

When the positions of seat and exterior rear-view mirror surface are already saved, you can extract the position at any time to adjust the seat and the exterior rear-view mirror surface to the saved positions automatically.

The extraction of position can be divided into two kinds, including convenient extraction and normal extraction:

1. Convenient Extraction

– When the Start switch is at any position and the gearshift lever of the transmission is at “P” position, short press any one position button of 1/2/3 to extract the corresponding position information.

2. Normal Extraction

– When the Start switch is at “ON” position and the gearshift lever of the transmission is at other positions except “P” position, long press any one position button of 1/2/3 to extract the corresponding position information. If the position button is released during the extraction, the extraction will be interrupted immediately.

Hint

The extraction will be interrupted immediately if any button on the seat memory switch or on the seat adjustment switch is pressed again during the extraction.

Caution

Please do not perform position extraction during the driving. Otherwise, it may make a diversion due to the movement of seat and exterior rear-view mirror surface, to cause an accident.

Seat guest greeting

The function can be enabled or disabled via "Car Setting" under the audio system =>Refer to Page 224. If the function is enabled:

– When the driver switches the Start switch to “OFF” position and opens the door on driver side, the seat will automatically move backward to so called “greeting” position.

– When the Start switch is switched to "ON" position, the seat will automatically return to the original position.

Caution

If the seat position is changed manually after the seat moves backward to the greeting position, the seat will not automatically move after the driver gets on the car next time and switches the Start switch to “ON” position.

Rear-View Mirror Tilting-down in Reversing

The function of automatic tilting-down of rear-view mirror in reversing is that you can extract the saved position of the exterior rear-view mirror to let it automatically tilt down by a certain angle, so that you can adjust the exterior rear-view mirror rapidly to observe the area behind the car while reversing. =>Refer to Page 129

Smart Key Recognition

The function can be enabled or disabled via "Car Setting" under the audio system =>Refer to Page 223. If the function is enabled:

– When the driver leaves and locks the car with smart key, the positions of seat and exterior rear-view mirror surface used will be saved, and are associated to the key currently used.

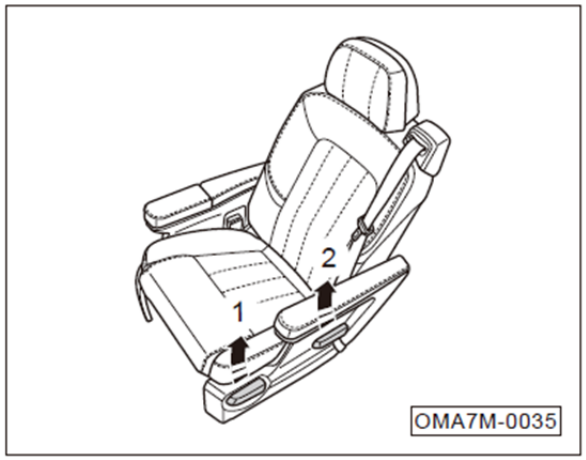
– When the driver uses the key to unlock the car, the seat and exterior rear-view mirror surface will automatically move to the associated and saved positions.

Hint

The positions associated to the key can be any positions, not necessarily those saved with the memory switch buttons.

4.4.4 The Second/Third Row Seats

4-Way Manually Adjustable Second-row Passenger Seat



Forward/Backward adjustment of seat:

– Pull up the adjusting handle in the direction of arrow ① to slide the seat forward or backward. Release the handle, and slide slightly the seat forward or backward until the seat lockup mechanism is engaged.

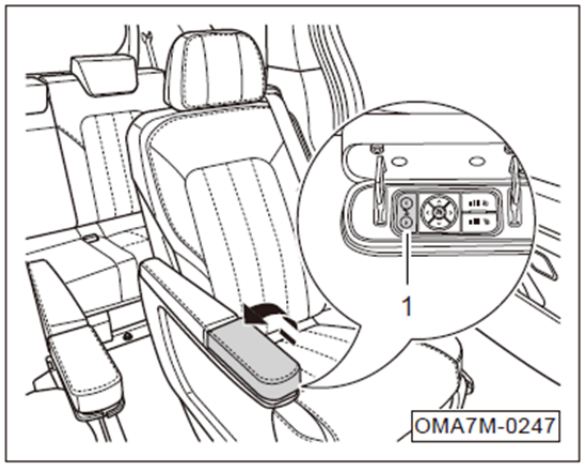
Forward/Backward adjustment of backrest:

– Pull up the adjusting handle in the direction of arrow ② to adjust the backrest to proper position and then release the handle.

Hint

When measuring the depth of seat cushion, adjust the seat to the middle of the sliding rail and adjust the seat backrest to serviceable condition (25°).

Adjustment of the Second Row Seat Leg Support*

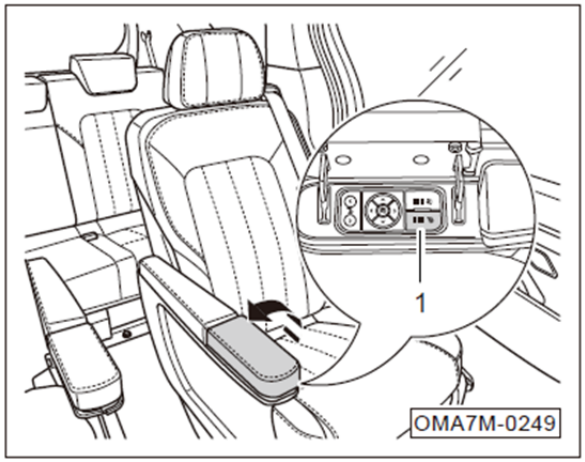


Up and Down:

– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position to open the second row seat armrest trim cover.

– Press the left/right end of Button ① to respectively enable the downward retraction and upward support.

Heating of the Second-row Seats*



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position to open the second row seat armrest trim cover.

– Press Button ① to turn on the button light and start heating the corresponding seat.

– Long press (exceeding 1.5s) Button ① to directly disable the heating function.

There are three seat heating positions corresponding to three different seat surface temperatures: position 3 for the highest temperature, position 2 for the second highest temperature, and position 1 for the lowest. Pressing the button once changes the position once. The position will change in the circular order of 0→3→2→1→0. Corresponding number of indicator light is lit on the button surface.

If the heating/ventilation button is pressed in the process of automatic heating, the car exits automatic heating, and the heating position moves to the next one.

Hint

For models with backseat audio system, the "heating" function of the second row seats can be set via "Ventilation and Heating" under the backseat audio system=>Refer To Page 230*.

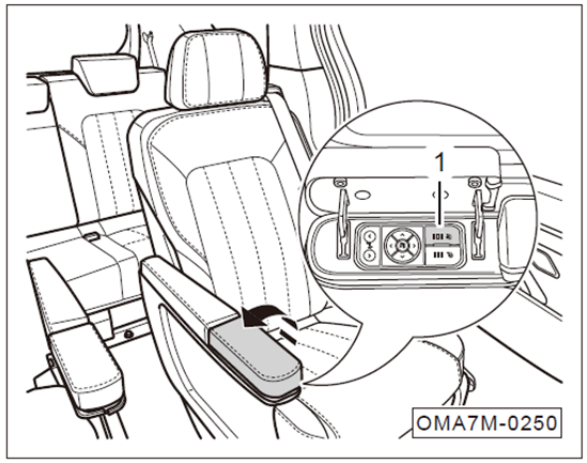
Warning

If your sensitiveness to pain or temperature decreases, never use seat heating function, to avoid your back, hips and legs being burnt by the heater.

Caution

- To avoid damage to electrical components inside the second-row seats, never knee on the seat or apply force to some point of seat cushion and backrest.
- If you cannot feel the seat temperature change or feel hot after being heated for a long time, immediately disable seat heating and go to GAC MOTOR dealer for inspection and maintenance.

Ventilation of the Second-row Seats*



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position to open the second row seat armrest trim cover.

– Press Button ① to turn on the button light and start ventilating the corresponding seat.

– Long press (exceeding 1.5s) Button ① to directly disable the ventilation function.

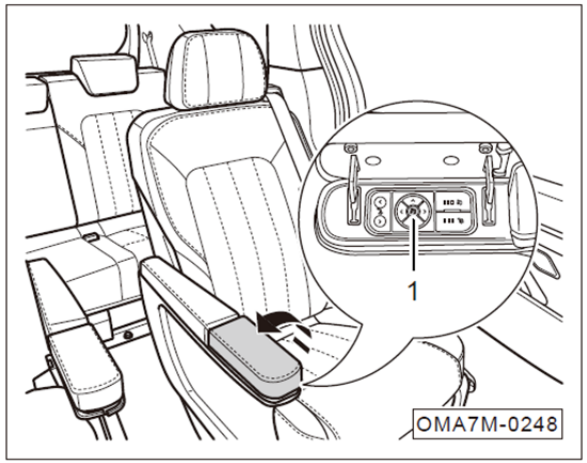
There are three seat ventilating positions corresponding to three different seat ventilating force: position 3 for the highest force, position 2 for the second highest force, and position 1 for the lowest. Pressing the button once changes the position once. The position will change in the circular order of 0→3→2→1→0. Corresponding number of indicator light is lit on the button surface.

If the ventilation button is pressed in the process of automatic ventilation, the car exits automatic ventilation, and the ventilating position moves to the next one.

Hint

For models with backseat audio system, the "heating" function of the second row seats can be set via "Ventilation and Heating" under the backseat audio system=>Refer To Page 230*.

Massage of the Second-row Seats*



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position to open the second row seat armrest trim cover.

– Press Button ① to enable the massage function and press it again to deactivate this function.

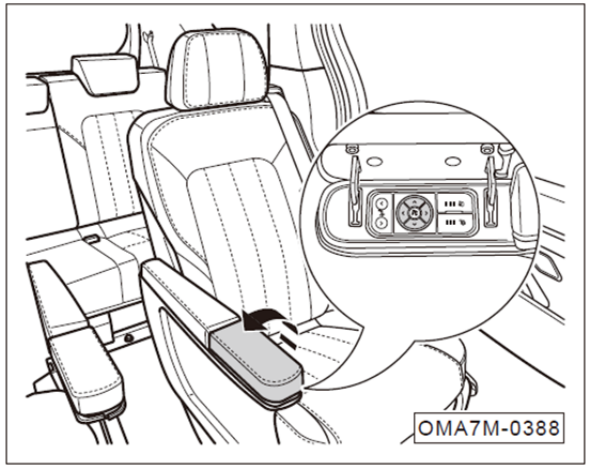
Hint

If the massage function is not deactivated by pressing Button ① after it is enabled, massage will stop automatically 15min later and can be resumed by pressing Button ① again.

Hint

- For models without backseat audio system, after the functions of "left massage" and "right massage" are enabled, the seat massage is unadjustable, and only one mode is available.
- For models with backseat audio system, after the functions of "left massage" and "right massage" are enabled, the seat massage can be adjusted via "Seat Massage" of the backseat audio system. =>Refer to Page 230*.

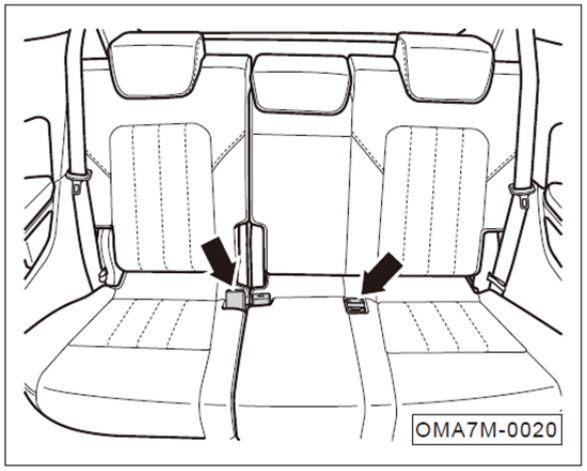
Lumbar Support of the Second-Row Seats*



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position to open the second row seat armrest trim cover and deactivate the massage function.

– Press ^ / v / < / > to adjust the backrest lumbar support.

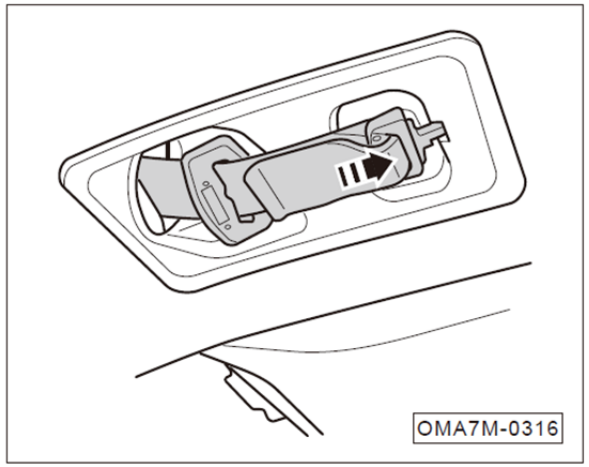
Turning and Folding Functions of the Third-row Seats



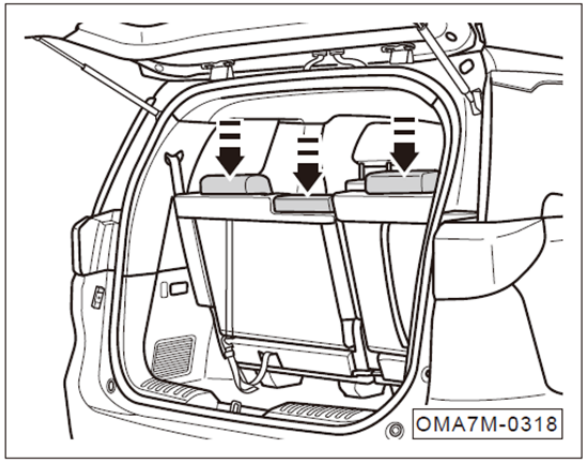
– Unfasten the seat belt of the middle seat of the third row=>Refer to Page 20 and retract it slowly into the hold-down groove of the roof.

Hint

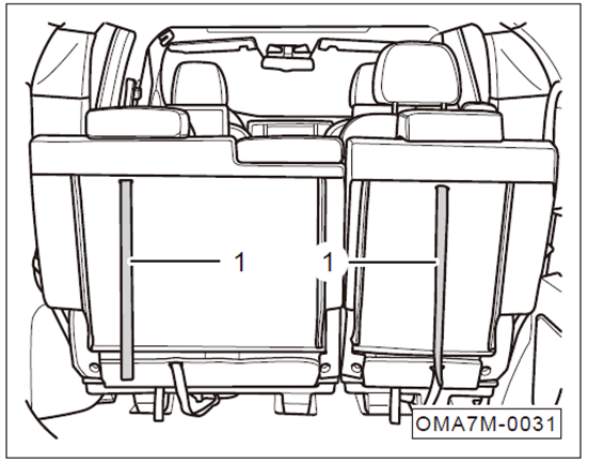
When measuring the depth of seat cushion, adjust the seat to the middle of the sliding rail and adjust the seat backrest to serviceable condition (25°).



– Retract the seat belt into hold-down groove of the roof.



– Lower the third-row seat headrest to the lowest position.

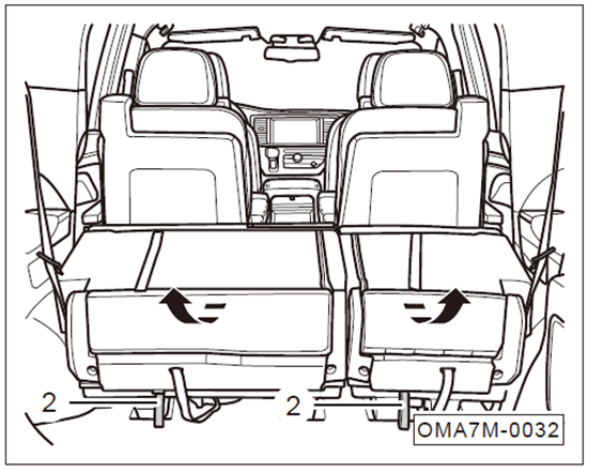


– Pull up the backrest and put down switch cable ① to unlock and fold the backrest forward.

– Pull up the backrest and put down switch cable ① to unlock, put up the backrest and push it backward to the upright position to recover the backrest.

Hint

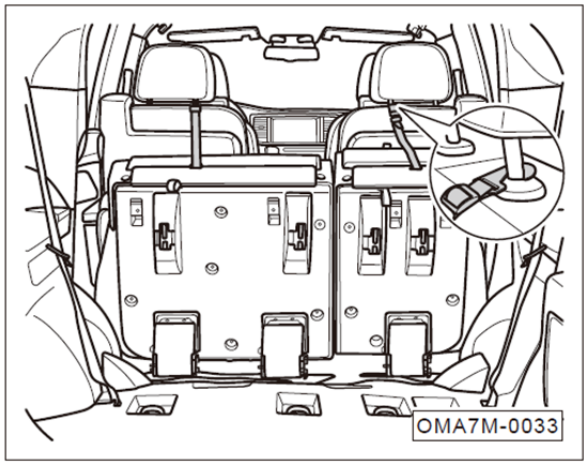
Cable is also provided below the side of the seat and is functionally the same as Cable ①.



– More spacious trunk storage space can be created by folding the seat backrest, pulling Cable ② behind the seat cushion and turning the third-row seats forward.

Hint

The third-row seats are independent 4:6 rotatable and foldable seats which can be utilized for creating diversified storage space.

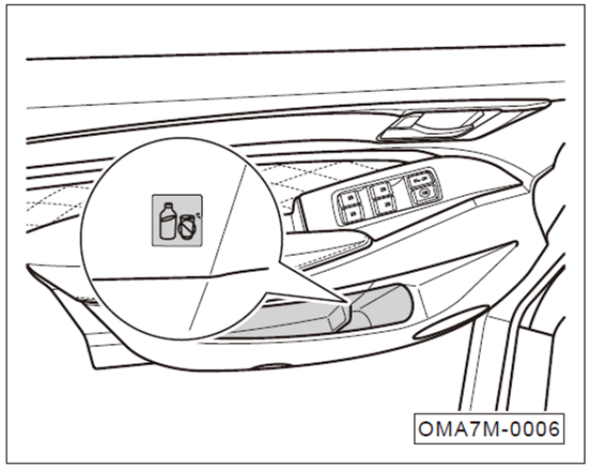


– Fix the fixing hook at the headrest of the second-row seat.

– Loosen the fixing hook to put down slowly the seat till it is locked in place, put up the backrest and push it backward to the upright position to recover the backrest.

4.4.5 Storage Devices

Storage Sink in Door Interior Trim Panel

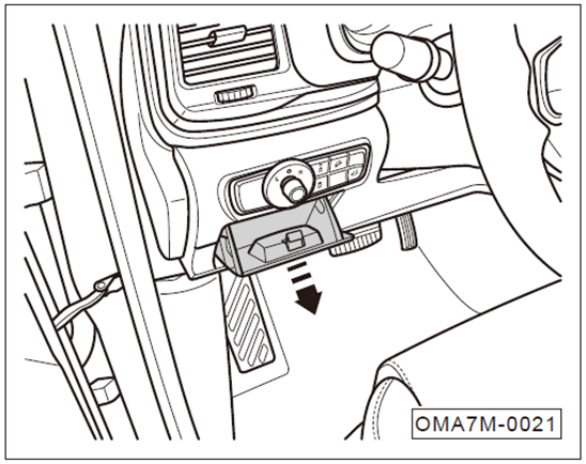


– There is a storage sink in the lower portion of the door interior trim panel.

Caution

Such articles as beverage bottles, maps and manuals may be placed in the storage sink, but such thermosensitive articles as chocolate or drugs may not be placed, or they are apt to go bad or be damaged.

Storage Shelf for Lower Panel in the Cab



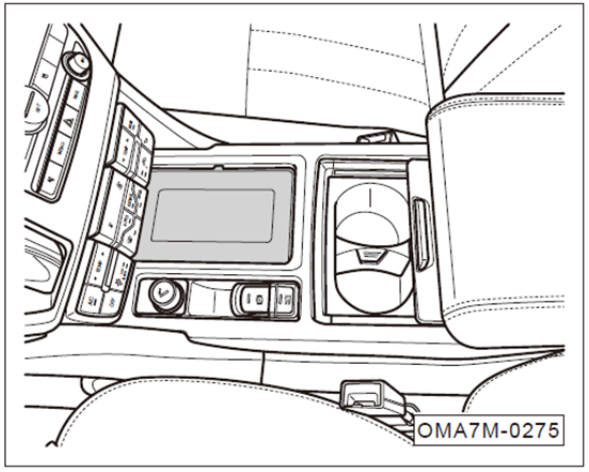
– Open the storage shelf for lower panel in the cab in the direction of the arrow.

– Directly push it back until it clicks to close it.

Hint

Small articles may be placed in the storage shelf.

Storage Sinks in Instrument Panel

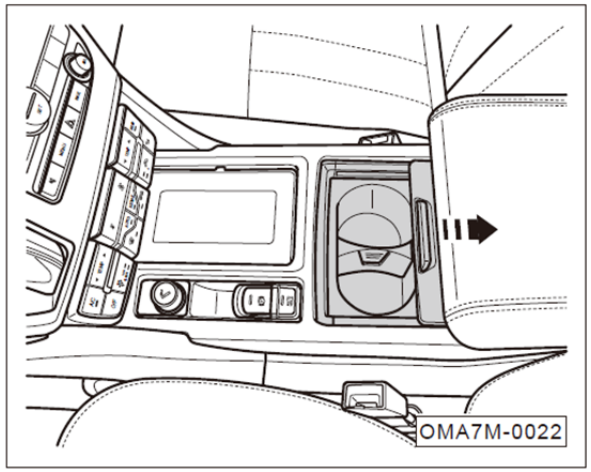


– There is a storage sink under the dashboard.

Hint

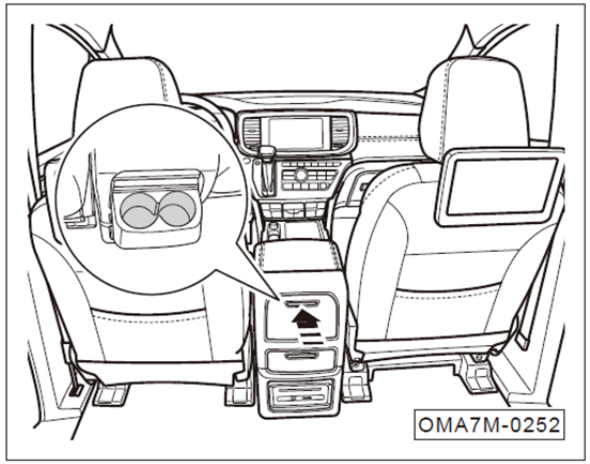
- Small articles may be placed in the storage sink.
- Certain models are equipped with mobile phone wireless charging function, so the area may be taken as the charging area. Articles may be placed after the mobile phone wireless charging function is disabled.

Cup Holders



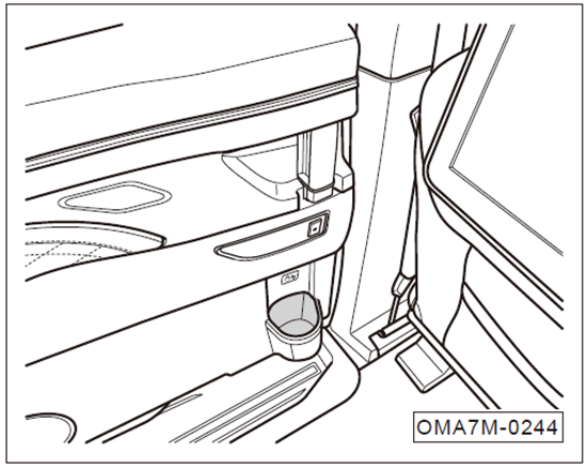
Front Cup Holders

– Push the cover plate backwards in the direction of the arrow to use the front cup holders.



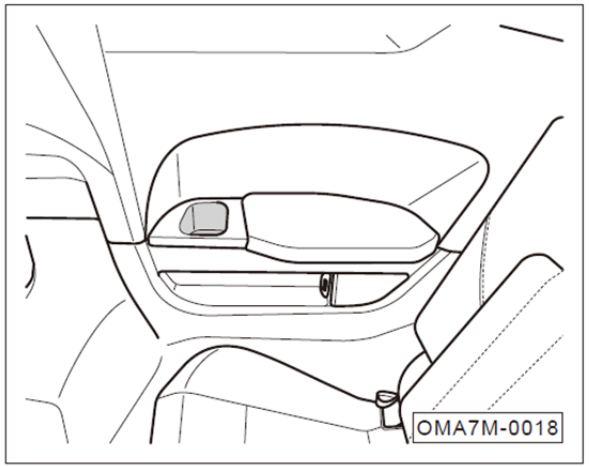
Cup Holder in the Second Row

– The cup holder can be used by pressing the cup holder coverplate of the rear trim panel of the auxiliary dashboard.



Cup Holder of Sliding Door

– It is located below the inner trim panel of the sliding door.



Cup Holders in the Third Row

– They are located at both sides of the third-row seats.

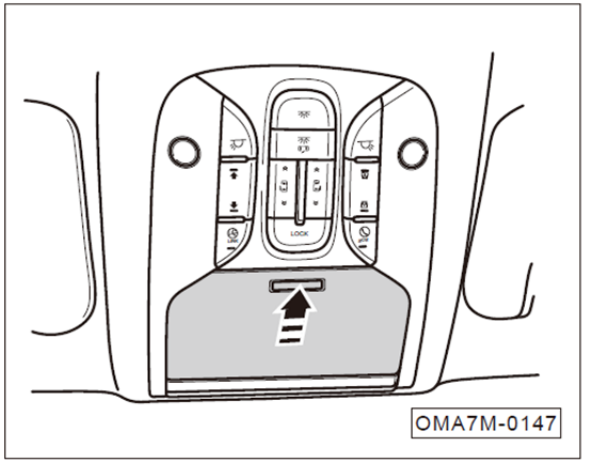
Hint

Cup holders may be used for holding such articles as beverage bottles and movable ash trays.

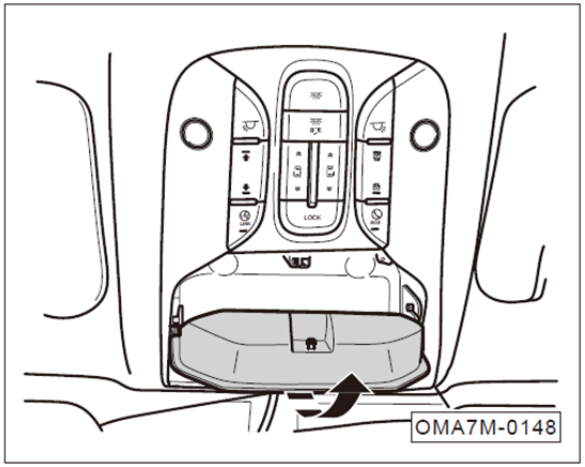
Warning

Never place any hot beverage bottle in cup holders to avoid scalding due to splashing during traveling.

Glasses Case



– Press the glasses case to open it gradually.

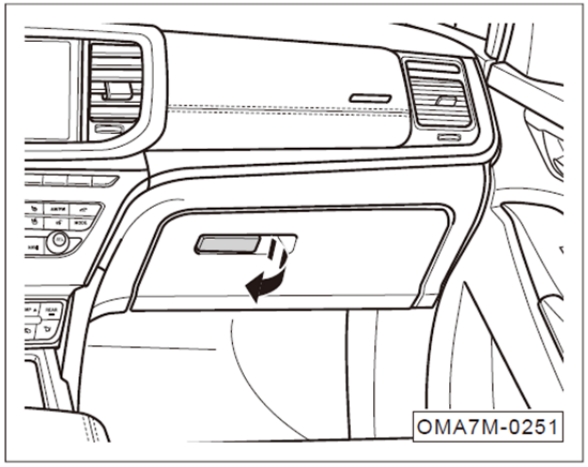


– Push back the glasses case in the direction of the arrow until it clicks to close it.

Hint

Small articles such as sunglasses may be placed in the glasses case.

Glove Box on Front Passenger Side



– Pull the opening handle in direction of the arrow to open the glove box.

– Push back the glove box until it clicks to close it.

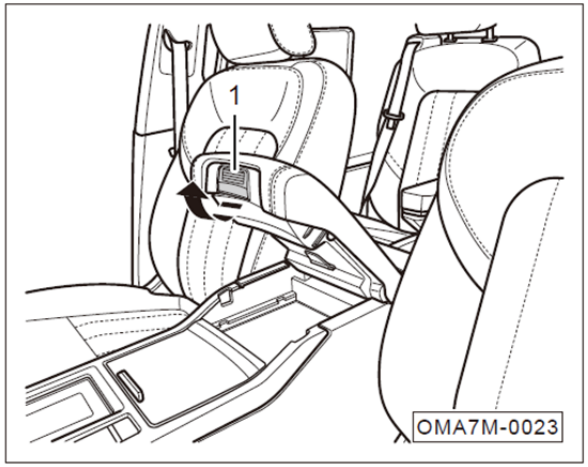
Hint

Relatively large articles such as beverage bottles and bags may be placed in the glove box.

Warning

Always keep the glove box closed while driving! Otherwise, items inside the glove box may be thrown out, injuring your passenger in a crash or emergency braking.

Central Armrest Box between Front Seats

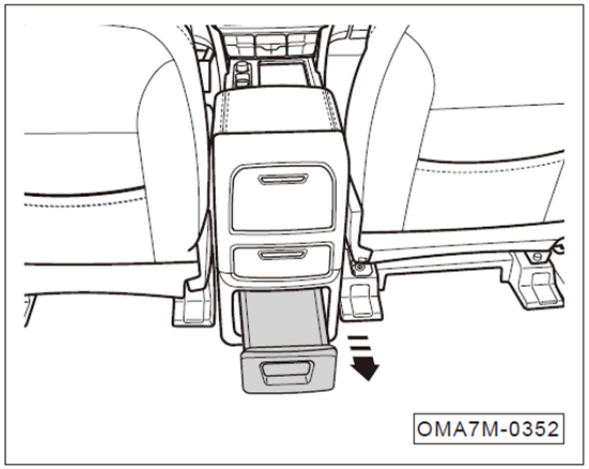


– To open the central armrest box between front seats, press the lock catch ① and raise the armrest box cover.

Hint

The central armrest box between front seats can be used for holding such articles as beverage bottles.

Storage Shelf behind Central Armrest Box between Front Seats*



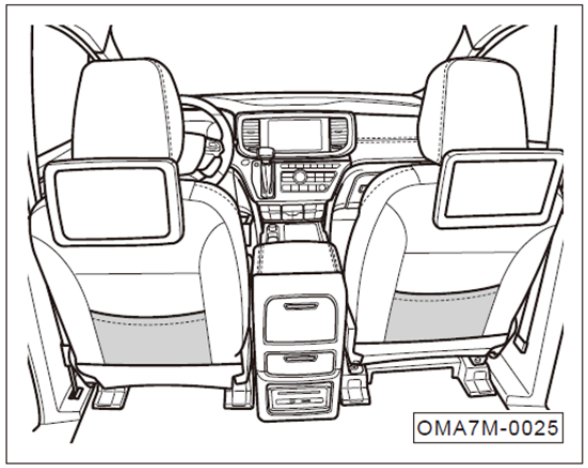
– Pull the opening handle in direction of the arrow to open the storage shelf behind central armrest box.

– Push back the storage shelf behind central armrest box to close it when "click" is heard.

Hint

The storage shelf behind the central armrest box between front seats can be used for holding such articles as beverage bottles.

Pocket on Back of Front Seat

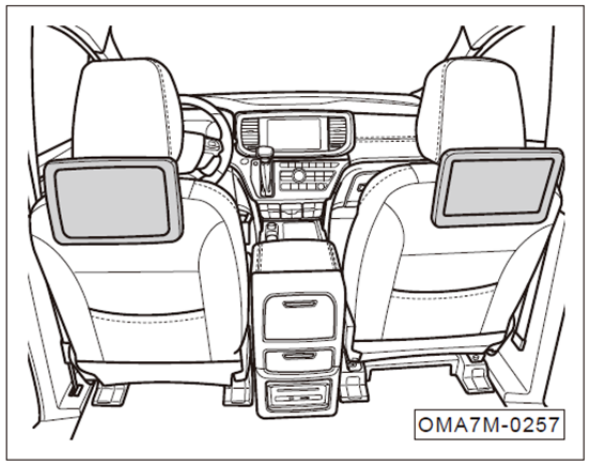


– To place articles in the pocket on back of front seat, pull it backward.

Hint

Such articles as books and foldable umbrellas may be placed in the pocket.

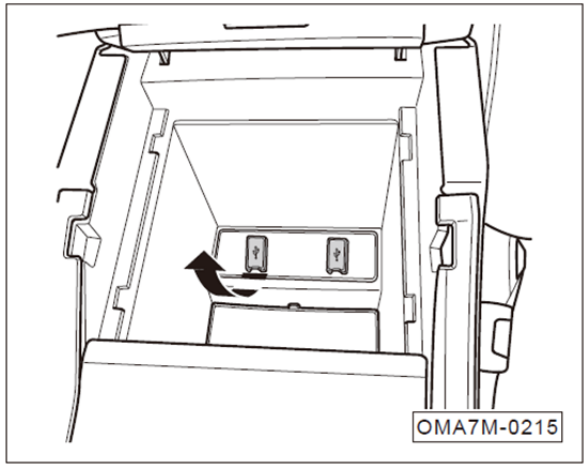
Back-mounted Screen*



Hint

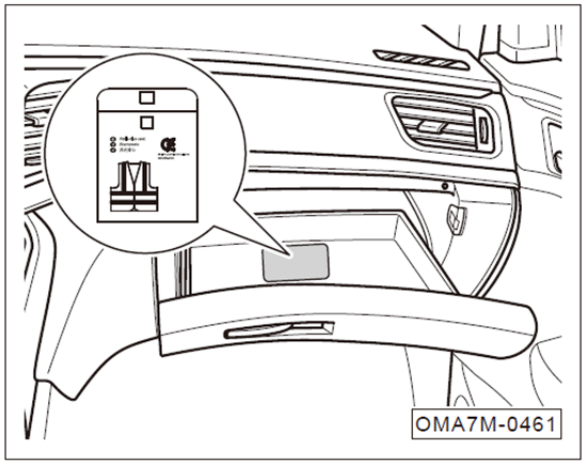
Some models are equipped with back-mounted screens.

USB Interface of Central Armrest Box

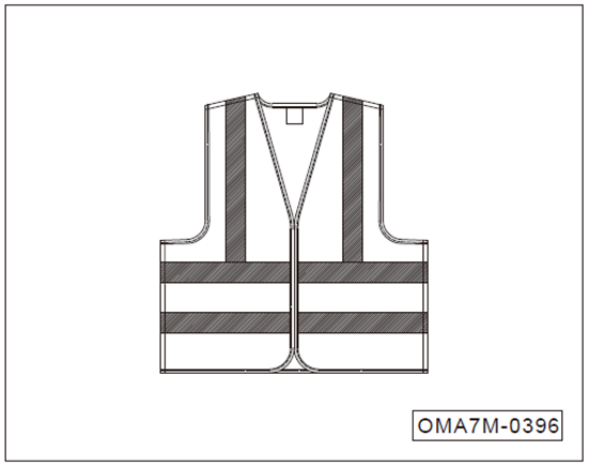


– Use the USE interface by opening the central armrest box of the front seats and pulling up the USB interface cover in the direction of the arrow.

Reflective Vest



– Take the reflective vest out of the glove box if the car should be parked due to any car accident or other faults.

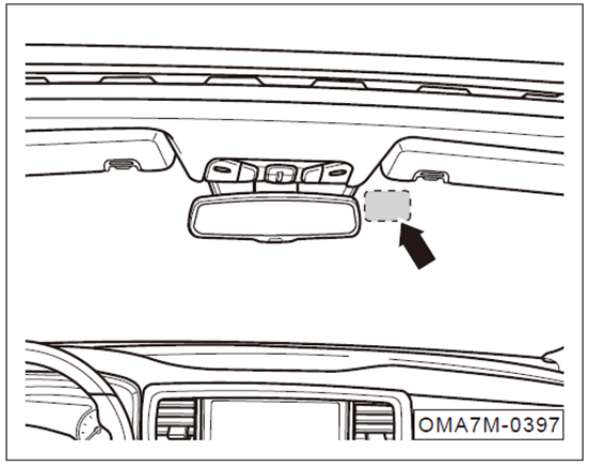


– Wear the reflective vest.

Hint

- During accident handling, wear the reflective vest as required irrespective of the lighting conditions to draw attention of the passerby or other drivers.
- After using the reflective vest, return it to the glove box properly, or wash it when necessary as per the notes on the collar to ensure reflecting performance.

Microwave Window



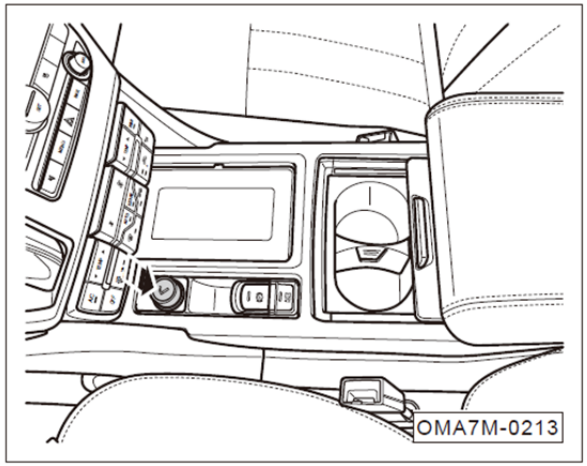
– The microwave window is on the right side of the front windshield corresponding to the interior rear-view mirror.

Hint

The microwave window can be used for installing ETC card.

4.4.6 Cigarette Lighter/Power Outlet

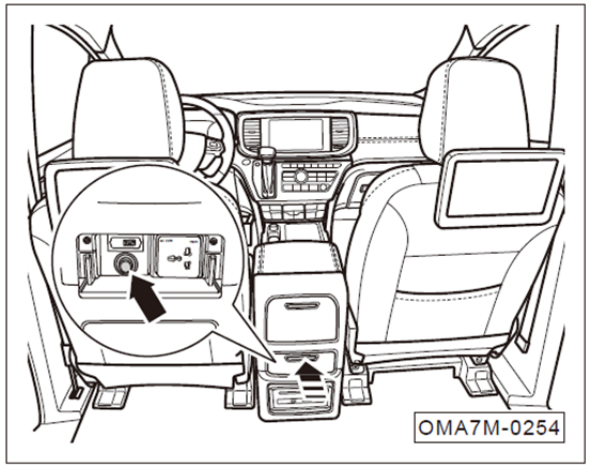
Central Console Cigarette Lighter/Power Outlet



– With the Start switch at “ON” or “ACC” position, when the cigarette lighter is pressed down, you can pull it out after it pops up automatically.

– You can use the power outlet after pulling out the cigarette lighter.

Rear Cigarette Lighter/Power Outlet of Central Armrest Box

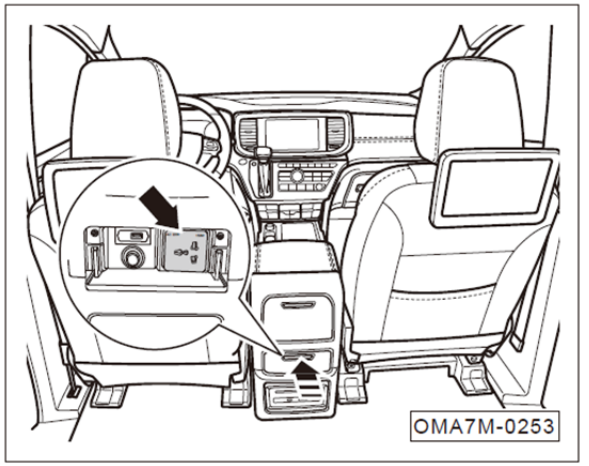


– Press the cover, it springs open automatically.

– With the Start switch at “ON” or “ACC” position, when the cigarette lighter is pressed down, you can pull it out after it pops up automatically.

– You can use the power outlet after pulling out the cigarette lighter.

Rear Power Outlet in Central Armrest Box (220V)*

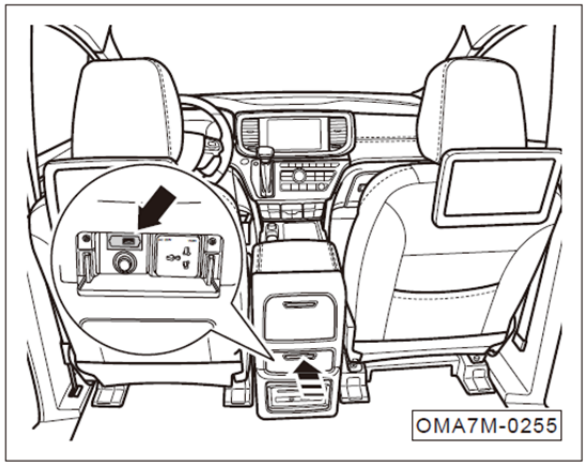


– Press the cover, it springs open automatically, and then use the power outlet.

⚠ Warning

- **The power outlet provides output voltage of 220V. Use caution against electric shock.**
- **To prevent fire hazards, never use power outlet when nobody is in the car.**

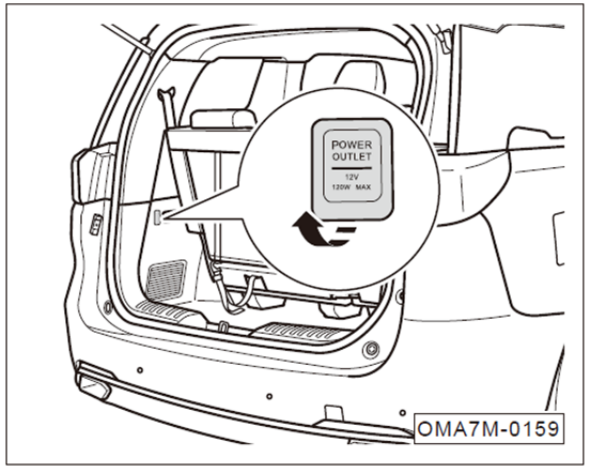
Rear USB Charging Port of Central Armrest Box



– Press the cover, it springs open automatically.

– Directly connect the USB wire.

Trunk Power Outlet



– To use the power outlet, pull up the power outlet cover plate in the direction of arrow B.

⚠ Warning

Improper use of power outlet can cause fire. Do not leave a child alone in the car.

Caution

- To avoid damage to the electrical system, do not connect any generating equipment to the power outlet.
- Use only electrical equipment in line with the national electromagnetic compatibility norms.
- To avoid damage to electrical equipment connected to power outlet due to voltage fluctuation, be sure to turn off the electrical equipment when the Start switch is turned on/off.

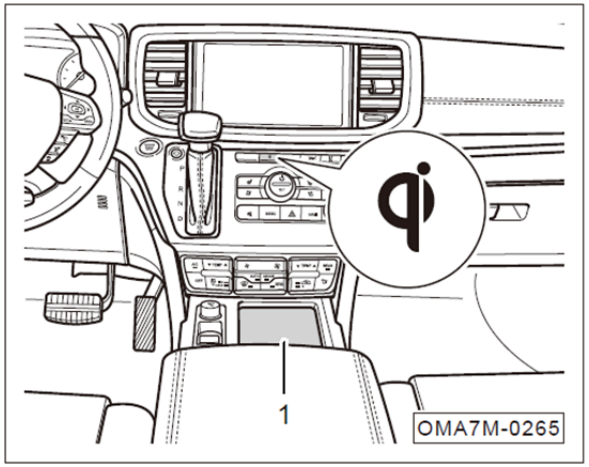
4.4.7 Mobile Phone Wireless Charging System*

By the mobile phone wireless charging function, the mobile phone is charged through electromagnetic induction, without using external wire connection, to realize wireless charging.

Caution

Mobile phone wireless charging function does not apply to all mobile phones. It only applies to the mobile phones with “Qi” certificate. In case that any accident is caused by using the mobile phones and charging receivers without “Qi” certificate, our company shall not bear any liability or loss caused therefrom.

Mobile Phone Wireless Charging Switch



Press the mobile phone wireless charging button (Qi) on the instrument panel to enable or disable the function.

When the Start switch is at “ACC” or “ON” position and the door is closed:

– When the mobile phone wireless charging function is enabled and the corresponding orange or green indicator light is turned on, press Qi button to disable the mobile phone wireless charging function and turn off the corresponding indicator light.

– Press this button again to enable the mobile phone wireless charging function again. The orange indicator light on the button goes on if no chargeable mobile phone is in the charging area ①. The green indicator light on the button goes on if there is a chargeable mobile phone in the charging area ①.

Button Indicator Light Status

Button indicator light	Mobile phone wireless charging status
Orange indicator light goes on	Chargeable
Green indicator light goes on	Charging
Orange indicator light flashes	Faulty
Indicator light goes out	Nonchargeable

Hint

When the keyless start/smart key system drives the low-frequency antenna to search the key, the mobile phone wireless charging module stops operation and indicator lights go out.

Mobile Phone Wireless Charging Operation

– When the orange indicator light on the mobile phone wireless charging button (φ) goes on, lay the mobile phone on the rubber pad in the charging area, with the mobile phone charging coil faced downward, and ensure that the center of the mobile phone charging coil is aligned with “Qi” character.

– When the green indicator light on the mobile phone wireless charging button goes on, it means the mobile phone is charging.

– When the mobile phone charging is completed, the green indicator light on the mobile phone wireless charging button may still be on.

Hint

Only one mobile phone can be charged every time.

When the Start switch is at “ACC” or “ON” position and any door is opened, the mobile phone wireless charging function will remain disabled and can be recovered until all the doors are closed.

Mobile Phone Wireless Charging Fault

In case of any fault during the charging, the orange indicator light flashes for reminder. Possible faults include:

1. Battery voltage is too high or too low;
2. When any metal foreign matter exists in the charging area, please take away mobile phone and check whether there is foreign matter. If so, remove the foreign matter and place the mobile phone in the charging area again;
3. Temperature is too high;
4. There is internal fault in the mobile phone wireless charging system;
5. There is fault in the mobile phone.

Hint

While the vehicle is running on a bumpy road, mobile phone wireless charging could interrupt intermittently then resume. If the charging stops due to mobile phone departure from the charging area, move the mobile phone back to the charging area.

Mobile phone wireless charging function requires the common participation of wireless charging system and mobile phone. If either of them is faulty, charging is impossible.

The mobile phone charging may stop at too high temperature, and resume charging after the temperature drops.

Caution

- Please do not put metal foreign matters such as coin, key, chip card in charging area, heating of metal may be resulted in so as to cause accidents due to unable to charge.
- In wireless charging of mobile phone, if metal foreign matters are found between mobile phone and rubber mat, please never remove the foreign matters immediately with hand so as to avoid scald of fingers. The wireless charging switch should be pressed down at once to stop charging, then remove the foreign matters after several minutes.
- Please never sprinkle water in charging area, lest the water enters wireless charger through the clearance of rubber pad to cause charger faults.

Warning

- **When driver is not in the car, please do not place mobile phone inside for charging, so as not to cause potential safety hazards.**
- **Please do not check the mobile phone charging status frequently in driving, to avoid potential traffic danger.**
- **Please do not place weight in charging area to avoid damage to the mobile phone wireless charging system.**
- **If there is any problem in the product and it cannot be used normally, please stop operation and go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.**
- **Our company shall not be liable for any problem due to abnormal operation (e.g., connection to external wireless charging coil). If the product has ever been unpacked or modified, free warranty service will be terminated.**

4.4.8 Trunk

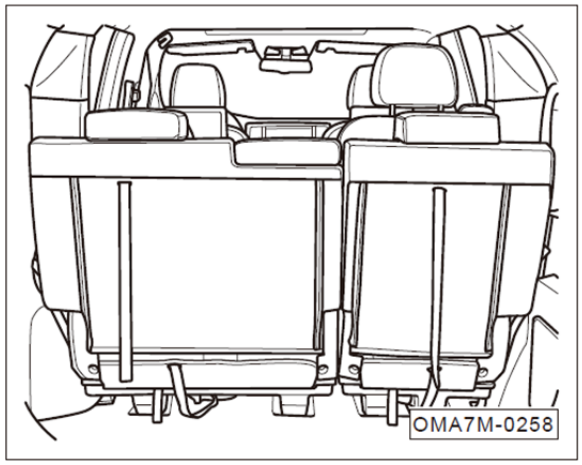
To ensure operation stability of the car, items shall be distributed in the trunk as even as possible, and heavy items shall be placed in the front portion of the trunk as far as possible.

⚠ Warning

The scattered belongings or other items in the car may cause serious injury!

- **Heavy items in the trunk must be secured with anchoring straps. Bear in mind: Carrying heavy items may cause the change of the car's gravity center, thereby changing the operation stability of the car.**
- **While traveling, the items scattered in the trunk may slide suddenly, resulting in change in the operation stability of the car.**
- **The items scattered in the trunk may fly forward to injure you or your passengers in a crash or emergency braking.**

Trunk Capacity

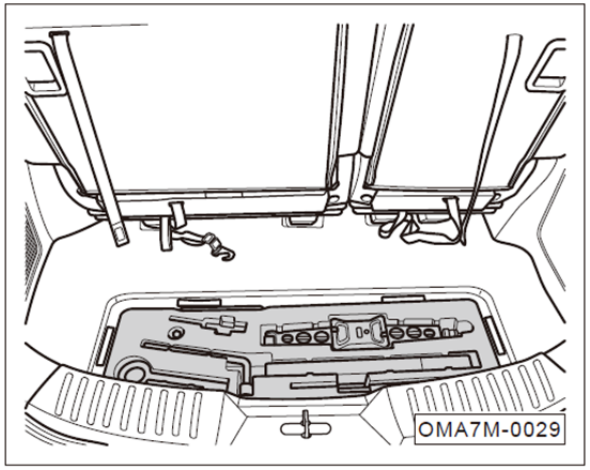


– Folding or turning over the third row seats can increase the trunk capacity.

Caution

Ensure that any liquid container in the trunk is securely sealed to prevent leakage. Do not place the container on the folded seat backrests as much as possible to prevent liquid leakage wetting the seats.

Rear Trunk Storage Box



– Open the hatchback door. => Refer to Page 92

– By raising the rear trunk carpet, there is warning board and vehicle tools in the rear storage box.

4.4.9 Accessories and Modifications

The data labels and signboards attached to the fuel tank lid, engine hood lock rack and other vehicle components of the car, when delivered, contain important data and information on car operation. Do not remove or damage such labels and signboards. Always keep the data and information on the labels and signboards clear and readable.

This car is designed with the latest safety technique to ensure excellent active safety and passive safety. Therefore, to maintain the car's excellent features, before installing accessories or replacing components, be sure to consult GAC MOTOR dealer.

We recommend you always use the accessories and components which have been designed and approved for your car. We are not responsible for any component not manufactured by us.

⚠ Warning

Improper accessories or modifications may affect your car's operation stability and other performance, and may lead to severe injury or death.

If car phone, alarm device, two-way radio equipment, and low-power AUDIO system need to be installed, they should not interfere with your car's computer control system, such as Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).

Before installing any accessory:

1. Make sure that the accessory does not dim any light, or affect normal operation or performance of the car.
2. Do not install accessories on the B pillar or across the rear windows for cars equipped with integrated side airbag curtain, because accessories installed in these areas may interfere with normal operation of side airbag curtain.

Modifying Your Car

Removing components from your car, or replacing components with non-GAC MOTOR model components could seriously affect your car's operation stability and reliability. For example:

- Installing larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with normal operation of ABS and other systems.
- Modifying the steering wheel or any other safety facility may lead to system failure.

⚠ Warning

- **Improper accessories or modifications can easily cause faults and accidents. We recommend you always use the approved accessories and components with strictly-verified adaptability, reliability and safety by GAC MOTOR.**
- **Improper maintenance or modifications can weaken the protection from airbags, and cause system failure and fatal accidents. Do not install or connect the beverage cup holder, phone holder and other accessories onto the cover of airbag assembly or in the range of action of airbags.**
- **Improper operation or modifications (modification of the engine, brake system, running system or components affecting the performance of the wheels and tires) can affect the function of the SRS system, resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Do not install wheels and tires not approved by GAC MOTOR.**

⚠ Warning

- **Modifying the front part of the car and the engine compartment can deteriorate pedestrian protection performance of the car and violates the road regulations.**

4.5 A/C System

4.5.1 General Instructions

The A/C filter can remove the pollen and dust brought in by the heating and cooling system from the outside.

Be sure to replace the A/C filter at regular maintenance.

Please refer to the Regular Maintenance Schedule in the *Warranty Manual*.

Shorten the replacement interval of the A/C filter if you often drive in the urban area with heavy smoke caused by factories and diesel-powered cars. Replace the A/C filter as soon as possible if the air flow from the heating and cooling system is not smooth as usual.

⚠ Warning

- **Activate the interior air circulation mode as needed. Deactivate it when there is no need.**
- **Blurred windows easily increase the risk of accidents and casualties. For the sake of safety, all the windows must be free of ice, snow and fog to ensure clear vision.**
- **Turbid air in the car will make the driver fatigued, depressed and distracted, resulting in accidents and casualties easily.**

Caution

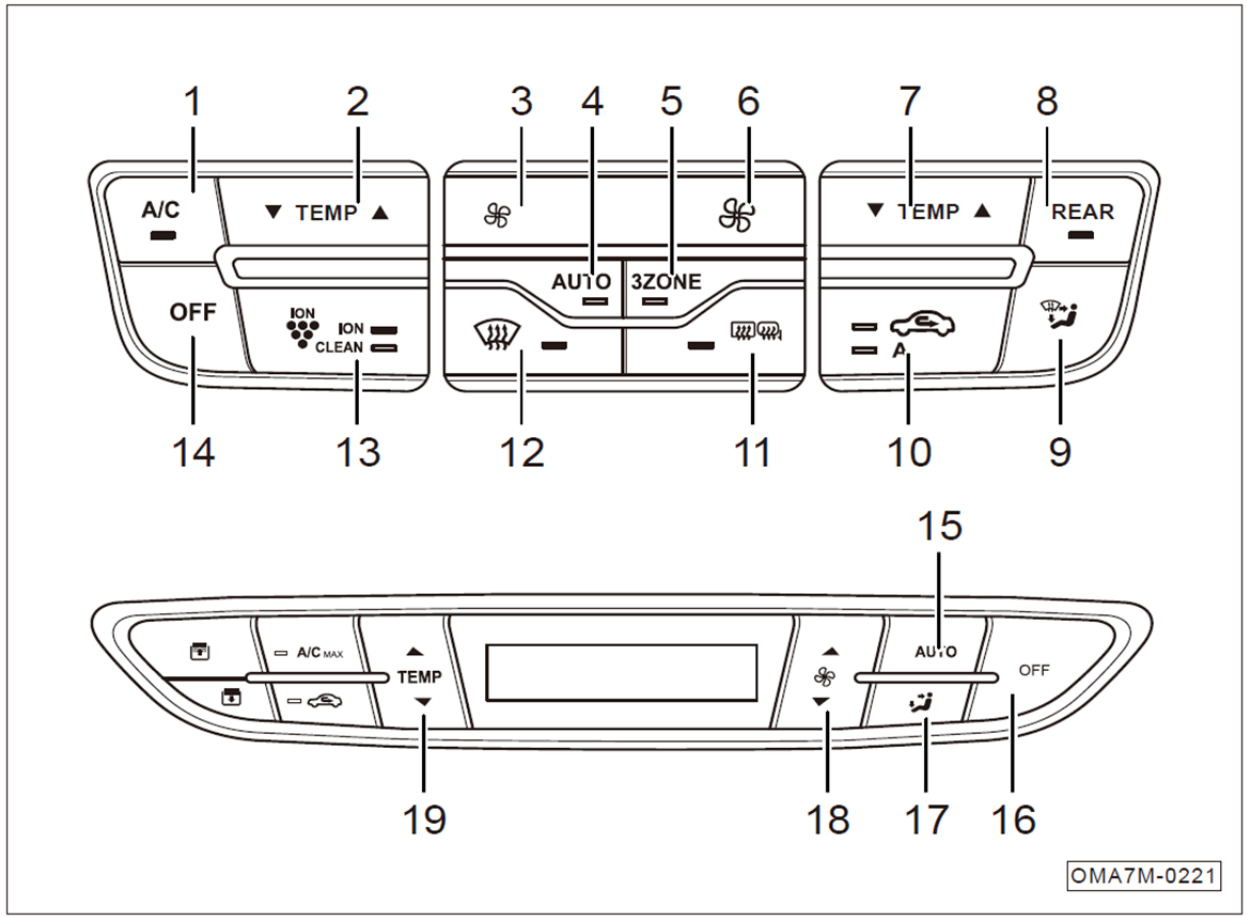
The expertise and special tools are essential to the diagnosis and repair of A/C system. Therefore, if your A/C system fails or is suspected to fail, go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.

i Hint

- When the outside temperature and humidity are high, moisture in the air will condense on the evaporator of the refrigeration system, resulting in water droplets dripping from the evaporator to form water under the car. This is normal, and there is no need to worry.
- The air inlet in front of the front windshield should be unblocked, and not clogged by snow, ice and leaves to ensure normal heating and cooling and prevent the front windshield from fogging up.
- All the windows and the sunroof must be closed for the A/C system to play a maximum effect. If the car has been exposed to the burning sun and it is very hot in the car, you should open the windows for a short time to dissipate the heat and accelerate cooling.

4.5.2 Control Panel

Full Auto Three-Zone A/C *



1. A/C button

– Turn on/off the A/C refrigeration system.

2. ▼TEMP▲Temperature control button (left)

– Set the required temperature in the car.

3. Air speed decrease button

– Decrease the blower speed.

4. AUTO A/C button (front row)

– The interior temperature, blower speed and air vent mode are automatically adjusted in this mode.

5. 3ZONE independent control button

– The air vent temperature of the front row and rear row can be set individually in this mode.

6. Air speed increase button

– Increase the blower speed.

7. ▼TEMP▲ Temperature control button (right)

– When the rear control button light is off, in 3ZONE independent control mode, it is used to set the required temperature in the front passenger area;

– When the rear control button light is on, in 3ZONE independent control mode, it is used to set the required temperature in the rear row area.

8. REAR Rear control button

– Activate/deactivate rear row control of the front row.

9. Air vent mode button

– The air vent mode can be selected, and then be shown on the display.

10. Internal/external air circulation button

– Choose the A/C air intake mode: AUTO interior/exterior circulation, interior circulation, or exterior circulation.

11. Rear windshield and exterior rear-view mirror* defogging/defrosting button

– Heat electrically the rear windshield and exterior rear-view mirrors* to remove the surface snow, frost or fog.

12. Front windshield defrosting/defogging button

– Remove the surface snow, frost or fog with the air flow from A/C system.

13. Anion air button

– Generate anion to purify the interior air.

14. OFF button

– Turn off A/C system.

15. AUTO A/C button (rear row)

– The temperature, blower speed and air circulation distribution are automatically adjusted in this mode.

16. OFF button (rear row)

– Turn off A/C system.

17. Air vent mode button (rear row)

– The air vent mode can be selected, and then be shown on the display.

18. Air speed control button (rear row)

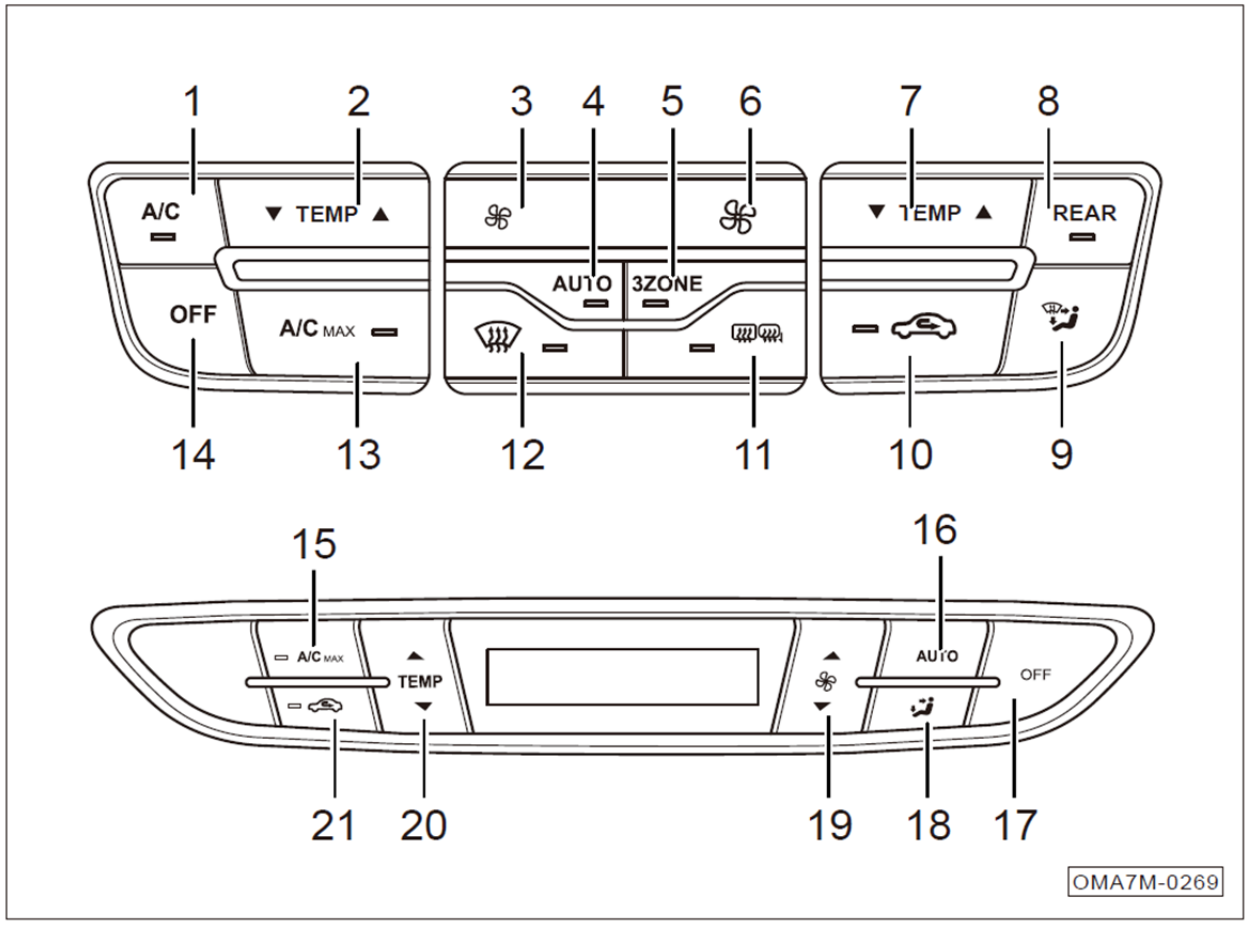
– Increase/decrease the blower speed.

19. TEMP Temperature control button (rear row)

– Increase/decrease temperature in the rear row area.

4.5.2.1 Control Panel

Full Auto Three-Zone A/C *



1. A/C button

– Turn on/off the A/C refrigeration system.

2. ▼TEMP▲ Temperature control button (left)

– Set the required temperature in the car.

3. Air speed decrease button

– Decrease the blower speed.

4. AUTO A/C button (front row)

– The interior temperature, blower speed and air vent mode are automatically adjusted in this mode.

5. 3ZONE independent control button

– The air vent temperature of the front row and rear row can be set individually in this mode.

6. Air speed increase button

– Increase the blower speed.

7. TEMP Temperature control button (right)

– When the rear control button light is off, in 3ZONE independent control mode, it is used to set the required temperature in the front passenger area;

– When the rear control button light is on, in 3ZONE independent control mode, it is used to set the required temperature in the rear row area.

8. REAR Rear control button

– Activate/deactivate rear row control of the front row.

9. Air vent mode button

– The air vent mode can be selected, and then be shown on the display.

10. Interior air circulation button

– Choose the A/C air intake mode as interior circulation.

11. Rear windshield and exterior rear-view mirror* defogging/defrosting button

– Heat electrically the rear windshield and exterior rear-view mirrors* to remove the surface snow, frost or fog.

12. Front windshield defrosting/defogging button

– Remove the surface snow, frost or fog with the air flow from A/C system.

13. A/C MAX Max cool mode button (front button)

– The system will adjust the interior temperature, blower speed, air vent mode and air circulation distribution to the special settings to meet the max cool effect.

14. OFF button

– Turn off A/C system.

15. A/C MAX Max cool mode button (rear row)

– The system will adjust the interior temperature, blower speed, air vent mode and air circulation distribution to the special settings to meet the max cool effect.

16. AUTO A/C button (rear row)

– The temperature, blower speed and air circulation distribution are automatically adjusted in this mode.

17. OFF button (rear row)

– Turn off A/C system.

18. Air vent mode button (rear row)

– The air vent mode can be selected, and then be shown on the display.

19. Air speed control button (rear row)

– Increase/decrease the blower speed.

20. TEMP Temperature control button (rear row)

– Increase/decrease temperature in the rear row area.

21. Interior air circulation button (rear row)

– Choose the A/C air intake mode as interior circulation.

A/C Button

When A/C button is pressed, the button light will be on and the refrigeration function of the A/C system will be enabled. When the refrigeration function is enabled:

- This means refrigeration/dehumidification is needed, but the compressor is not necessary to run.
- If the outside temperature is below 0°C, the button light will be on, but the compressor may not work.

When A/C button is pressed again, the button light will be off and the refrigeration function will be disabled.

Temperature Setting

The target temperatures on both sides of the front seat and in the rear row area can be independently set for the car equipped with the full auto 3-zone A/C system. The front row temperature control button is used to set the temperature in the front row area and the rear one is used to set the temperature in the rear row area.

When the temperature control button is pressed to set the interior temperature:

- The adjusted temperature value is shown on the display. The temperature is adjustable within 18.5°C ~31.5°C.
- Press ▾TEMP▴ button to increase/decrease the temperature at a step of 0.5°C.
- When the set temperature is lower than 18.5°C, LO is shown on the display; when the set temperature is higher than 31.5°C, HI is shown on the display.

Temperature setting will not change the operation mode of the A/C system. In AUTO mode, when entering LO/HI mode, the system will keep operating in a large air supply state.

In AUTO mode, in order to obtain the most ideal interior temperature, we recommend that the set temperature is 25.0°C. If necessary, you can adjust the temperature by yourself.

Hint

The temperature value on the display is the target value of the set temperature, instead of the measured value of the interior temperature.

Air Speed Setting

The air speed can either be adjusted manually or controlled automatically. If or button is pressed, it is to adjust the air speed at the air outlet manually; if it is in AUTO mode, the A/C system will control the air speed at the air outlet automatically without manual operation. Operating the air speed control button will change the system state from AUTO mode into Manual mode, causing the "AUTO" identification on the display to go out.

In Manual control mode, press the corresponding button to adjust progressively the air speed at the air outlet. The air speed scale is within 1~7. The corresponding air speed scale will be shown on the display:

: scale of the air speed at the air outlet decreases by one at each pressing.

: scale of the air speed at the air outlet increases by one at each pressing.

In AUTO mode, the air speed at the air outlet is a part of the automatic control logic. The air speed at the air outlet is not limited to 7-scale regulation in manual state, but there are only 7-scale indicating bar on the display, so the number of the indicating bars shown is the proximate one. To achieve the target value of the interior temperature, the air speed will be adjusted automatically.

AUTO Mode

When AUTO button is pressed, the button light is on, the A/C system enters full automatic operation mode, and the following items are controlled automatically as per the set value:

- Air vent temperature
- Air volume at the air outlet
- Air vent mode
- Air circulation mode
- Working conditions of A/C
- Working conditions of anion purifier

AUTO Button Light

– When the button light goes on, it indicates that the A/C system is in full automatic operation mode.

– When the button light goes out, it indicates that the A/C system is in other modes except full automatic operation mode.

3Zone Mode

When 3ZONE button is pressed once, the button light goes on, and the A/C system enters 3zone control mode. When the temperature control button (right/left) is pressed, the A/C system can also enter 3zone control mode and 3ZONE button light goes on.

In 3zone control mode, the regional temperature on both sides of the front row and in the rear row area will be controlled independently:

- Temperature control button (left) to set the temperature in the driver side area.
- Temperature control button (right) to set the temperature in the front passenger side area.
- Temperature control button (rear row) to set the temperature in the rear row area.

When 3ZONE button is pressed again, the button light goes out, and the A/C system exits 3zone control mode and enters single-zone control mode to control the temperature on both sides of the front row and in the rear row area at the same time:

- Temperature control button (left) to control temperature in the whole car area.

Hint

If the rear control function is enabled (i.e. the rear control button light goes on), temperature in the rear row area can be set via the temperature control button (right).

Rear Control

When REAR button is pressed, the button light goes on and rear control function of the A/C system is enabled. Buttons in the front A/C panel are the same as those for the rear row:

- TEMP Temperature control button (right)
- AUTO button
- OFF button
- Air vent mode button
- / Volume control button
- A/C MAX button*.
- button*.

When this function is enabled, pressing the temperature control button (left) in the front A/C panel is deemed invalid.

When this function is enabled and the following buttons in the front A/C panel are pressed, the A/C system works in corresponding mode:

- Internal/external air circulation button
- Front windshield defrosting/defogging button
- A/C compressor button
- 3ZONE independent control button

When REAR button is pressed again or there is no-operation timeout (6s), the button light goes out and rear control function of the A/C system is disabled.

Hint

If the rear control function is enabled (i.e. the rear control button light goes on), temperature in the front passenger area cannot be set independently.

Air Vent Mode

The air vent mode can be selected manually or controlled automatically. If button is pressed, manual selection is selected to switch the air vent mode at the air outlet; while in AUTO mode, the A/C system controls the air mode automatically without manual operation. When button is operated, the system will switch to Manual mode from AUTO mode.

In Manual mode, pressing button can switch among the following several air vent modes in loop. The sequence is as follows:

Face blowing mode: Air is blown out from the air outlet of the instrument panel.

Face and foot blowing mode: Air is blown out from the air outlets of the instrument panel and the footwell.

Foot blowing mode: Air is blown out from the air outlet of the footwell.

Foot and front windshield blowing mode: Air is blown out from the defrosting air outlet of the front windshield and the air outlet of the footwell.

In AUTO mode, air vent mode is a part of automatic control logic and selected by the A/C system automatically. The fundamental factor affecting the air vent mode is air vent temperature. When the air vent temperature is high, most of the air will be blown towards the feet. When the air vent temperature is low, most of the air will be blown towards the face.

Hint

- To ensure that A/C system can effectively control all the air vent modes automatically, please open all the air outlets.
- Under cold start in winter, the air vent mode will be switched over from the front windshield blowing mode in AUTO mode.

Air Circulation

Automatic air circulation*

Press button continuously to make air circulation mode switch circularly among AUTO interior/exterior circulation, interior circulation and exterior circulation.

– AUTO control of interior/exterior circulation: By press button continuously, the lower button light goes on and the system enters AUTO control mode of interior/exterior circulation. In this mode:

- The A/C air intake mode is controlled automatically according to the exhaust conditions in the outside air. When the exhaust content in the outside air rises, the air intake mode is interior circulation; while when it drops, the air intake mode is exterior circulation.

– Interior air circulation: By pressing button continuously, the upper button light goes on and the system enters interior air circulation mode. In this mode:

- The outside air can be prevented from entering the car to make the interior air circulate.

- The exhaust of other vehicles or other dirty air can be prevented from entering the car.
- In AUTO control mode in summer, interior air circulation mode will be selected to strengthen the refrigeration effect.

– Exterior air circulation: By pressing button continuously, the button light goes out and the system enters exterior air circulation mode. In this mode:

- The outside air will be introduced into the car to keep fresh interior air.

Normal air circulation*

– Interior air circulation: By pressing button, the button light goes on and the system enters interior air circulation mode. In this mode:

- The outside air can be prevented from entering the car to make the interior air circulate.
- The exhaust of other vehicles or other dirty air can be prevented from entering the car.
- In AUTO control mode in summer, interior air circulation mode will be selected to strengthen the refrigeration effect.

– Exterior air circulation: By pressing button, the button light goes out and the system enters exterior air circulation mode. In this mode:

- The outside air will be introduced into the car to keep fresh interior air.

Caution

- Prolonged interior air circulation will cause accumulation of carbon dioxide in the car, and it is not conducive to keep the driver awake.
- Using the interior air circulation mode in cold or rainy weather is easy to cause fogging of window, affecting the driver's vision.

Rear Windshield Defrosting

Press button to light on the button light and enable the rear windshield defrosting function to heat the rear windshield and the exterior rear-view mirrors* electrically.

During the rear windshield defrosting, you can press button again to light off the button light and disable the rear windshield defrosting function. If the rear windshield defrosting function is not off, this function will be off automatically after continuous working for 15 minutes.

Hint

If the engine is not started, prolonged rear windshield defrosting function may cause low battery voltage, leading to start failure of the car.

Front Windshield Defrosting

Press button to light on the button light and enable the front windshield defrosting function. The system will perform the following settings automatically:

- Turn on the A/C system.
- Enter front windshield blowing mode.
- Enter exterior circulation mode.

Press button again to light off the button light, disable the front windshield defrosting function, and return to the state before the defrosting action; or press AUTO button to directly enter the AUTO control state to disable the front windshield defrosting function.

Caution

When the lowest temperature is set, enabling the defrosting function may cause fog on the outside of the windscreen to affect the driver's vision. When the defrosting function is enabled, the temperature is suggested to be set at hot or warm position.

When the defrosting function is enabled at an ambient temperature of higher than 0°C, if the compressor (A/C) is turned off manually, it may cause fog on the front windshield to affect the driver's vision, and even lead to traffic accidents.

Anion Air Purifier*

Press button continuously to make the operating mode of the anion air purifier switch circularly among ION, CLEAN and OFF.

By starting the anion air purifier, it can generate anion to effectively break down such harmful gases as formaldehyde and benzene in the car and purify the air in the car, thus relieving driving fatigue, releasing psychological tensions and protecting physical health.

– Press button continuously. When ION button light is on, the A/C system will start ION operating mode of the anion air purifier.

– Press button continuously. When CLEAN button light is on, the A/C system will start CLEAN operating mode of the anion air purifier.

– Press button continuously. When both button lights are off, the A/C system will turn off the anion air purifier.

Hint

- The ion output in CLEAN mode is greater than that in ION mode.
- Pressing AUTO button can enable the anion purifier function.

Max Cool Mode*

Press A/C MAX button to light on the button light and let the A/C system enter max cool mode. The system will perform the following settings automatically:

- Turn on the A/C system.
- Set the temperature at LO.
- Set the air vent mode as face blowing mode.
- Set the air circulation mode as interior circulation mode.
- Set the air speed at the air outlet as the maximum.

Press A/C MAX button again to light off the button light, let the A/C system exit the max cool mode, and return to the state before the max cool action. Or press AUTO button to directly enter the AUTO control mode to exit the max cool mode as well.

A/C Off

Press OFF button to turn off A/C system. After A/C system is off, the compressor is turned off and the air speed at the air outlet is 0.

After A/C system is off, * 、 * 、 、 、 、 buttons can be operated effectively without turning on A/C system; while 3ZONE button* and ▼TEMP▲ button are unavailable. The A/C system can be turned on by pressing any button among AUTO 、 A/C 、 、 A/CMAX *.

Air Quality Control Function*

When the A/C system enters AUTO mode, the air quality control function is enabled for real-time monitoring of air quality during car traveling. In case of jamming, tunnel, etc. when the car runs in an area seriously polluted, circulation mode of the A/C system will be switched from exterior circulation to interior circulation to prevent polluted air from entering the car; and when the exterior air becomes fresher, the circulation mode will be changed from interior circulation to exterior circulation to introduce fresh air and increase oxygen content in the car.

Sunlight Sensor

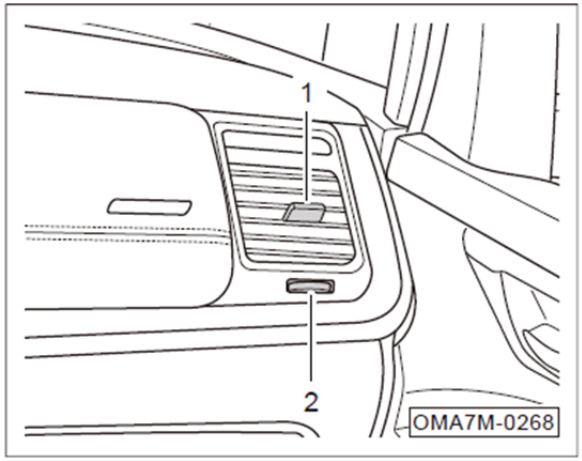
In AUTO mode, the A/C control system can detect the interior and exterior temperature and sunlight via sunlight/temperature sensor. Be careful not to cover the interior sensor when driving.

Caution

Due to different environment areas and vehicle conditions, the ambient temperature shown may be different from the actual value.

4.5.3 Air Outlets

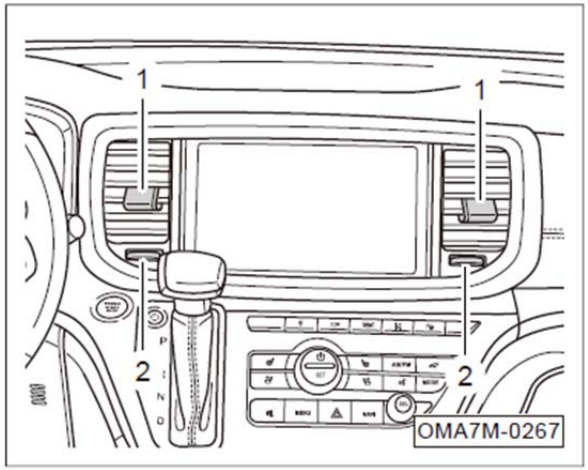
Side Air Outlets of Instrument Panel



– Move the flap ① at the air outlet leftward, rightward, upward and downward to adjust the air direction.

– Turn the knob ② near the air outlet upward and downward to adjust the air volume. The lower-most position is the off position.

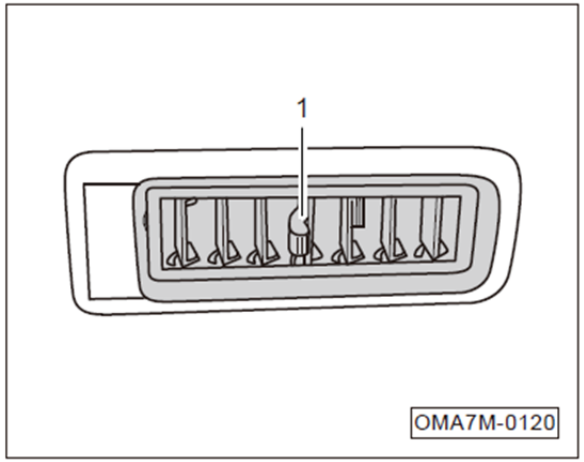
Central Air Outlets of Instrument Panel



– Move the flap ① at the air outlet leftward, rightward, upward and downward to adjust the air direction.

– Turn the knob ② near the air outlet leftward and rightward to adjust the air volume. The left-most position of the left air outlet is its off position and the right-most position of the right air outlet is the off position.

Roof Air Outlet

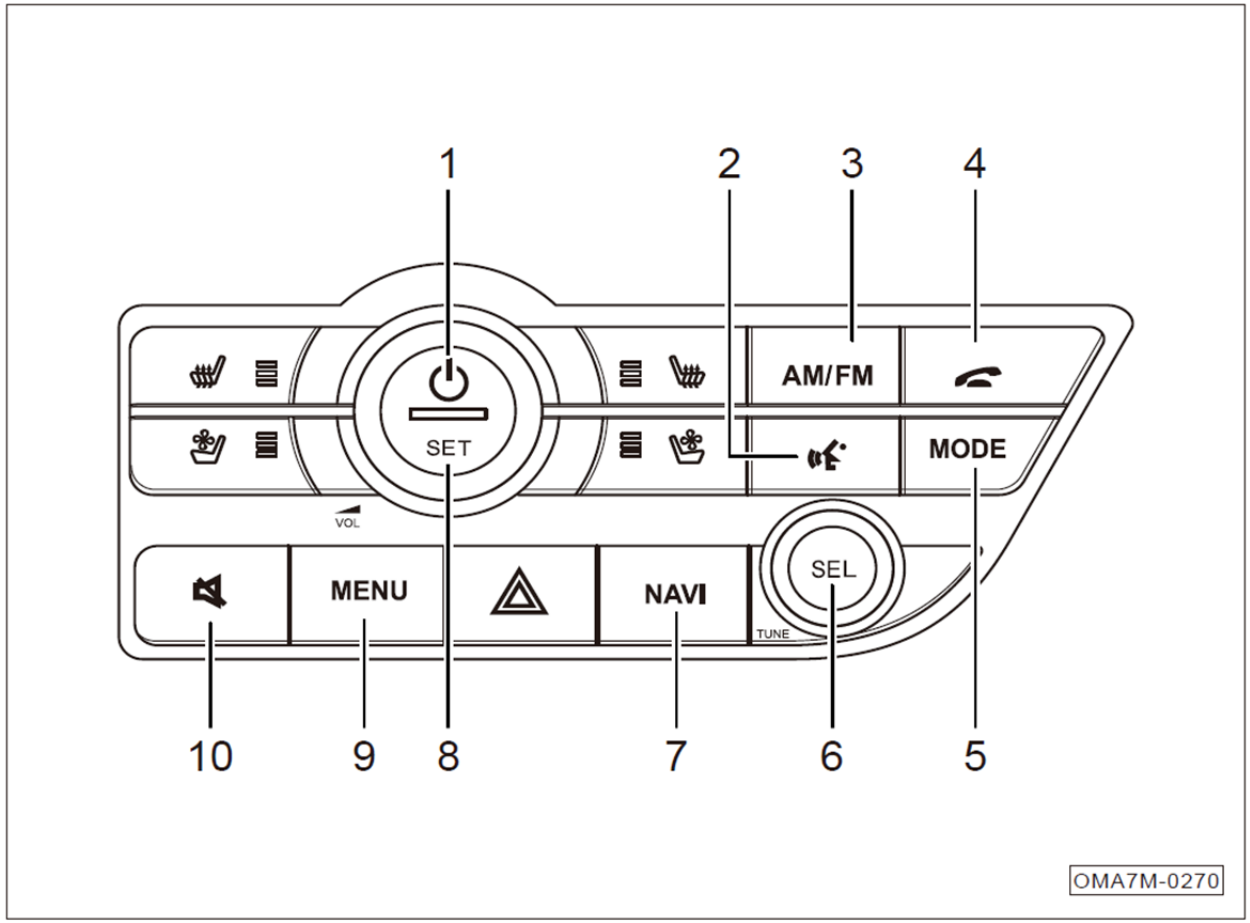


– Move the flap ① at the air outlet forward and backward to adjust the air volume from small to large and the air direction;

– Move the air outlet assembly upward and downward to adjust the air direction up and down.

4.6 AUDIO System

4.6.1 Control Panel



1. Power Button/Volume Adjustment Knob

– Short press this button to power on/off the head unit.

– Long press this button to turn on/off the screen.

– Turn the knob clockwise to turn up the volume, and counter-clockwise to down the volume.

2. VR Voice Button

– Short press this button to start local VR.

– In Siri process, short press or long press this button to end Siri.

3. AM/FM Radio Button

– In other audio source mode, short press this button to switch to AM/FM radio;

– In radio mode, short press this button to switch the AM or FM radio band.

4. Telephone Button

– Short press this button to enter the Bluetooth Phone interface.

5. Audio Source Switching Button

– Continuously press this button continuously to switch the audio source:

FM → AM → USB → Bluetooth music → FM.

– Pressing this button will not actively switch to Carlife music; if Carlife music is played currently, pressing this button will switch to Radio.

6. Select Button

– Short press this button to select.

– In radio state, clockwise rotation can increase the radio frequency; and counter-clockwise rotation can decrease the radio frequency.

8. Setting Button

– Short press this button to firstly enter the "System Setting" interface; and continuously short press this button to switch among: System Setting → Car Setting → Exit.

9. Main Menu Interface Button

– Short press this button to enter "Main Menu" interface.

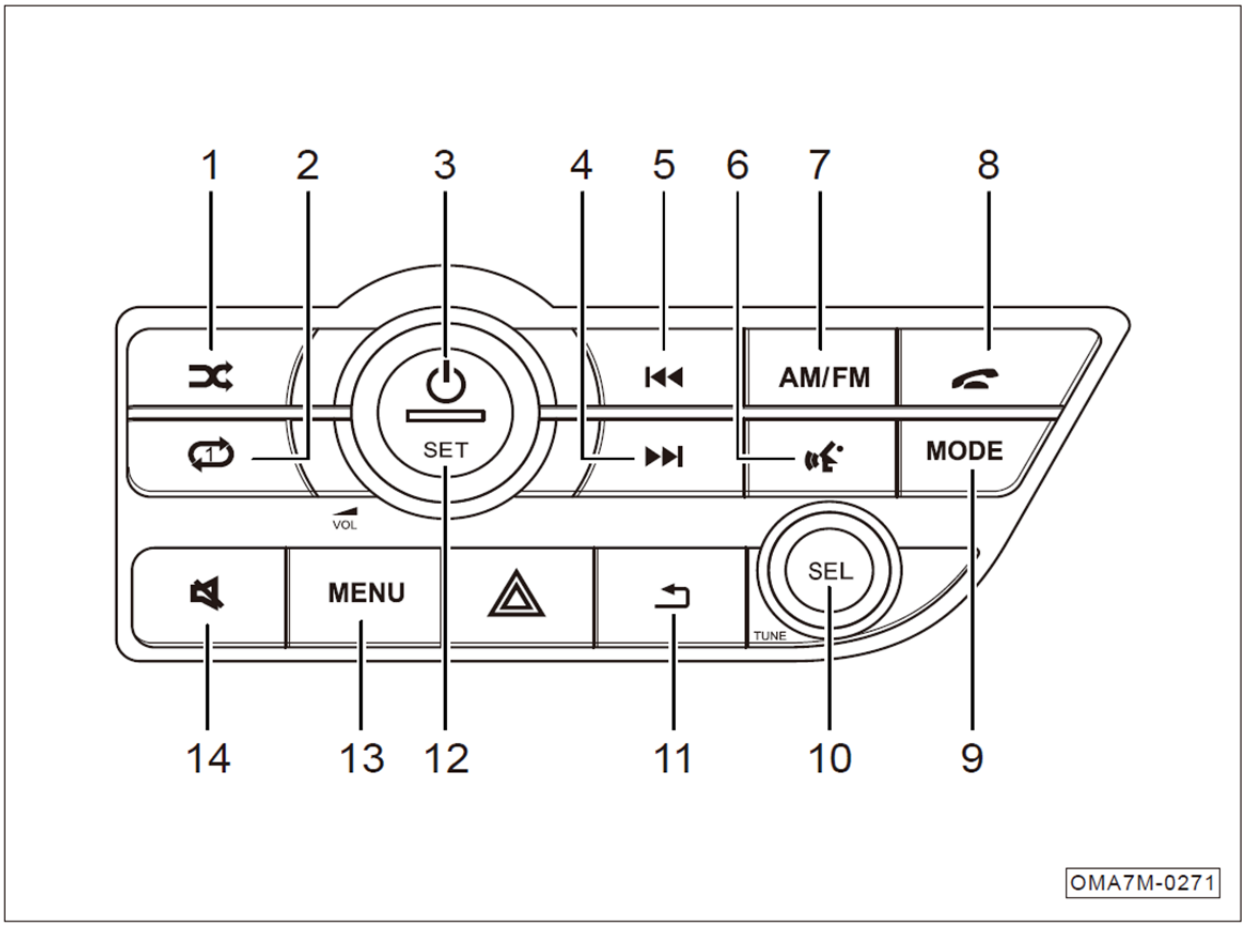
10. Mute Button

– Short press this button to mute the media source.

– After muting, press again to unmute.

Hint

The interface or function of AUDIO system introduced in the User's Manual may differ due to different vehicle configurations, i.e. it is for reference only. Please refer to the actual car configuration.



1. Random Play Button

– In Music status, short press this button to enter random play mode.

2. Single Loop Play Button

– In Music status, short press this button to enter single loop play mode.

3. Power Button/Volume Adjustment Knob

– Short press this button to power on/off the head unit.

– Long press this button to turn on/off the screen.

– Turn the knob clockwise to turn up the volume, and counter-clockwise to down the volume.

4. Next Button

– In Music status, short press this button to play the next song.

5. Previous Button

– In Music status, short press this button to play the previous song.

6. VR Voice Button

– Short press (less than 0.5s) this button to start local VR or end VR.

– In Siri process, short press (less than 0.5s) or long press (more than 0.5s) this button to end Siri.

7. AM/FM Radio Button

– In other audio source mode, short press this button to switch to the AM / FM radio;

– In radio mode, short press this button to switch the AM or FM radio band.

8. Telephone Button

– Short press this button to enter the Bluetooth Telephone interface.

9. Audio Source Switching Button

– Continuously press this button continuously to switch the audio source:

FM → AM → USB → Bluetooth music → FM.

– Pressing this button will not actively switch to Carlife music; if Carlife music is played currently, pressing this button will switch to Radio.

10. Select Button

– Short press this button to select.

– In radio state, clockwise rotation can increase the radio frequency; and counter-clockwise rotation can decrease the radio frequency.

11. Return Button

– Short press this button to return to the previous interface.

12. Setting button

– Short press this button to firstly enter the "System Setting" interface; and continuously short press this button to switch among: System Setting → Car Setting → Exit.

13. Main Menu Interface Button

– Short press this button to enter "Main Menu" interface.

14. Mute Button

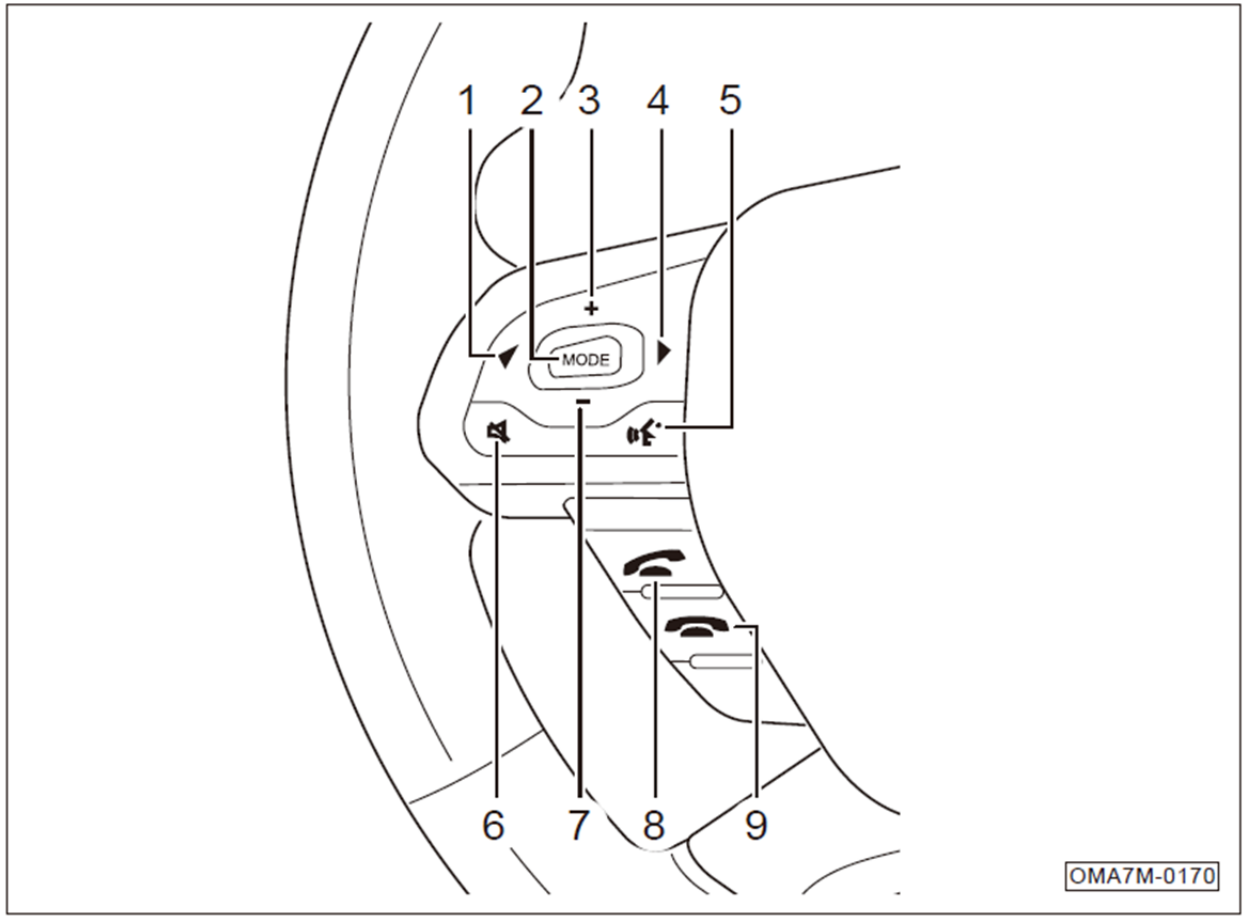
– Short press this button to mute the media source.

– After muting, press again to unmute.

Hint

The interface or function of AUDIO system introduced in the User's Manual may differ due to different vehicle configurations, i.e. it is for reference only. Please refer to the actual car configuration.

4.6.2 Control Buttons on the Steering Wheel



1. Backward Button

– In radio mode, search the station towards LF automatically. If an effective station is searched, stop auto search and start playing;

– Change the track into the previous one in media source play.

2. Audio Source Switching Button

– Continuously short press this button to switch among:

FM → AM → USB → Bluetooth music → FM.

– Pressing this button will not actively switch to CarLife music; if CarLife music is played currently, pressing this button will switch to Radio.

3. Volume up Button

4. Forward Button

– In radio mode, search the station towards HF automatically. If an effective station is searched, stop auto search and start playing;

– Change the track into the next one in media source play.

5. VR Voice Button

– Short press this button to start local VR.

– In Siri process, short press or long press this button to end Siri.

Hint

Press MODE button to interrupt VR process, and enter Radio mode.

6. Mute Button

7. Volume down Button

8. Answer Call Button

– When an incoming call is in the Bluetooth Phone system, press this button to answer.

9. Hang-up Button

– When an incoming call is in the Bluetooth Phone system, press this button to reject;

– Press this button to end the current call in the call process.

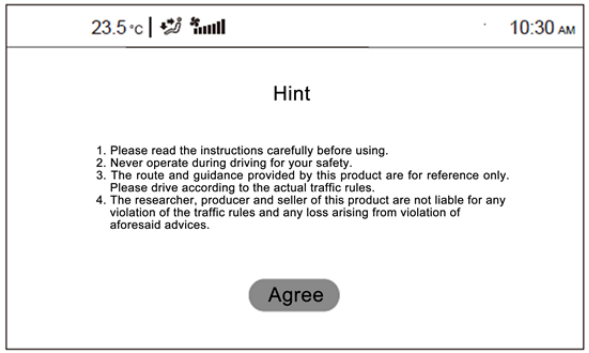
4.6.3 Basic Operations

ON/OFF

– When the Start switch is at "ACC" or "ON" position, the system displays the lock screen interface.

– Short press ⏻ button to start the audio equipment.

Starting Tips Interface

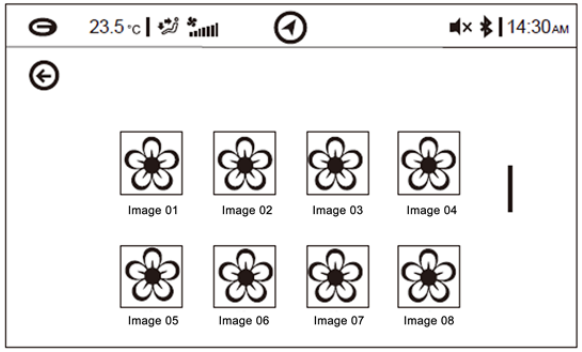

23.5 °C
10:30 AM
Hint
1. Please read the instructions carefully before using.
2. Never operate during driving for your safety.
3. The route and guidance provided by this product are for reference only. Please drive according to the actual traffic rules.
4. The researcher, producer and seller of this product are not liable for any violation of the traffic rules and any loss arising from violation of aforesaid advices.
Agree

When the Start switch is switched to "ACC" or "ON" position, the head unit is started and "Tips" interface appears. Please read carefully the tips and operate the head unit following these tips to prevent accidents.

Screen Saver

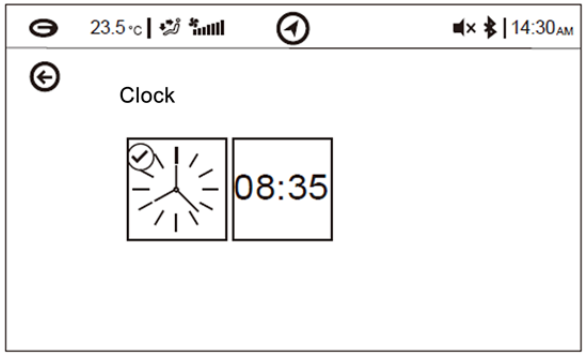
Short press ⏻ button to display the screen saver interface. There are three kinds of screen savers, including dynamic, clock and custom screen savers.

Dynamic Screensaver

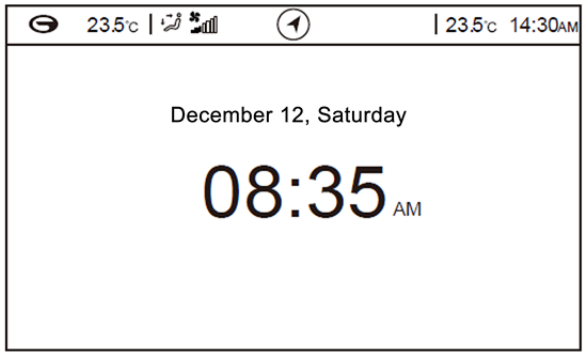


– Click Dynamic ⊘ soft button on the main interface of card mode to enter the dynamic screensaver selection interface, select appropriate dynamic screensaver to enter the preview interface, and click "Save" to set it as the current screensaver.

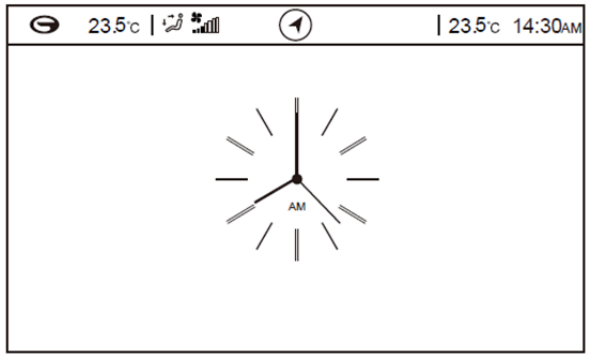
Clock Screensaver



– Click Clock ⊘ soft button on the main interface of card mode to select the digital clock or analog clock to enter the preview interface, and click "Save" to set it as the current screensaver.

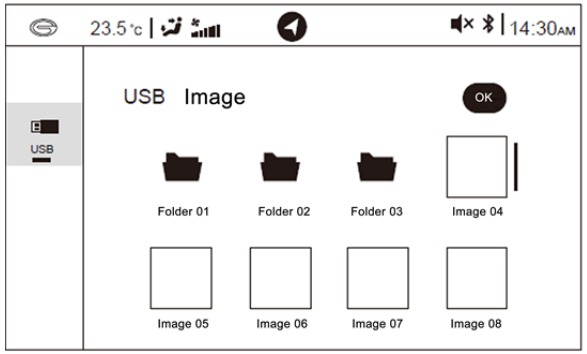


– Digital clock display.



– Analog clock display.

Custom Screensaver



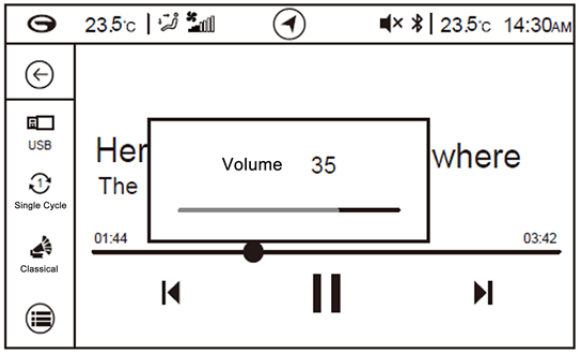
– Click Custom on the main interface of card mode to enter the selection interface of custom screensaver, and select a suitable picture as the screensaver depending on your personal preference.

Hint

When the custom screensaver is selected, the head unit has to be connected to the USB disk which shall contain pictures in the format supported by the head unit.

Volume Control

Volume Adjustment



– Turn the volume adjustment knob clockwise/counter-clockwise to turn up/down the volume.

– Short press the volume button (+/-) on the left side of the steering wheel to turn up/down the volume.

Mute

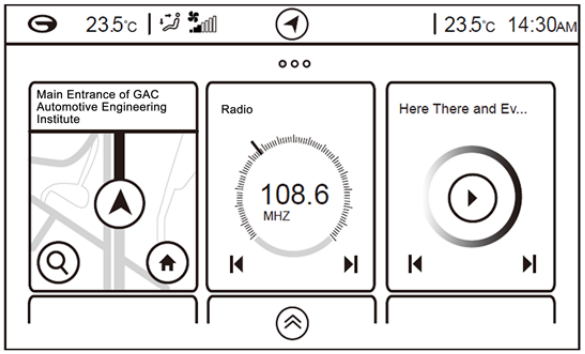
– Short press button to enable the mute function;

– Short press button again to release the mute function.

Main Interface of Front Head Unit

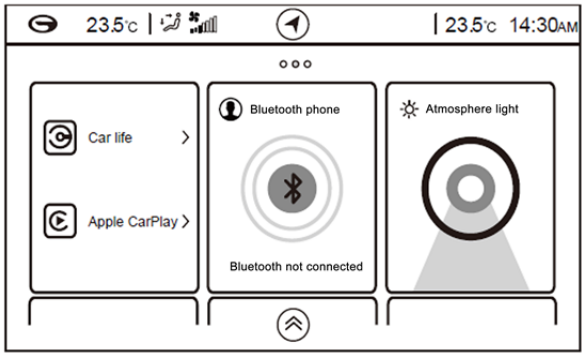
The main interface modes include card mode and button mode.

Card Mode



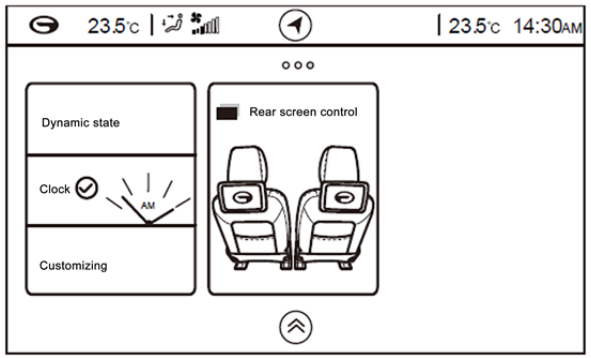
– The functions in card mode include navigation*, radio, music, Carlife*, CarPlay*, Bluetooth Telephone, atmosphere light, screensaver selection, and rear screen control*. Card switching is realized by leftward or rightward sliding for page turning.

Function	Description
	Short press to switch to the function button mode.
	Short press to skip to the navigation interface and enable the search function.
	Short press to skip to the navigation interface.
Main Entrance of GAC Automotive Engineering Institute	Address title, touch to enter navigation interface.
Radio	Title, touch to enter radio interface.
Here There and Ev...	Title, touch to enter music interface.
	Short press to switch to the last effective frequency.
	Short press to switch to the next effective frequency.
	Play or pause the current music.



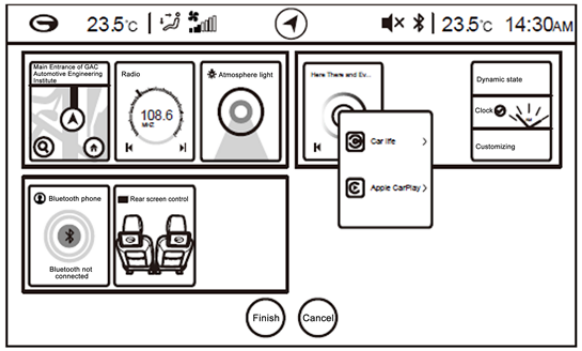
Description of soft button functions:

Function	Description
Car life	Skip to Carlife interface.
Apple CarPlay	Skip to CarPlay interface.
Bluetooth phone	Skip to Bluetooth Telephone interface.
	Turn on or off the atmosphere lights.



Description of soft button functions:

Function	Description
Clock	Enter the selection interface of clock style.
Dynamic	Enter the selection interface of dynamic pattern.
Custom	Enter the selection interface of custom images; grayed if unavailable.
Rear screen control	Control rear left/right screen.



– Slide on the opposite angles of the screen towards the middle with thumb and forefinger at the same time to enter the edit mode of card sequence.

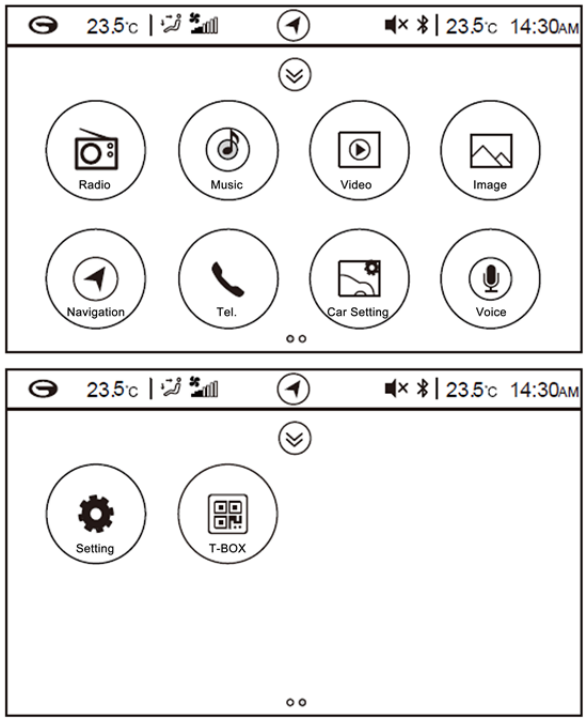
– Long press the card to drag the card to edit the card sequence.

– After the editing of the sequence, click [OK] to save.

– If saving is not required, click [Cancel] to exit.

Button Mode

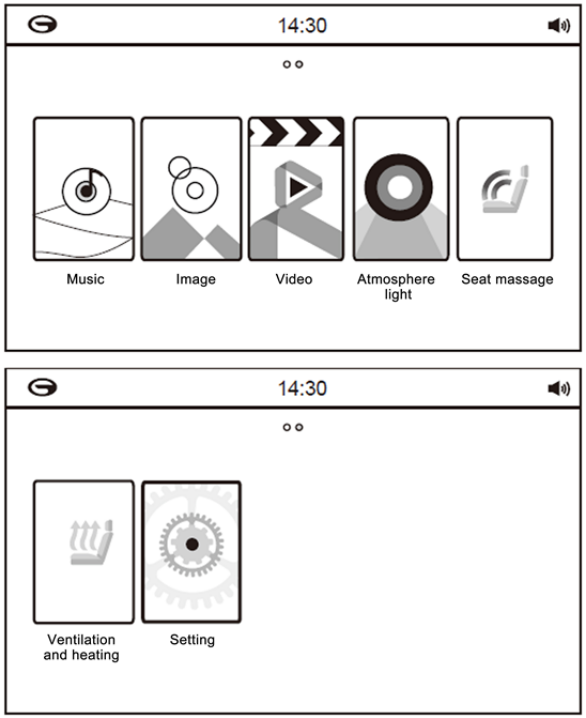
On card mode interface, click button to allow the main interface to skip from card mode to button mode.



– The functions of button mode include: radio, music, video, image, navigation*, telephone, car setting, voice, setting, and T-BOX. Page turning is realized by leftward or rightward sliding.

– By short pressing the corresponding functional soft button, the system will skip to the corresponding function interface.

Main Interface of Rear Head Unit*



– Functions of the rear head unit include: music, image, video, atmosphere light, seat massage, ventilation and heating, and setting. Page turning is realized by leftward or rightward sliding.

– Click the card soft button to enter corresponding function interface.

4.6.4 Radio

Enter the radio play interface through the following ways:

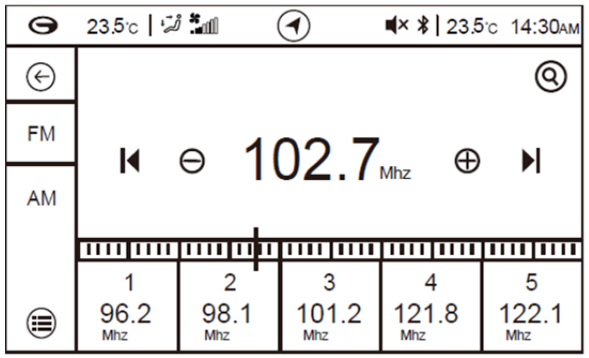
– Short press "Radio" soft button on card mode interface or button mode interface to enter radio mode;

– Continuously press MODE button on the panel to switch to radio;

– Short press AM/FM button on the panel to enter the radio mode;

– Continuously press MODE button on the left side of the steering wheel to switch to radio.

Band Selection



– In the radio playing interface, continuously short press AM/FM button on the panel or short press FM or AM soft button to switch the band.

Radio Search Function

Radio stations are searched manually or automatically.

Manual Searching

– Short press ⊕ soft button or turn "SEL" knob counter-clockwise to change the station frequency by one step towards LF direction.

– Short press ⊖ soft button or turn "SEL" knob clockwise to change the station frequency by one step towards HF direction.

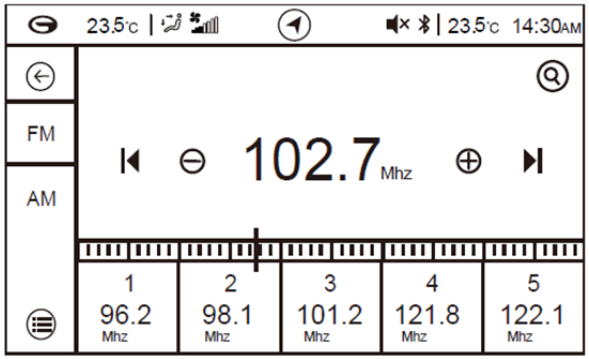
– Drag the frequency axis cursor ı leftward or rightward to search for radio stations.

Auto Searching

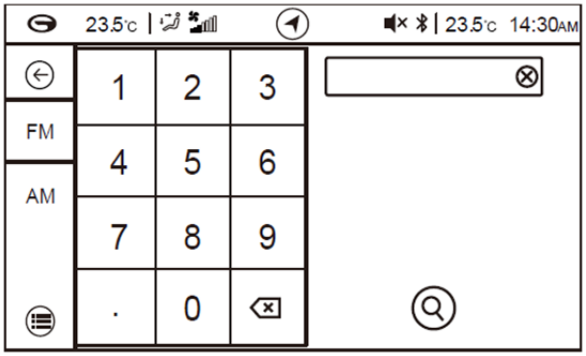
– Short press ⏭ soft button or ▶ button on the left side of the steering wheel to search for station towards HF automatically. If an effective station is met, stop auto search and start playing.

– Short press ⏮ soft button or ◀ button on the left side of the steering wheel to search for station towards LF automatically. If an effective station is met, stop auto search and start playing.

Manually Input the Frequency of Radio Station

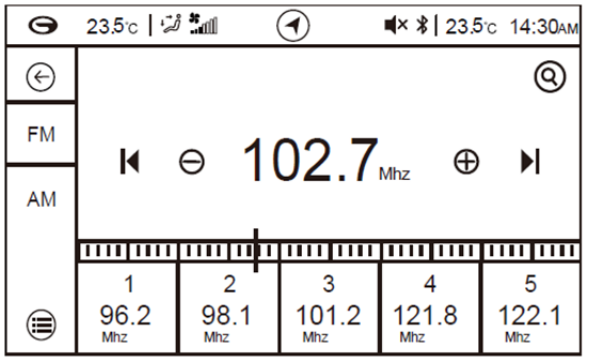


1. Click 🔍 on the upper right corner to open the keyboard.



2. Input the station frequency manually.

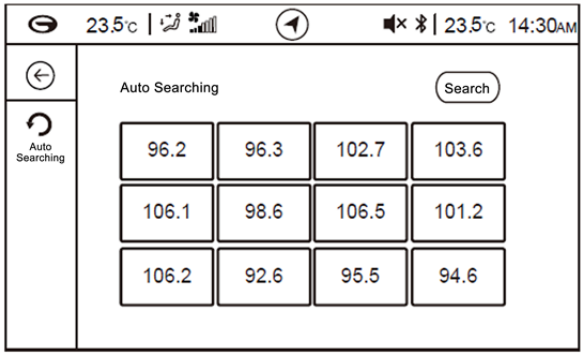
Pre-save the Radio Station



– Long press soft buttons (1~5) on the lower part of the station interface to pre-save the current station to the corresponding positions (1~5).

– Short press soft buttons (1~5) to play the corresponding pre-saved station.

Auto Save



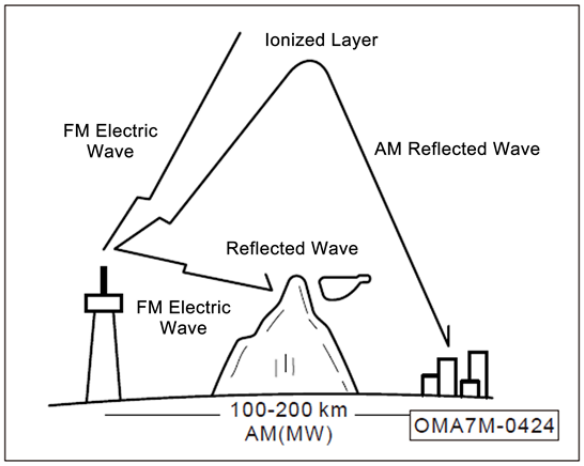
– Short press soft button to search for radio stations from the current frequency. After search, the system will save 12 radio stations with strong signals in the list and start to play the radio station with the strongest signal. During the search process, returning or switching sound source will interrupt the search.

– If the radio station has been pre-saved in the radio station list, touch "Search" to search radio stations again.

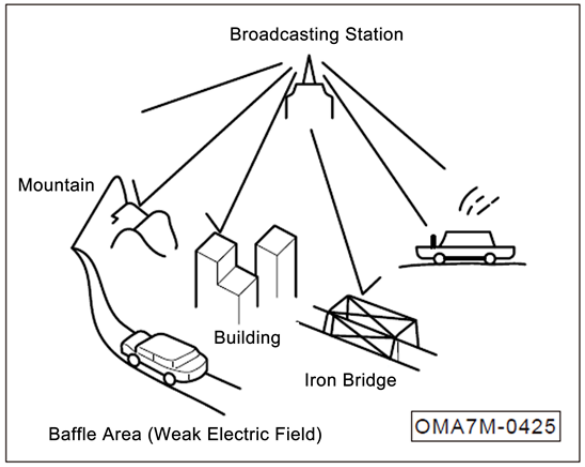
Hint

In case of poor signal reception, less than 12 stations may be saved.

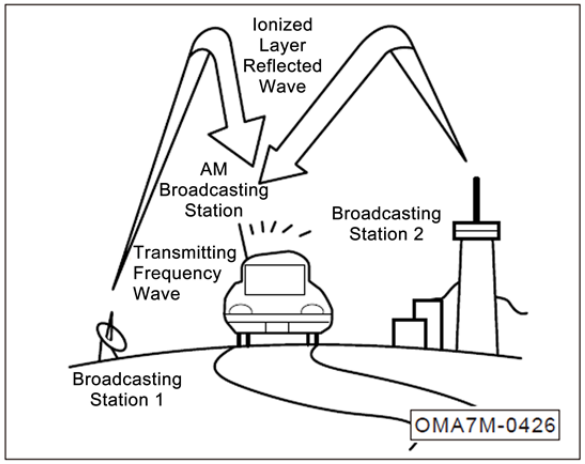
Reception Form of AM/FM Car Audio



VHF channels on FM will pass through the ionosphere directly without reflection, but once they hit high mountains, high-rise buildings and other barriers, they will produce reflection. FM broadcasting distance is usually about 40~50 km. It will become shorter when stereo signals are transmitted.



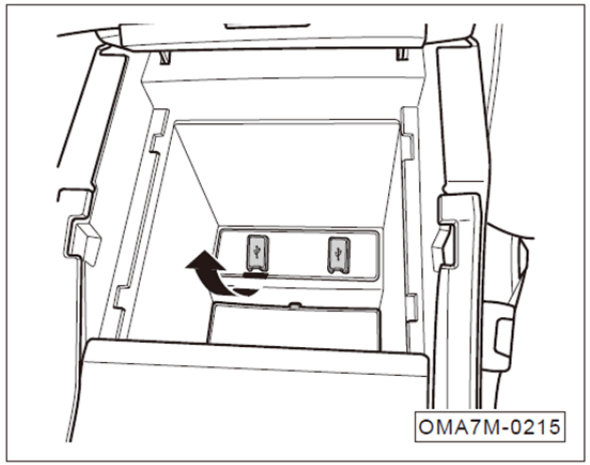
The radio is far away from the broadcasting station, so the signals are too weak to be received. As a result, the radio will only receive noises. When the car is driven between the areas to receive two strong stations with a close signal frequency at the same time, the radio may lose sound suddenly or produce noise interference.



AM medium waves or short waves cannot pass through the ionosphere, resulting in diffraction. When the waves are deflected by mountains and buildings, its broadcasting distance is farther than that of FM. Therefore, it is likely to simultaneously receive signals from two AM radio stations.

4.6.5 USB Play

Selection of USB Sound Source



– Open the USB interface in the direction shown in the figure.

There are several ways to enter the main interface of USB media source:

– Short press "Music" soft button on card mode interface or button mode interface to enter USB audio play mode;

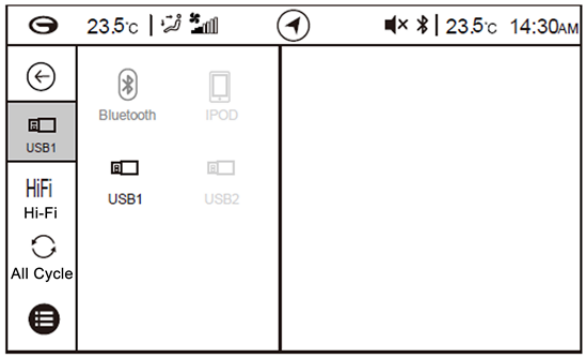
– Continuously press MODE button on the panel to switch to USB play;

– Continuously short press MODE button on the left side of the steering wheel to switch to USB play.

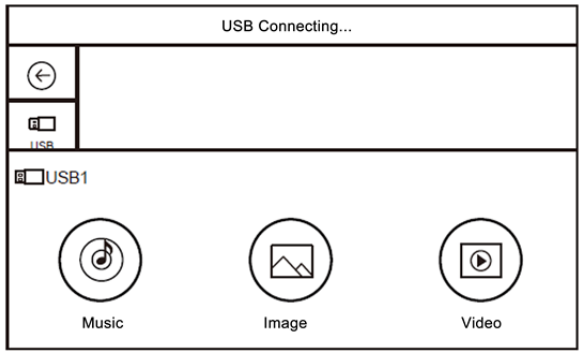
Hint

The AUDIO system can support 32 GB FAT32 and NTFS USB disks.

USB Music Player



– Short press to select the external device. USB, iPod and Bluetooth are compatible.



– After USB device is successfully connected, a prompt will pop up. USB music, image and video are supported;

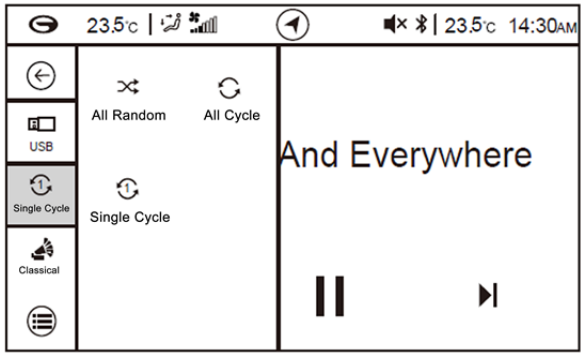
– Click "Music", "Image" or "Video" in the pop-up box to enter corresponding USB application.

Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
⏮	Previous Track/REW
⏭	Next Track/FF
▶	Play button
⏸	Pause button
●	Drag FF/REW play progress
☰	Enter the list

– The play interface can display the song name, singer name, total song duration and play time.

Loop Mode



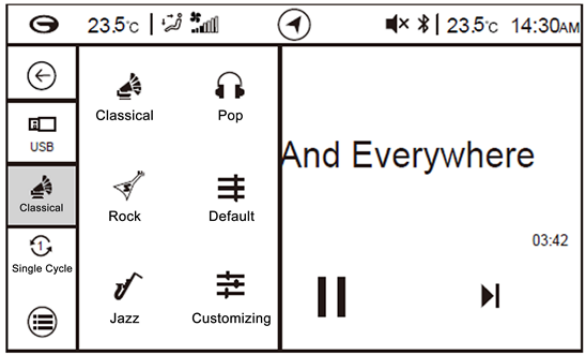
Short press ↻ soft button to change the play mode of USB music:

– All random: The songs will be played according to random list, and will stop after the play ends;

– All loop: Play the songs according to the sequence list and play from the start again after the end of play;

– Single loop: Play the song repeatedly. If the next song is selected, the next song will be played repeatedly.

Sound Effect Switch



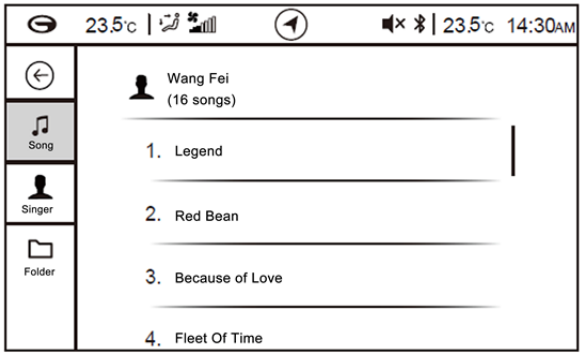
Short press soft button to switch the preset sound effect. The system supports five preset sound effects and customized effect:

– For some vehicle models: classics, popular, rock, default, jazz, custom;

– For some vehicle models: classics, popular, rock, Hi-Fi, jazz, custom;

– For the customized sound effect, the user can adjust the high, middle and low pitches (please refer to the sound effect setting function).

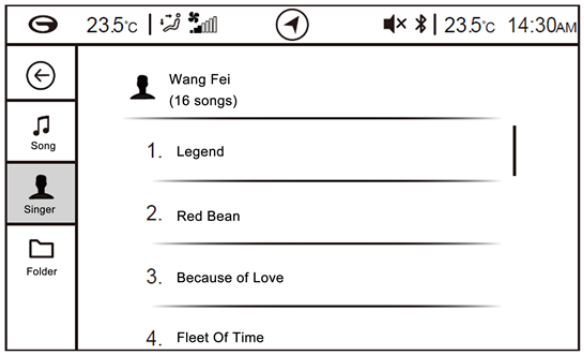
Music List



– Short press in the must play interface to enter the list;

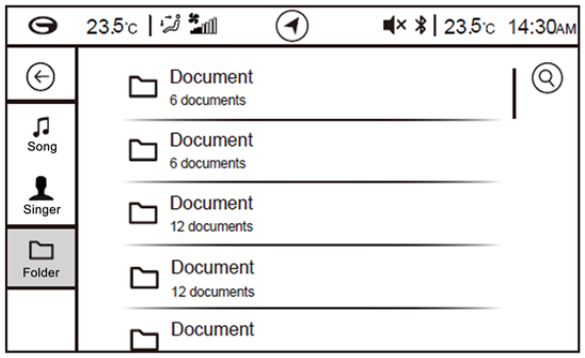
– Short press to enter the song list, and select a song to enter the play interface;

– Slide the scroll bar on the right of the list up and down to find a song;



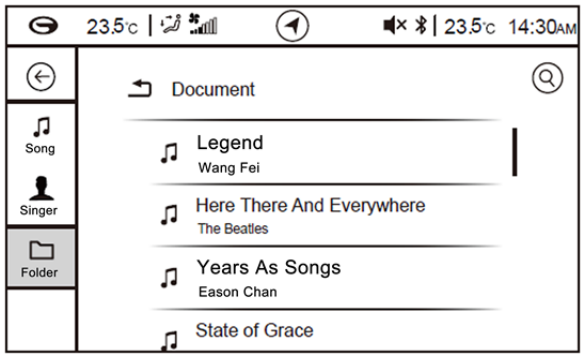
– Short press to enter singer list, select a singer to enter the song list of the singer, and select a song to enter the play interface;

– Slide the scroll bar on the right of list up and down to find a singer.



– Short press Folder to enter the folder list;

– Slide the scroll bar on the right side of the list upward and downward to find a folder.

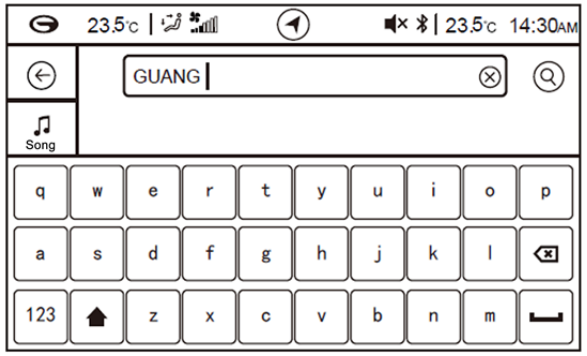


– Select a folder under the Folder to enter the next level of folder list or song list, and select a song under that folder to enter the play interface;

– Slide the scroll bar on the right of list up and down to find a song;

– Short press to return to the previous level of folder directory.

Music List Search



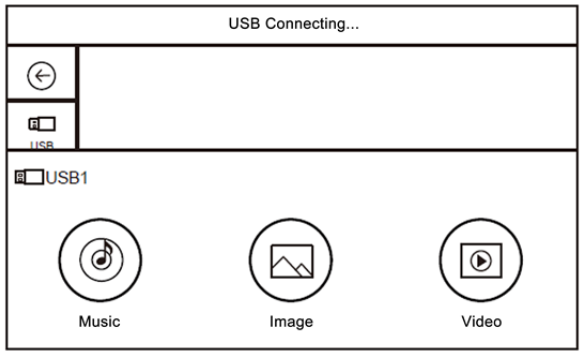
– Short press on the top right comer to open the search keyboard, and input initials or English letters to find a song, singer or folder;

– Short press "123" button on the left bottom of the keyboard to switch from letter mode to number mode;

– Short press on the right side of the keyboard to delete the input contents one by one;

– Short press in the search box to delete all input contents.

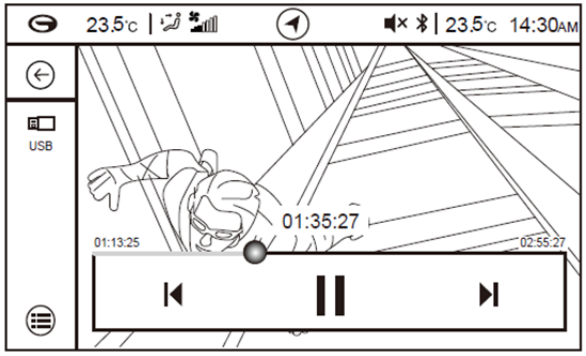
USB Video Play



– Press "Video" button under button mode or the pop-up box appearing when the USB device is inserted to enter the video play interface.

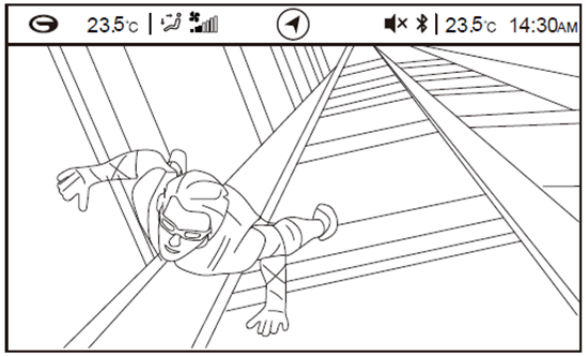
Hint

The system will not allow the video play when the AUDIO system is configured with video play restriction, the Start switch is at "ON" position, and the parking brake is released.



Description of soft button functions:

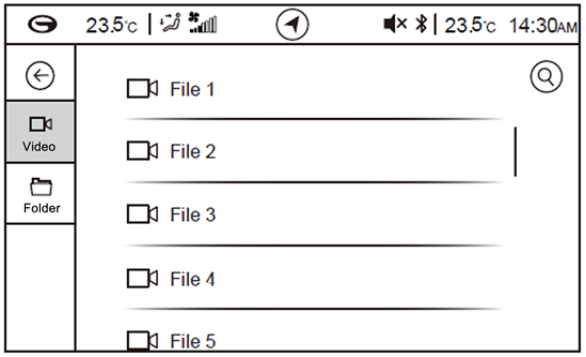
Icon	Description
	Play the previous video
	Play the next video
	Play button
	Pause button
	Drag FF/REW play progress
	Enter the list



– Short press the blank area in the video play interface to enter full-screen play mode (the status bar still exists).

Video List

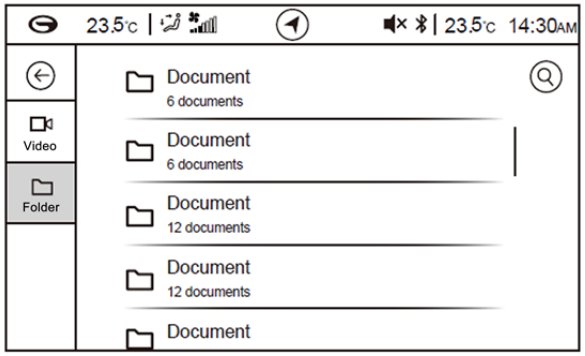
– Short press "List" to enter the list.



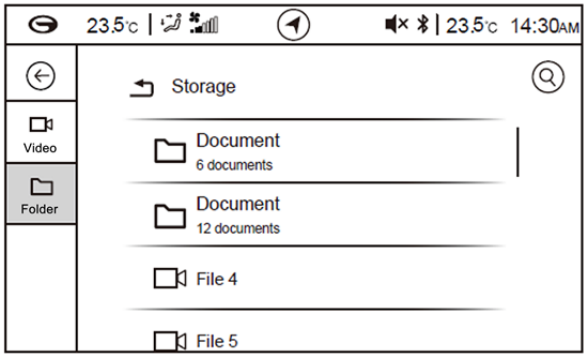
– The list is divided into video list and folder list;

– In the video list interface, select a video to enter video play interface;

– Slide the scroll bar on the right side of the list upward and downward to find a video.

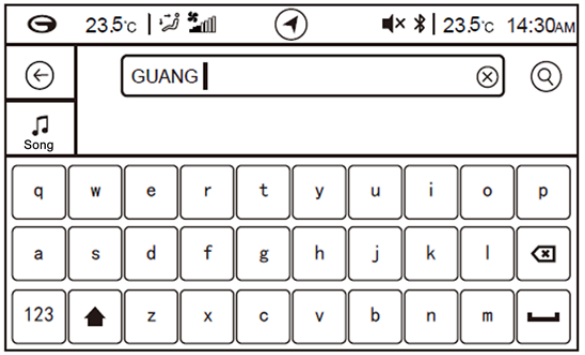


– Short press Folder to display the video list and folder list under this folder;
– Slide the scroll bar on the right side of list up and down to find a video list or folder list.



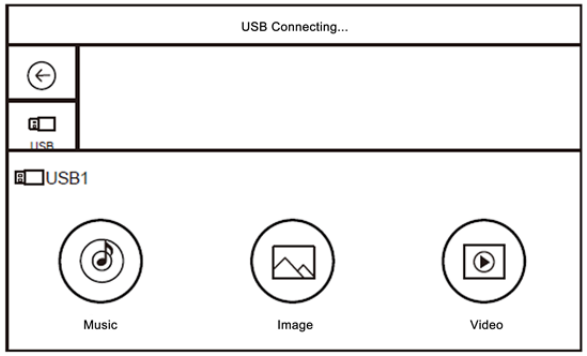
– Short press a folder under the folder list to enter the next level of file directory;
– Click ⊖ to return to the previous level of folder directory.

Video List Search

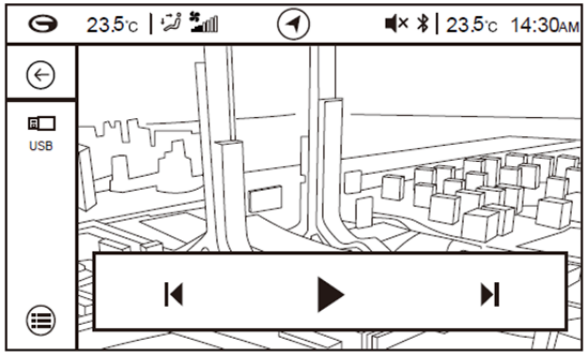


– Short press ⊙ on the top right comer to open the search keyboard, and input initials or English letters to find the video or folder;
– Short press "123" button on the left bottom of the keyboard to switch from letter mode to number mode;
– Short press ⌫ on the right side of the keyboard to delete the input contents one by one;
– Short press ⊗ in the search box to delete all input contents.

USB Image Play

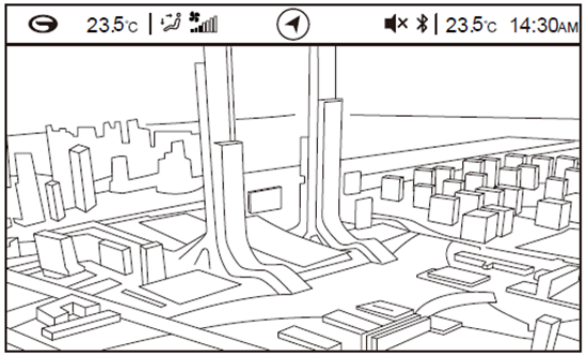


– Press "Image" button under button mode or the pop-up box appearing when the USB device is inserted to enter the image browsing interface.



Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
⏮	Play the previous image
⏭	Play the next image
▶	Play button
⏸	Pause button
☰	Enter the list

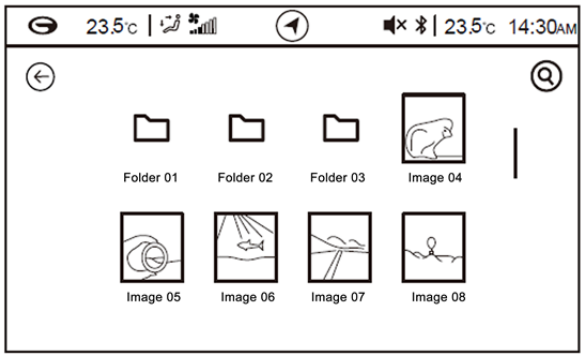


– Short press the blank area in the image play interface to enter full-screen play mode (the status bar still exists).

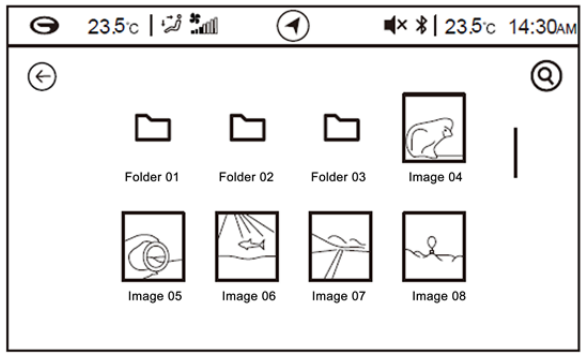
Hint

The selection of image device does not rely on music and video devices, and will not change with the music and video devices.

Image List



– Short press in the image play interface to enter the image list.

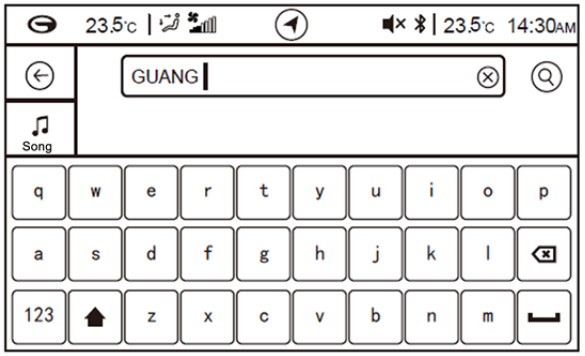


The image list is displayed in the form of thumbnail:

– Short press a folder to enter the next level of file directory;

– Short press to return to the previous level of folder directory.

Image List Search



– Short press on the top right corner to open the search keyboard, and input initials or English letters to find the image or folder;

– Short press "123" button on the left bottom of the keyboard to switch from letter mode to number mode;

– Short press on the right side of the keyboard to delete the input contents one by one;

– Short press in the search box to delete all input contents.

4.6.6 Bluetooth

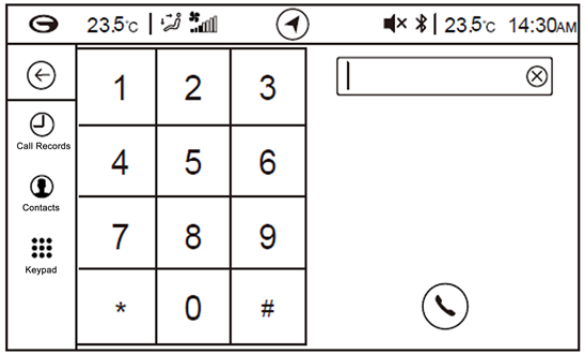
Description

Bluetooth is a short-range wireless communication technology. Without any physical connection, the head unit can exchange information within 5 m. You can use the Bluetooth of the system to establish a wireless connection with your Bluetooth phone to achieve hands-free answer.

Instructions:

- Turn on Bluetooth connection function: Turn on your phone's Bluetooth and the Bluetooth of the system unit when using the Bluetooth function, and make sure your Bluetooth phone is at a distance within 5m away from the system unit.
- The Bluetooth function of this system has passed relevant certification. If your phone in use cannot be paired to the Bluetooth of the system unit properly, or the Bluetooth functions abnormally after connection, check whether your phone meets the design requirements of the international Bluetooth standards or not.
- The Bluetooth function of this system only supports connection with one device, and generally, the Bluetooth phone also only supports connection with one device. If your phone has searched the Bluetooth of this system, but it cannot be connected, check whether your phone has been connected to any other Bluetooth device around. If so, try to cut off the Bluetooth connection to your phone, or try to power off your phone, and then re-power on it and turn on the Bluetooth connection. Meanwhile, try to cut off all the Bluetooth connection to the system, and then turn on the Bluetooth connection function of the system.
- Just like using a mobile phone to answer calls, long-time Bluetooth conversation by connecting the system to your phone can do harm to your health due to electromagnetic radiation.
- After the Bluetooth of the head unit is turned on, use your phone to search for the Bluetooth device and connect it.

Select the Bluetooth Mode



You can enter the Bluetooth main interface by the following ways:

– Short press [Bluetooth Telephone] on card mode interface or [Phone] soft button on button mode interface to enter Bluetooth mode;

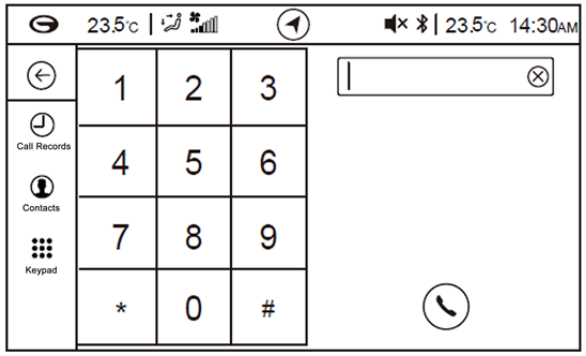
– Short press button on the panel to enter Bluetooth mode;

– In non-call mode, short press button on the left side of steering wheel to enter Bluetooth mode.

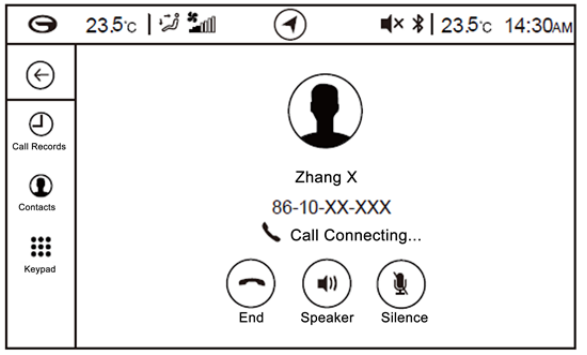
Hint

Disconnection of Bluetooth may be caused by Bluetooth signal beyond the range or signal fault of Bluetooth device. Please try to connect again.

Make a Call



– Dial the number through the dial keypad.



– If the number included in the contact list, name of the contact will be displayed with the default image;
– The number, if not included in the contact list, will be displayed with the default image;
– When the call is being connected, "call connecting" will be displayed;
– When the call is connected, the call duration will be displayed.

Buttons on the call interface can realize the following functions:

– Short press to hang up a call;

– When a call is connected, short press to switch between Hands Free and Private modes (when the call is connected, the default mode is Hands Free);

– When a call is connected, short press to mute and relieve the mute microphone;

– When the call is connected, short press to input number.

Answer a Call

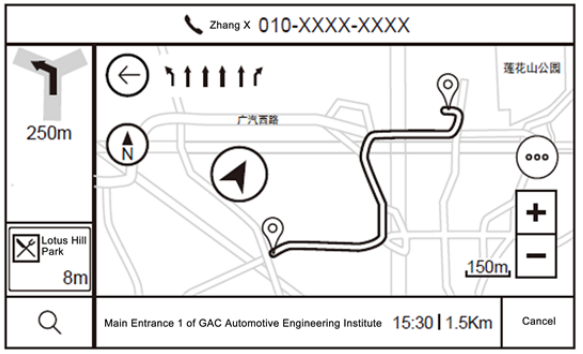
When there is an incoming call, the call interface will be displayed in full screen, the user can:

– Short press on the screen to answer the call;

– Short press on the screen to reject the call;

– Press Answer button on the steering wheel to answer the call;

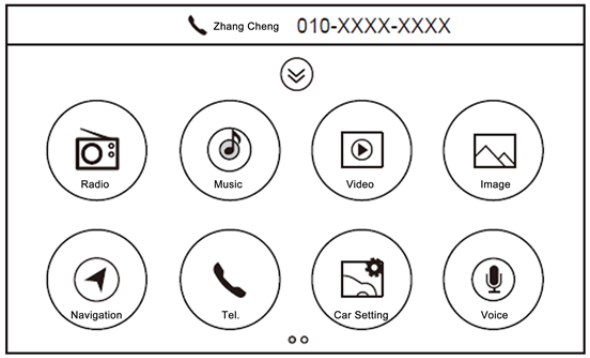
– Press Hangup button on the steering wheel to reject the call.



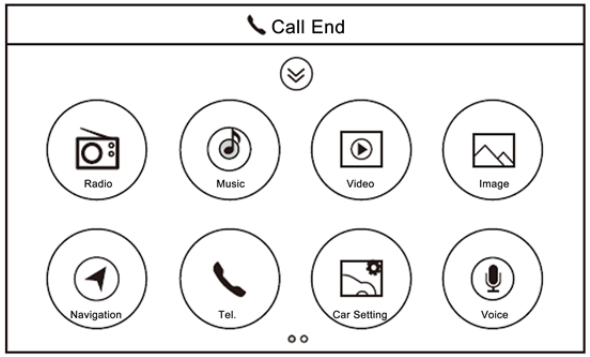
– If navigation function is used when the call comes, the incoming call interface will be display, but after the call is connected, the call state will be displayed on the status bar, and the navigation interface will be displayed continually.

Hint

If a call comes when rear camera image is displayed, the incoming call interface will not be displayed, and there is also no status display after the call is connected.

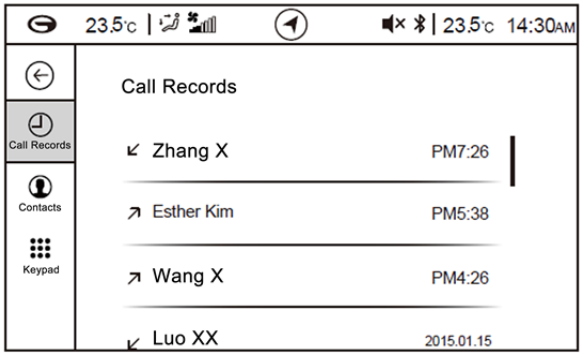


– You can switch to other interfaces except for rear camera image, and the call status will be displayed in the status bar.



– When the call is over, the status bar prompts and stays on this interface.

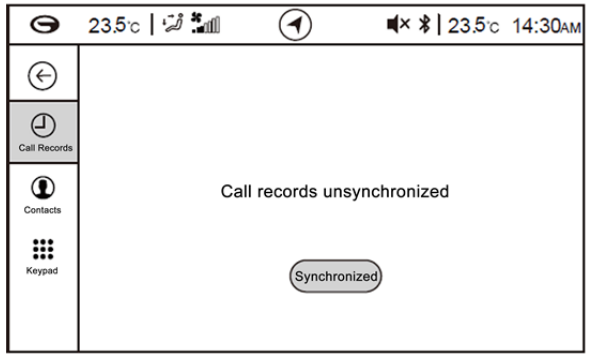
Call Records



– After the Bluetooth device is successfully connected, the system will automatically synchronize the call records;

– The call records include received calls, missed calls and dialed calls.

– Pull down the scroll bar on the right side to browse the call records.



– If the call records synchronization fails or is not completed, short press [Sync] to manually synchronize the address book.

Contacts

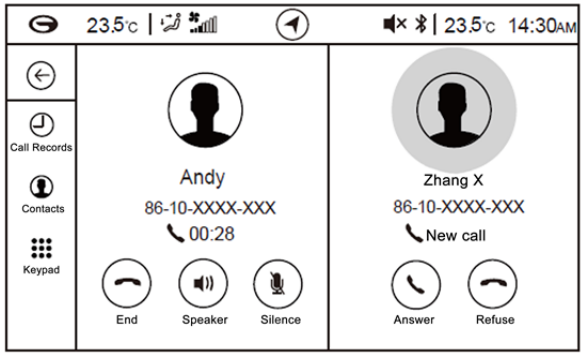
– After the Bluetooth device is successfully connected, the system will automatically synchronize the contact numbers;

– If the contact list synchronization fails or is not completed, the contact list can be synchronized manually.

– The contact list can be browsed by pulling down the scroll bar on the right side. Pointer display exists during the pulling process of contact list;

– Short press on the top right corner to open the keyboard, input initials and English letters to find the contact number.

Call Waiting

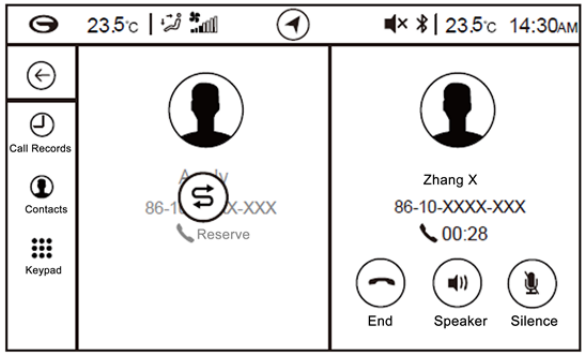


During the calling process, if a third-party call comes, the system will display the third-party call interface:

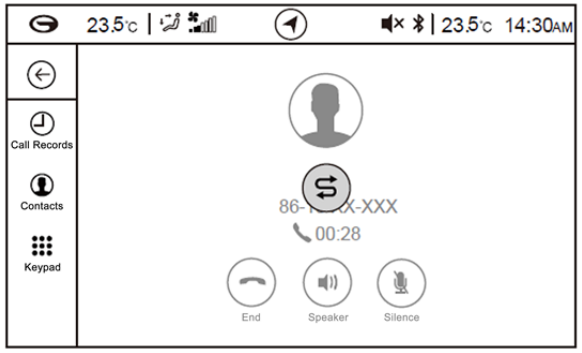
– Short press to hang up the current call and display the third-party call on full screen;

– Short press to hold the current call and answer the third-party call;

– Short press to reject the third-party call and display the current call on full screen.



– After choosing to answer the call, the current call will be at holding state, the third-party call will be at connecting state; short press ⓢ to switch the call.

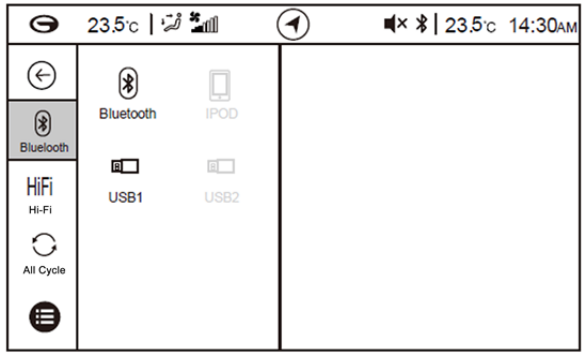


– After finishing one call, press ⓢ button for full screen display; after exiting, display the other call on full screen.

Hint

Accidental disconnection may occur due to phone model or Bluetooth signal. In such case, please try to connect again after deleting the paired device.

Bluetooth Music



– Short press ⓑ to select Bluetooth music, and play the music on device through Bluetooth.

Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
⏮	Play the previous track
⏭	Play the next track
▶	Play button
⏸	Pause button

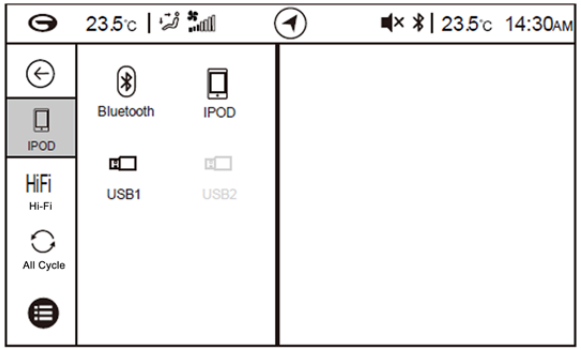
– Bluetooth music supports the display of song name and singer; it supports selection of preset sound effect; it does not support playing progress display, loop mode selection or play list.

Hint

- This function requires your phone to support. Some mobile phones may need to enter the music player mode.
- Check whether the information on the music player interface is displayed or not depends on the phone support.

4.6.7 iPod Music

iPod Music



– Short press IPOD to select iPod music and play the music on iPod.

Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
⏮	Play the previous track
⏭	Play the next track
▶	Play button
⏸	Pause button

– iPod music supports the display of song name and singer;

– Support the selection of preset sound effect;

– Support play progress bar, and display of total song duration and play time;

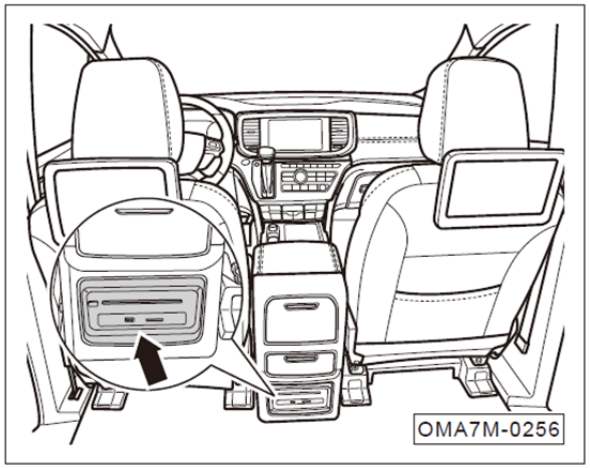
– Support play list;

– Do not support loop mode selection.

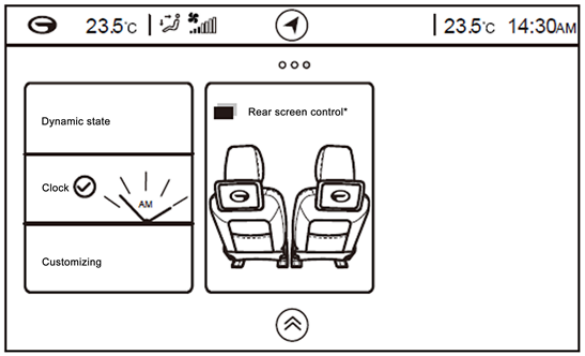
Hint

Loop mode relies on iPod.

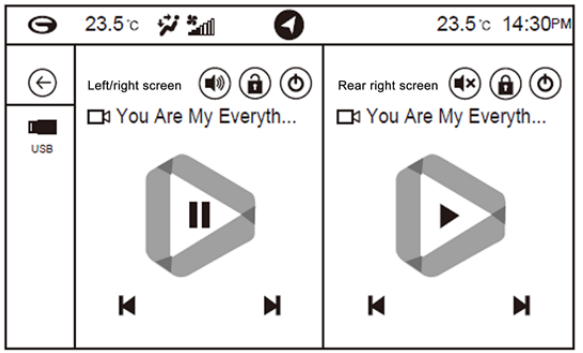
4.6.8 Interactive Control of Front and Rear Rows*



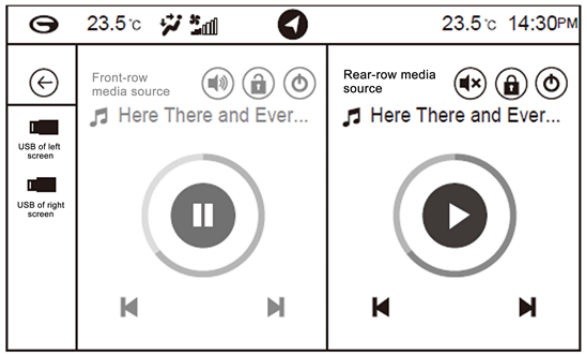
– The figure shows DVD, SD card slot and USB interface of the rear screen unit.



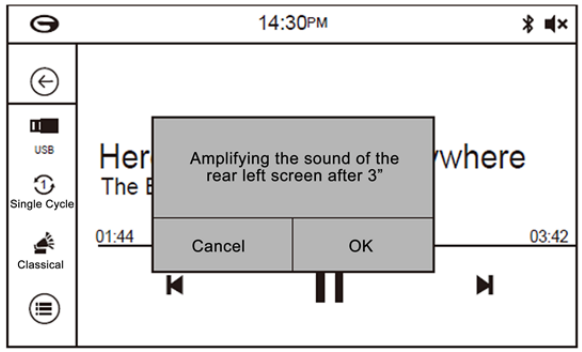
– Press "Rear screen control" card on the main interface to enter the rear screen interface.



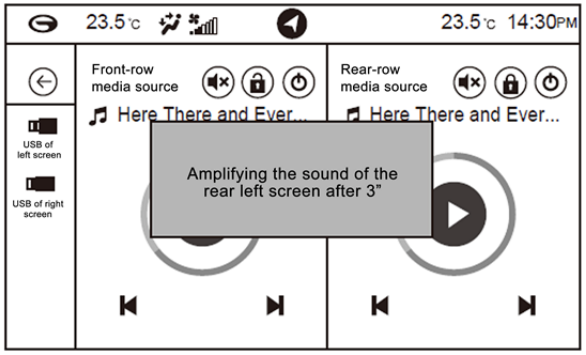
– Press button of rear left/right screen to lock and disable the rear left/right screen, and display "Screen locked by the front row" in the status bar.

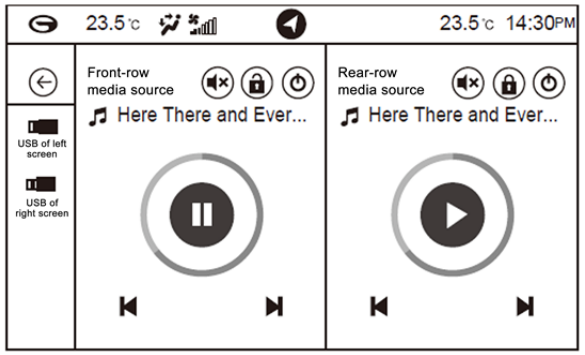


– Press ⏻ button of rear left/right screen to turn on or off the rear left/right screen. When the rear screen is turned off, the control interface in the front screen will be closed. The front screen interface and rear screen will be opened again when ⏻ button is pressed.



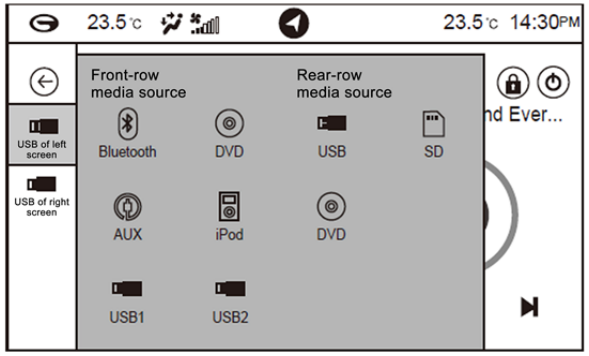
– When 🔒 button of rear left/right screen is pressed, sound of the rear left/right screen can be amplified via speakers of the car, and a pop-up box appears in corresponding rear screen. The request will be confirmed or canceled by pressing [OK] or [Cancel] soft button; and the system will accept this request after 3s if there is no operation.





Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
⏮	Play the previous track
⏭	Play the next track
▶	Play button
⏸	Pause button



Press button on the left to select the audio source for the rear left/right screen.

Hint

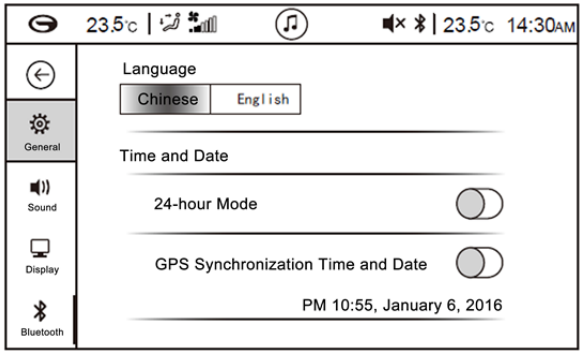
- In addition to selection of front-row media source (such as USB, iPod and Bluetooth audio), the front heat unit can also select the rear-row media source (such as SD, USB, iPod and Bluetooth audio or video). However, it cannot read iPod of the rear head unit.
- During operation of the rear screen, USB audio, video and image media source of the front row can be selected, but iPod media source of the front row cannot.

4.6.9 System Setting

You can enter the system setup interface by the following ways:

– Short press "Setting" button on the button mode interface to enter the system setting interface;

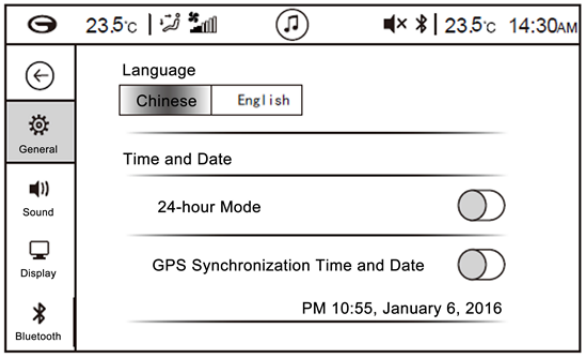
– Short press SET button on the control panel to enter the system setting interface.



– On the system setting interface, it can make setting on General, Sound, Display, Bluetooth and Factory Reset.

– Short press the soft button on left side to enter the corresponding setting interface.

General Setting



Language, time and date, version, and vehicle information can be set.

Language

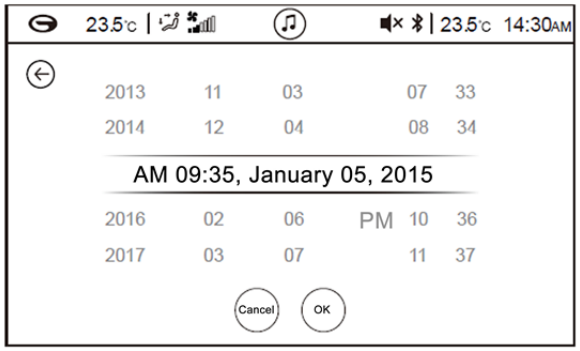
– Language setting options: Chinese or English.

Time and Date

– 24-hour system is on, and the system time will be calculated by 24 hours;

– GPS time and date is on, GPS time and date will be automatically synchronized.

Manual Setting of Time and Date

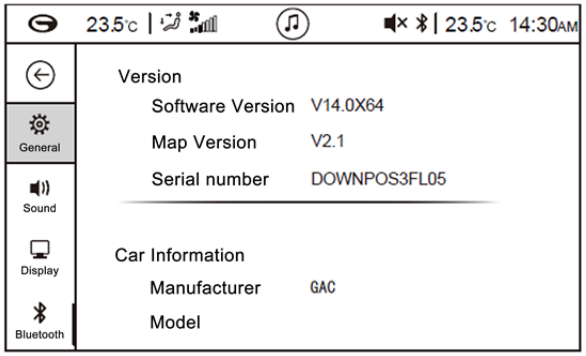


– Short press "Setting" soft button on the right side of Time and Date to enter manual setting interface.

– Scroll year/month/date/hour/minute to adjust the date and time, and short press "OK" soft button to save it.

Hint

When GPS time and date synchronizing function is enabled, manual setting of time and date cannot be performed. If manual setting is required, GPS time and date synchronizing function shall be disabled*.



Version Information

– Display system software version;

– Display map version*;

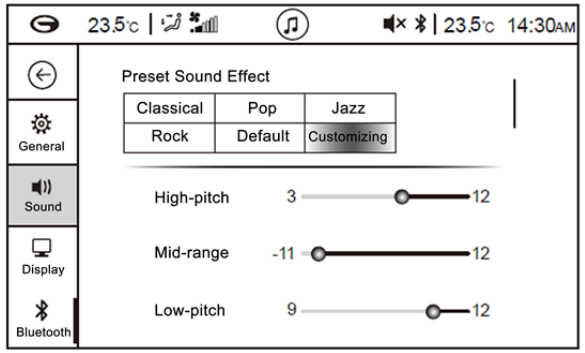
– Display serial number.

Car Information

For information exchange with interconnection with mobile phone via CarPlay:

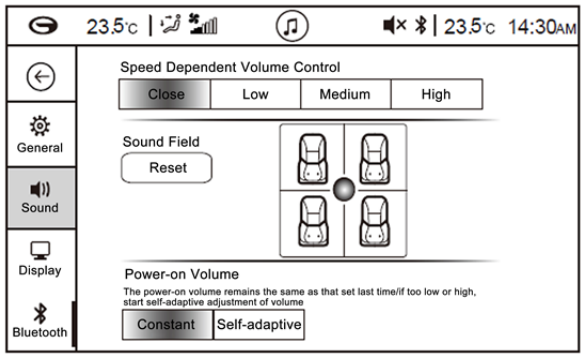
– Display manufacturer
– Display model;
– Display serial number;
– Display firmware version;
– Display hardware version;
– Display current language;
– Display supported language.

Sound Setting



Preset Sound Effect

– Select preset sound effect: classics, popular, jazz, rock, default* (Hi-Fi*), custom, which correspond to different high, middle and low pitch combinations respectively;
– Select custom to adjust the high, mid and low pitches manually.
– After factory reset, "Custom" is in default.



Speed Dependent Volume Control

– Select Speed dependent volume control: off, low, mid, high; adjust the volume change with increase or decrease of speed.
– After factory reset, "Off" is in default.

Sound Field

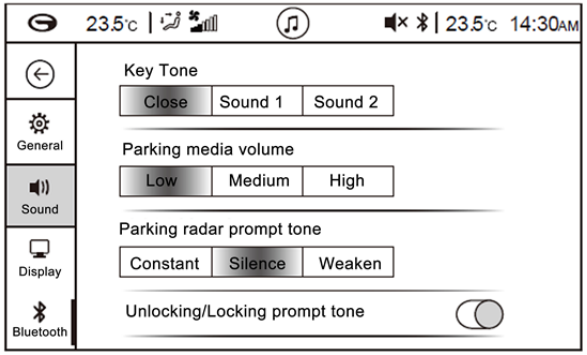
– Adjust the sound field position via the touch screen.
– Short press "Reset" to restore the default values for reset.
– After factory reset, central position is in default.

Power-on Volume

– Constant: The power-on volume remains the same as that before the last power-off.

– Adaptive: If the volume is lower than 5 or higher than 19 before last power-off, the system will automatically return to the default volume; if the volume is between 5 and 19, the system will maintain that volume.

– After factory reset, "Constant" is in default.



Button Tone

– Adjust the button tone of touch screen with the options of: Close, Tone 1, and Tone 2.

– After factory reset, "Close" is in default.

Parking Media Volume

– Constant: The radar will remain constant when parking.

– Mute: The radar will be mute when reversing.

– After factory reset, "Mute" is in default.

Caution

- When the head unit works normally and the parking media volume is set as Mute, if the reverse gear is engaged, the head unit is mute; when the parking media volume is set as Constant, if the reverse gear is engaged, the head unit can normally play the media audio source and manually adjust the media volume via the volume control knob or the button on the steering wheel.
- When the head unit is at screensaver mode and the parking media volume is set as "Constant" or "Mute", the head unit media source will maintain mute.

VR Prompt Tone

– Adjust the button tone of touch screen with the options of: simple and detailed.

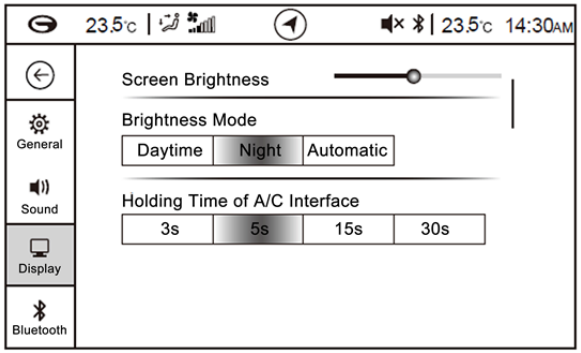
Unlocking/Locking Prompt Tone

– On: There will be prompt when the car is unlocked/locked;

– Off: There will be no prompt when the car is unlocked/locked.

– After factory reset, "Mute" is in default.

Display Setting



Screen Brightness

– It can be adjusted by dragging the progress bar.

Brightness Mode

– Day mode: day mode brightness in default;

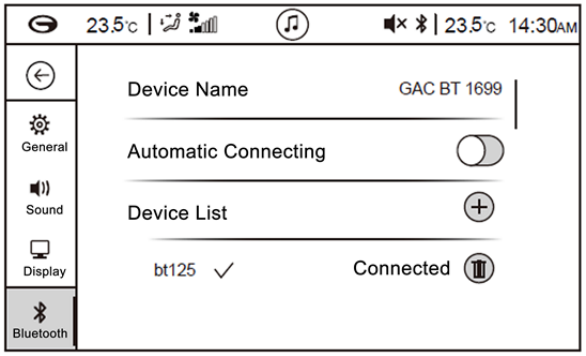
– Night mode: night mode brightness in default;

– Auto mode: switch between day and night modes according to the clearance lamp.

Holding Time of A/C Interface

– The holding time of A/C interface without operation can be selected as 3s, 5s, 15s or 30s.

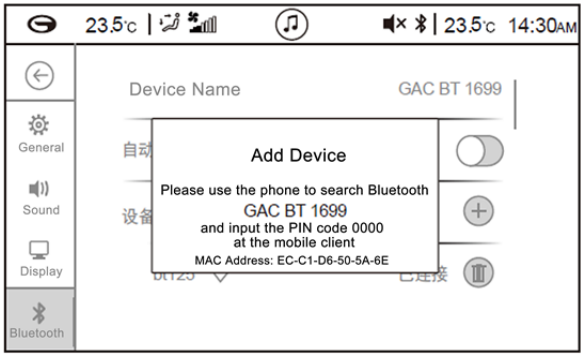
Bluetooth Setting



Automatic Connecting

– On: Paired devices in the device list will be automatically connected after entering the connecting scope;

– Off: Paired devices in the device list will not be automatically connected after entering the connecting scope.

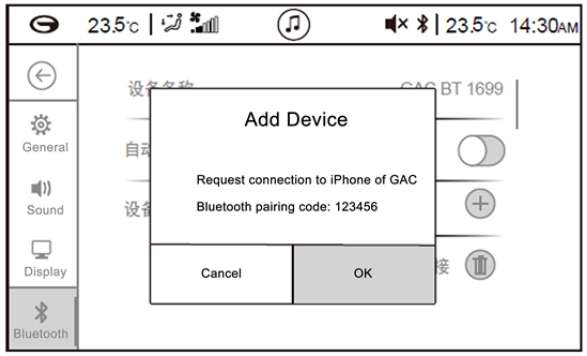


Device List

– Short press ⊕ to make Bluetooth of the head unit discoverable.

Hint

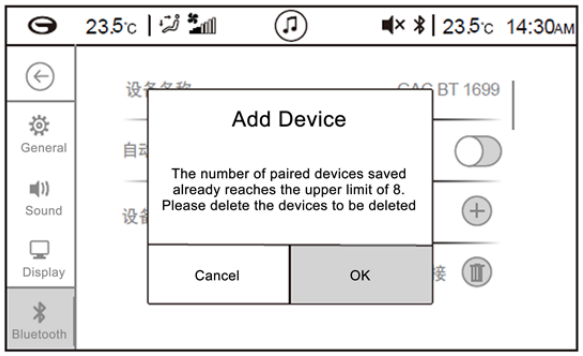
Whether to input the PIN code or not shall be judged according to different phone models.



– Search "GACBT1669" at mobile terminal, short press to start pairing. A confirmation box will pop up after the head unit receives the pairing request.

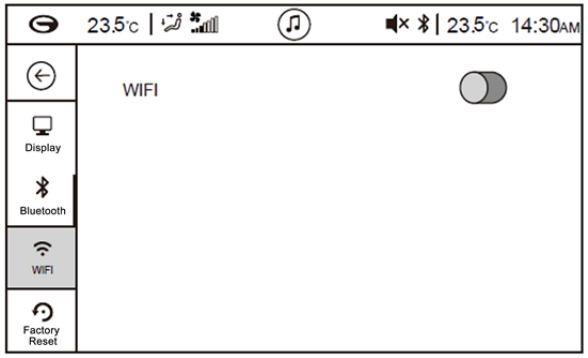
– Short press "OK" to start pairing; short press "Cancel" to end pairing. After successfully connected, the device will be displayed in the device list.

– The Paired Bluetooth devices will be listed in the device lift, and if a device is successfully connected, it will be displayed as "Connected".

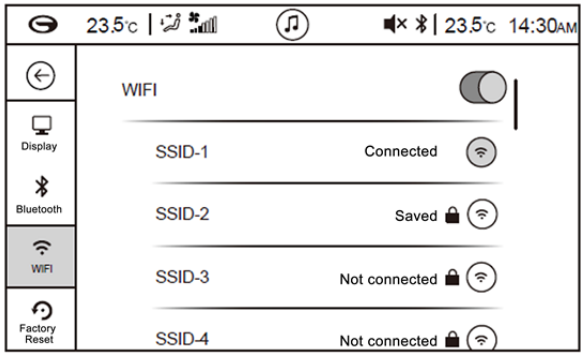


– Click 🗑 on the right side of a device to delete the paired device. Up to 8 paired devices can be stored, when the 9th device is trying to connect the head unit, the system will prompt the user to delete the device in the paired list.

WIFI Setting*

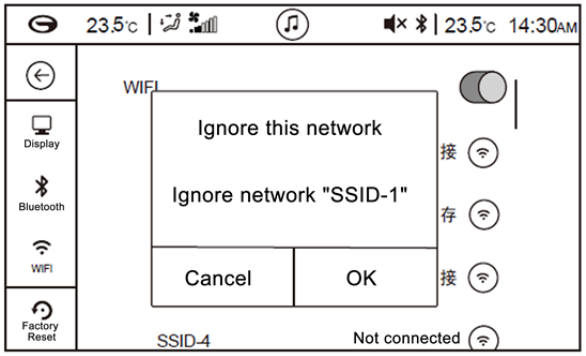


– Turn on the WiFi switch to search the surrounding hot spots. After successful connection of a selected hot spot, the wireless network can be connected.



– After successful connection, "Connected" and signal intensity will be displayed on the right side of this network. The secret key mark will be displayed for encrypted network.

– When choosing a network with secret key, enter password to finish the connection.



– Click [OK] to delete the network from the network list.

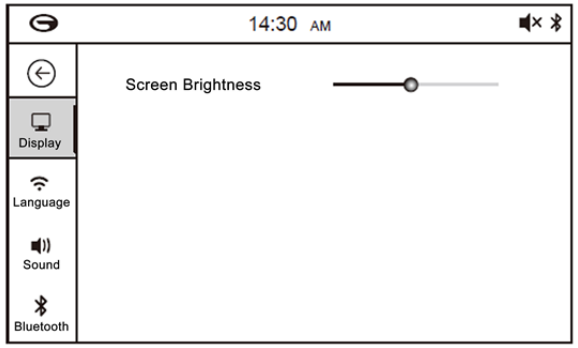
Caution

WiFi network is only used for searching points of interest on voice cloud and realtime traffic conditions; it has no other application. In case of WiFi disconnection, ignore this network and try to connect it again.

Factory Reset

– By clicking [Reset] soft button on the upper right corner of the factory reset interface, the system will pop up a dialog box. Click [OK] to restore the system setting as the factory settings.

4.6.10 Rear Screen System Setting*



– Short press "Setting" card of screen to enter the setting interface of rear screen system; short press the soft button on the left side to enter corresponding setting interface and make settings on Brightness, Language, Sound, Bluetooth, General and Factory Reset.

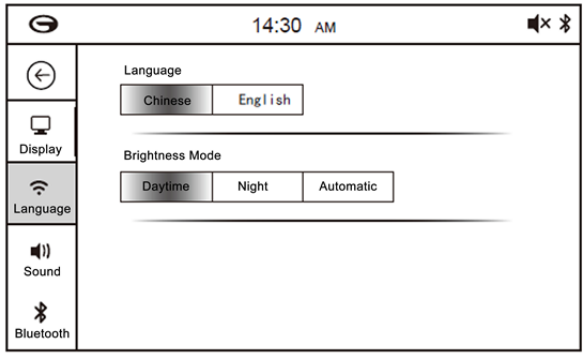
Brightness

– Move the slider to set the screen brightness separately.

Brightness Mode

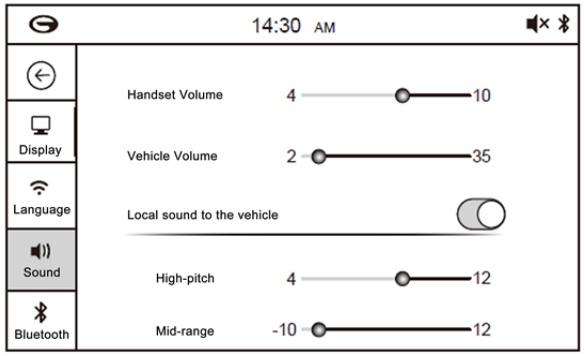
– Day, night and auto modes.

Language



– Language setting options: Chinese or English.

Sound

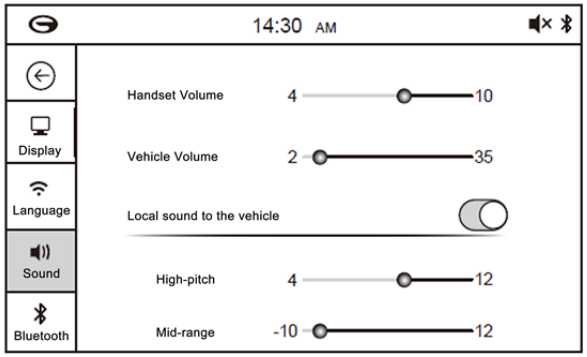


Headset Volume

– Move the slider to adjust volume of each headset.

Vehicle Volume

– When "Local sound to the vehicle" is enabled, move the slider to adjust speaker volume of the car.

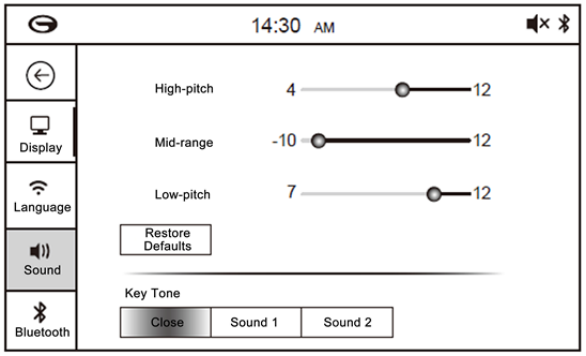


Local sound to the vehicle

– Move the slider to enable or disable the function of pushing headset sound to speakers of the car.

Hint

Upon receipt of the pushing request, the rear screen system will accept the request after 3s in default if there is no operation; while if it refuses the request, the rear screen sound will still be played in the headset.



Sound Effect

– When "Local sound to the vehicle" is enabled, the rear screen system can adjust sound effect of the car by setting "High pitch", "Mid range" and "Low pitch".

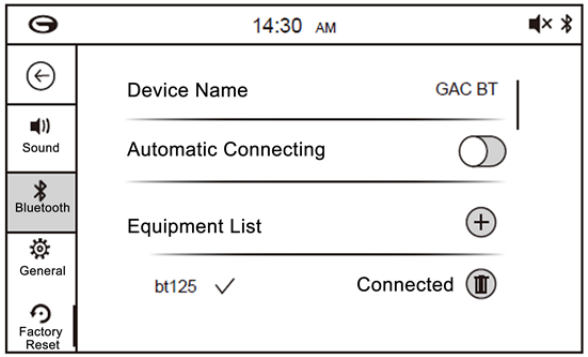
– Short press [Restore Defaults] to reset sound effect setting.

Button Tone

– Short press [Tone 1] or [Tone 2] to set the button tone of left/right screen.

– Short press [Off] to turn off the button tone of left/right screen.

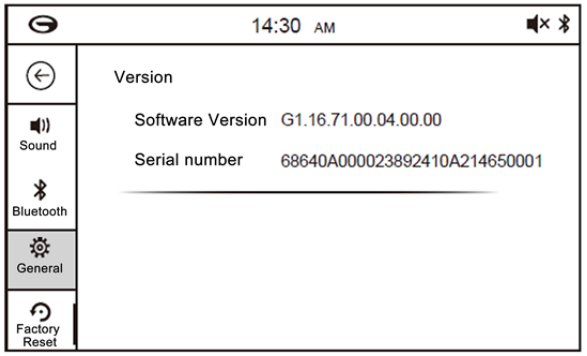
Bluetooth



– The left/right screen can search for surrounding Bluetooth headsets for pairing. After connection, content played in the corresponding rear screen can be heard.

– The connection method of Bluetooth headset for the rear screen is the same as that for the front screen. => Refer to Page 217

General

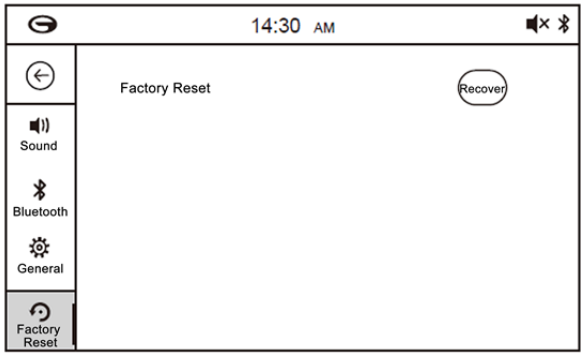


Car Information

– Display software version;

– Display serial number.

Factory Reset



– By clicking [Reset] soft button on the upper right corner of the factory reset interface, the system will pop up a dialog box. Click [OK] to restore the system setting as the factory settings.

4.6.11 Car Setting

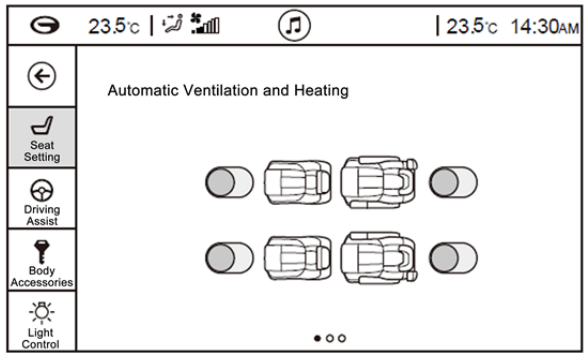
Short press "Car Setting" on button mode interface to enter car setting interface, and slide the interfaces on car setting interface leftward/rightward/upward/ downward to switch the setting interfaces.

Caution

Some car setting functions will only be valid when the Start switch is at "ON" position, so that the Start switch shall be guaranteed to be at "ON" position when setting the vehicle.

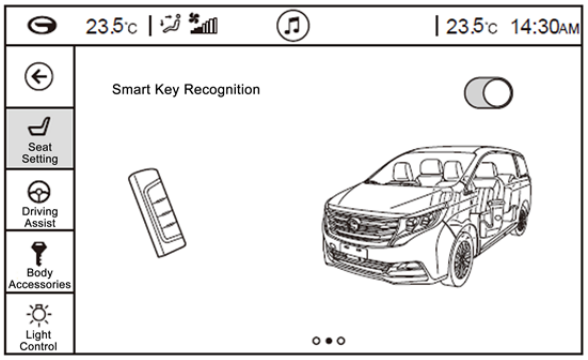
Some car setting functions may differ due to different vehicle configurations, please refer to the configuration of actual vehicle.

Seat Setting*



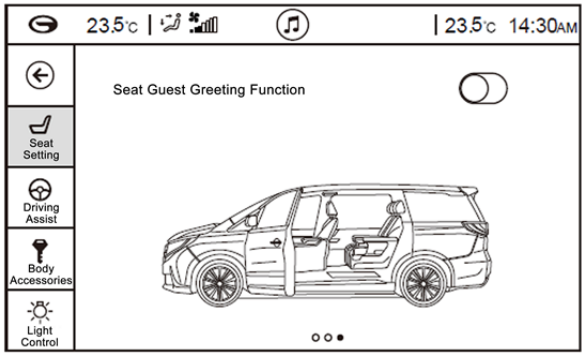
Automatic Ventilation and Heating*

– Short press to enable or disable the function.



Smart Key Recognition*

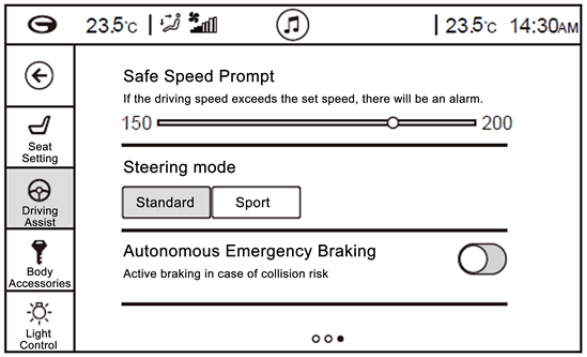
– Short press to enable or disable the function.



Seat Guest Greeting Function*

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Driving Assist



Safe Speed Prompt

– Move the cursor left and right to set the speed of safe speed prompt at the range of 0~200km/h.

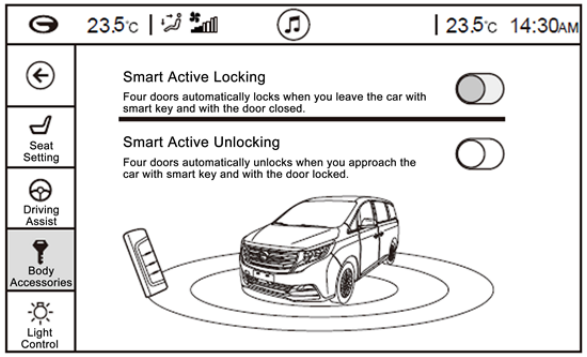
Steering Mode

– Short press the soft button to set as "Standard" and "Sport" mode. For the sake of safety, the steering mode is not allowed to be set during driving.

Autonomous Emergency Braking*

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Body Accessories


23.5℃ | 23.5℃ 14:30AM
Smart Active Locking
Four doors automatically locks when you leave the car with smart key and with the door closed.
Smart Active Unlocking
Four doors automatically unlocks when you approach the car with smart key and with the door locked.
Seat Setting
Driving Assist
Body Accessories
Light Control

Smart Active Locking*

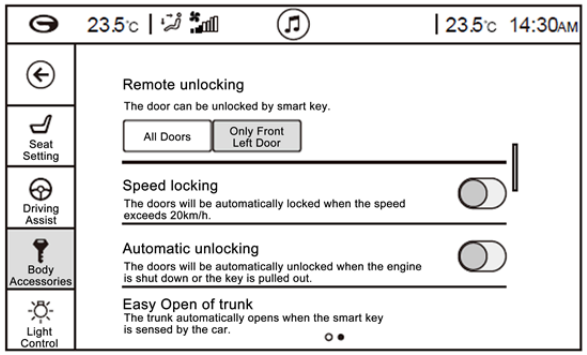
– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Smart Active Unlocking*

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Hint

In order to protect the system, smart active locking and unlocking can only be set 6 times during one power-on cycle. The system will ban the resetting after it has been tried more than 6 times. The function can be set by re-powering after power-off.


23.5℃
23.5℃ 14:30AM
Seat Setting
Driving Assist
Body Accessories
Light Control
Remote unlocking
The door can be unlocked by smart key.
All Doors
Only Front Left Door
Speed locking
The doors will be automatically locked when the speed exceeds 20km/h.
Automatic unlocking
The doors will be automatically unlocked when the engine is shut down or the key is pulled out.
Easy Open of trunk
The trunk automatically opens when the smart key is sensed by the car.

Remote Unlocking

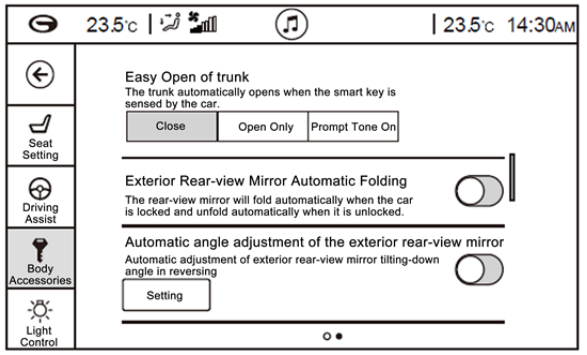
– Short press the soft button to set as "All Doors" or "Only Front Left Door".

Vehicle Speed Locking

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Automatic Unlocking

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

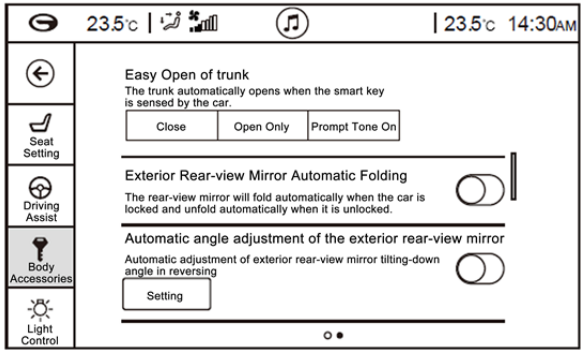

23.5℃
23.5℃ 14:30AM
Seat Setting
Driving Assist
Body Accessories
Light Control
Easy Open of trunk
The trunk automatically opens when the smart key is sensed by the car.
Close
Open Only
Prompt Tone On
Exterior Rear-view Mirror Automatic Folding
The rear-view mirror will fold automatically when the car is locked and unfold automatically when it is unlocked.
Automatic angle adjustment of the exterior rear-view mirror
Automatic adjustment of exterior rear-view mirror tilting-down angle in reversing
Setting

Easy Open of Trunk*

– Short press the soft button to set as "Close", "Open Only", or "Prompt Tone On".

Hint

In order to protect the system, easy open of trunk can only be set 6 times during one power-on cycle. The system will ban the resetting after it has been tried more than 6 times. The function can be set by re-powering after power-off.

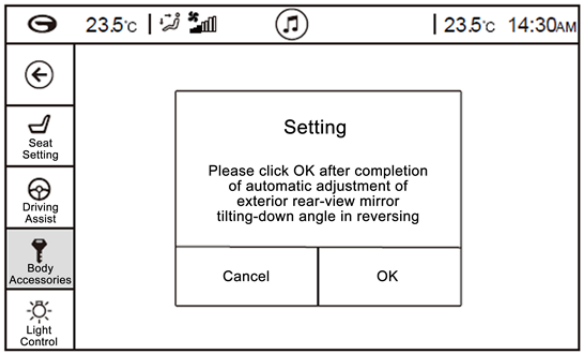

23.5℃ | 23.5℃ 14:30AM
Seat Setting
Driving Assist
Body Accessories
Light Control
Easy Open of trunk
The trunk automatically opens when the smart key is sensed by the car.
Close
Open Only
Prompt Tone On
Exterior Rear-view Mirror Automatic Folding
The rear-view mirror will fold automatically when the car is locked and unfold automatically when it is unlocked.
Automatic angle adjustment of the exterior rear-view mirror
Automatic adjustment of exterior rear-view mirror tilting-down angle in reversing
Setting

Exterior Rear-view Mirror Automatic Folding*

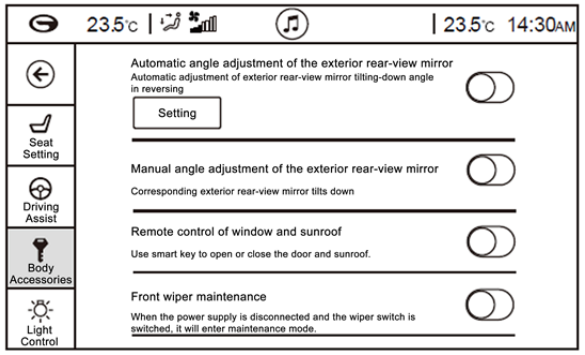
– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Automatic Angle Adjustment of Exterior Rear-View Mirror*

– Short press to enable or disable the function.



– Short press "Setting" soft button to set the automatic adjustment of exterior rear- view mirror angle.


23.5℃ | 23.5℃ 14:30AM
Seat Setting
Driving Assist
Body Accessories
Light Control
Automatic angle adjustment of the exterior rear-view mirror
Automatic adjustment of exterior rear-view mirror tilting-down angle in reversing
Setting
Manual angle adjustment of the exterior rear-view mirror
Corresponding exterior rear-view mirror tilts down
Remote control of window and sunroof
Use smart key to open or close the door and sunroof.
Front wiper maintenance
When the power supply is disconnected and the wiper switch is switched, it will enter maintenance mode.

Manual Angle Adjustment of Exterior Rear-View Mirror*

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

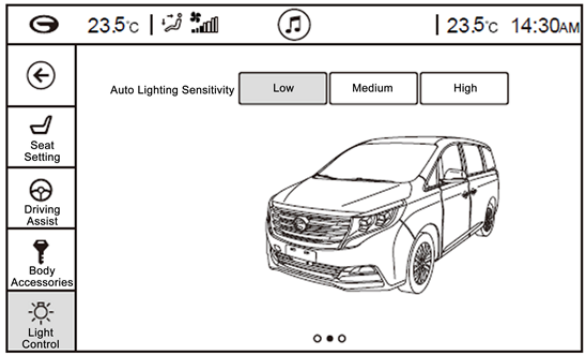
Remote Control of Window and Sunroof

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Front Wiper Maintenance

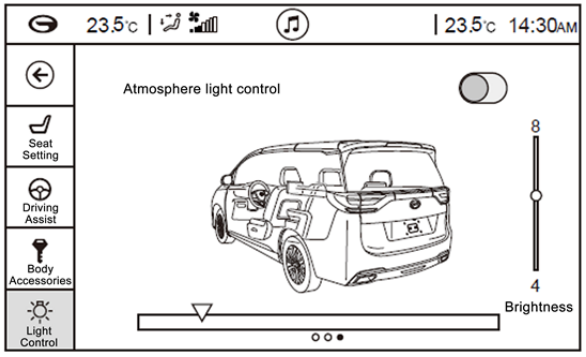
– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Light Control



Auto Lighting Sensitivity*

– Short press the soft button to set as "low", "medium" and "high".



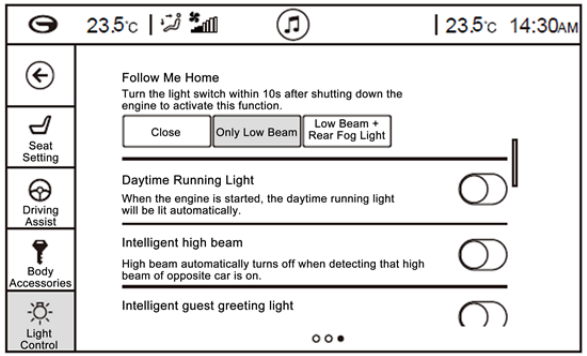
Atmosphere Light Control*

When the position light is on:

– Short press to enable or disable the function;

– Move the color cursor left and right to adjust the color of atmosphere light;

– Move the color cursor up and down to adjust the brightness of atmosphere light.


23.5℃
23.5℃ 14:30AM
Seat Setting
Driving Assist
Body Accessories
Light Control
Follow Me Home
Turn the light switch within 10s after shutting down the engine to activate this function.
Close
Only Low Beam
Low Beam + Rear Fog Light
Daytime Running Light
When the engine is started, the daytime running light will be lit automatically.
Intelligent high beam
High beam automatically turns off when detecting that high beam of opposite car is on.
Intelligent guest greeting light

Follow Me Home

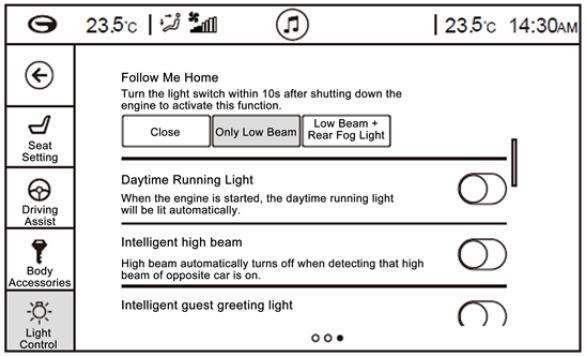
– Short press the soft button to set as "OFF", "low beam", "low beam + rear fog".

Daytime Running Light

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Intelligent High Beam*

– Short press to enable or disable the function.


23.5℃ | 23.5℃ 14:30AM
Seat Setting
Driving Assist
Body Accessories
Light Control
Follow Me Home
Turn the light switch within 10s after shutting down the engine to activate this function.
Close
Only Low Beam
Low Beam + Rear Fog Light
Daytime Running Light
When the engine is started, the daytime running light will be lit automatically.
Intelligent high beam
High beam automatically turns off when detecting that high beam of opposite car is on.
Intelligent guest greeting light

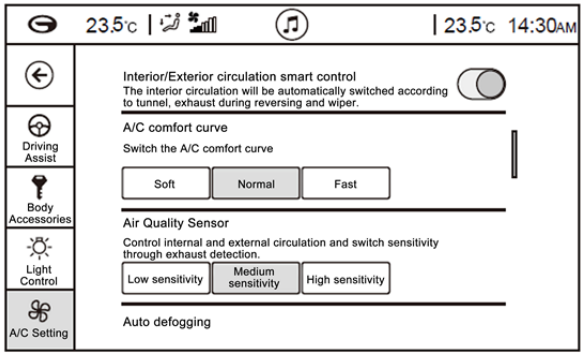
Intelligent Guest Greeting Light*

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

Hint

In order to protect the system, the intelligent guest greeting can only be set 6 times during one power-on cycle. The system will ban the resetting after it has been retried more than 6 times. The function can be set by re-powering after power-off.

A/C Setting



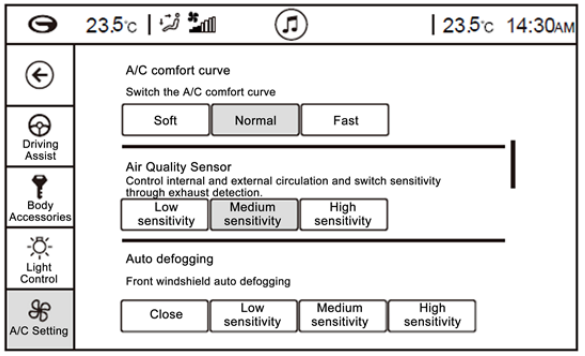
Interior/Exterior Circulation Smart Control

– Short press to enable or disable the function.

– The interior and exterior air flap will be controlled automatically according to the tunnel, reversing exhaust, wiper action, etc. when the function is enabled and the A/C is in auto control mode.

A/C Comfort Curve

– Short press the soft button to set as "soft", "normal" and "fast".



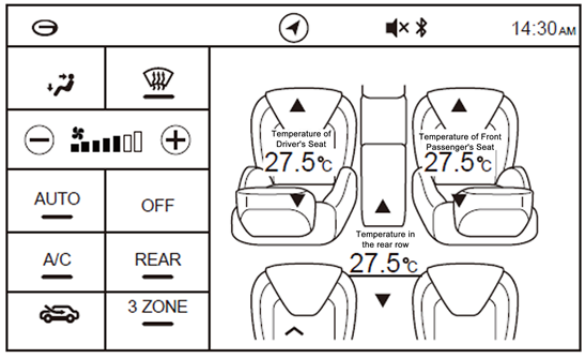
Air Quality Sensor*

– Short press the soft button to set as "low sensitivity", "medium sensitivity" and "high sensitivity".

Auto Defogging*

– Short press the soft button to set as "OFF", "low sensitivity", "medium sensitivity" and "high sensitivity".

A/C Control



Short press on the status bar to enter A/C control interface:

: Switch between blowing modes.

: Turn on/off front defrosting.

: Adjust the air volume.

AUTO: Turn on/off the auto mode.

OFF: Turn off A/C.

A/C: Turn on/off A/C.

REAR: Turn on/off rear-row A/C.

: Switch the circulation mode (interior/exterior circulation).

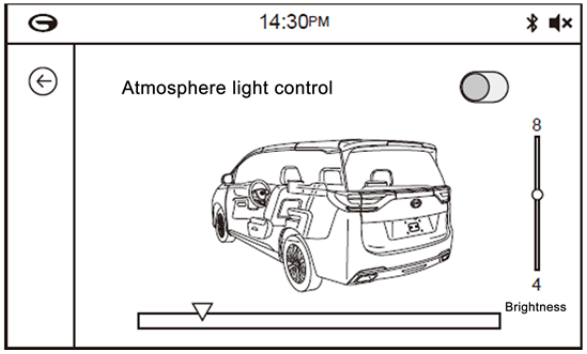
3 ZONE: Turn on/off 3Zone A/C.

▲/▼: Increase/decrease the temperature of driver seat, front passenger seat and rear row by zone.

Caution
Refer to detailed description provided in A/C system for A/C display and operation logic.

4.6.12 Rear Screen Car Setting*

Atmosphere Light*



Click "Atmosphere light" card on the rear screen to enter the setting interface of atmosphere light:

– Move the slider to enable or disable the atmosphere light function;

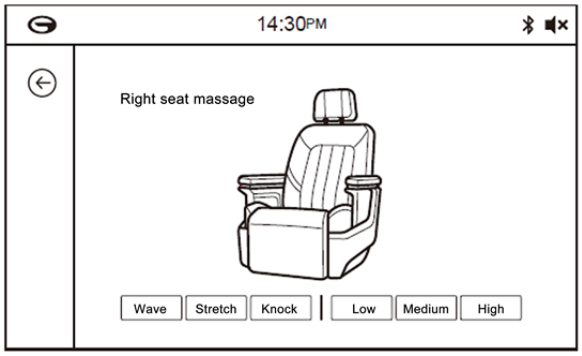
– Select the color of atmosphere light;

– Adjust the brightness of atmosphere light.

Hint

The rear/front atmosphere light adjustment information is synchronized.

Seat Massage*

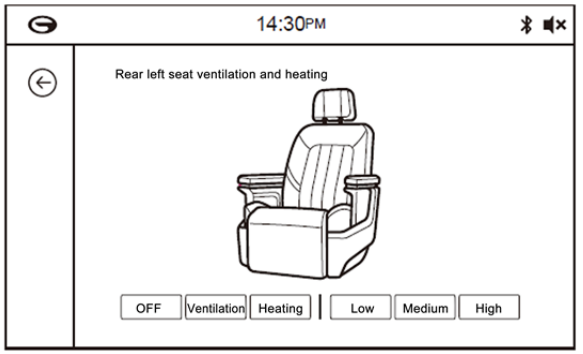


When the seat massage function is enabled, click "Seat massage" card on the rear screen to enter the setting interface of seat massage:

– Set the mode and force of left/right seat massage in respective interface.

– Short press [Wave], [Stretch] or [Knock] to select the massage mode, and short press [Low], [Medium] or [High] to select the massage force.

Seat Ventilation and Heating*

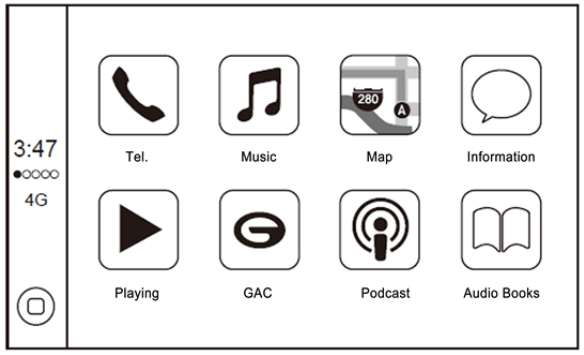


Click "Ventilation and heating" card on the rear screen to enter the setting interface of seat ventilation and heating:

– Short press [OFF], [Ventilation] or [Heating] to enable/disable seat ventilation or heating.

– When seat ventilation or heating is enabled. Short press [Low], [Medium] or [High] to select the seat ventilation or heating intensity.

4.6.13 CarPlay*

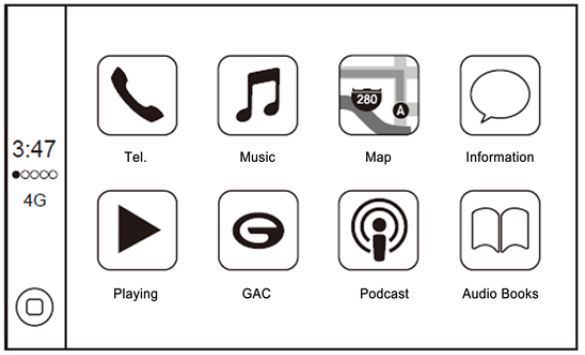


– Use a USB wire to connect a phone to the USB interface of the head unit. After connection, the system will automatically turn to the main interface of CarPlay, and the CarPlay icon on the system interface will be highlighted.

Caution

- In case of disconnection from CarPlay interface, enter CarPlay interface at the next connection; while in case of disconnection from the system interface, enter the system interface at the next connection. In case of disconnection while CarPlay music play, the system will be mute.
- Only several configurations supports Carplay. For details of relevant connection description and supported phone models, please visit the official website of Apple Carplay.
- When CarPlay is used, please make sure that CarPlay function under iPhone settings/general/access restriction is enabled, or the iPhone can only be used as an iPod and AppleCarPlay cannot be used.
- Please use the original iPhone data wire, or the connection may fail.

Main Interface of CarPlay

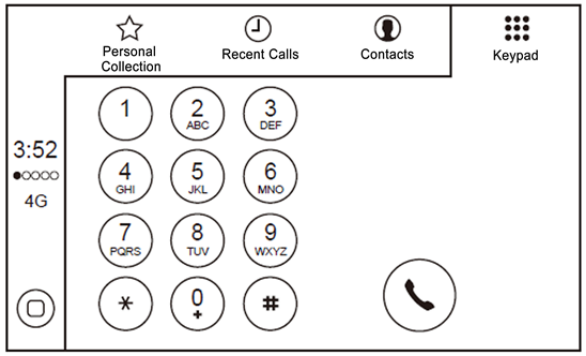


– Time and signal status of the phone are displayed on the main interface of CarPlay;

– The main interface contains CarPlay supported by phone;

– Short press [GAC] to return to the system interface.

Call



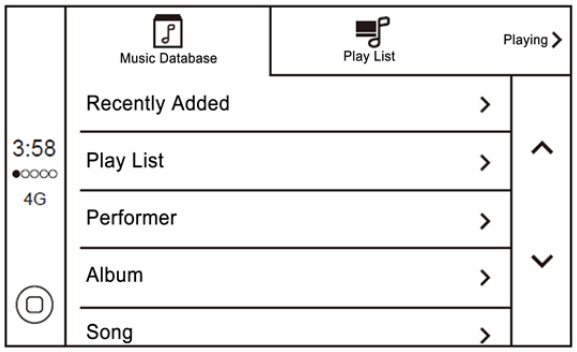
– Short press [Call] on the main interface to start Siri voice assistant and initiate a call by voice;

– After the voice operation, enter the call interface to manually dial a number or check the contact and call records.

Hint

The operation of the call interface is the same as iPhone.

Music



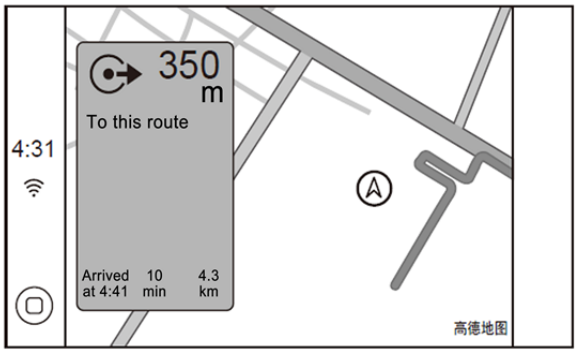
– Short press [Music] to enter the music interface and select a list to play music.

– Short press [Playing] on the upper right of the music interface to enter the music interface.

Hint

The operation of the music interface is the same as iPhone.

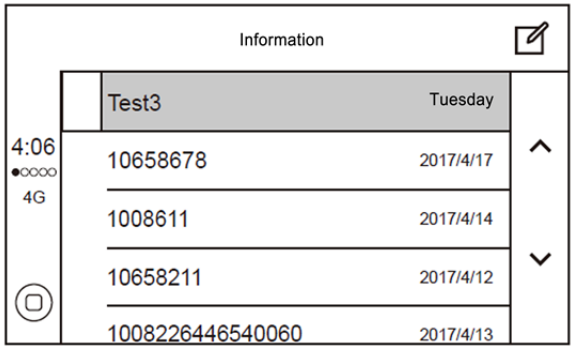
Map



– Short press [Map] on the main interface to enter the map interface, see the map and find the destination.

– Or, input via Siri voice assistant the destination for navigation.

Information



– Information in the phone can be checked via Carplay. Short press [Information] on the main interface to enter the information interface. Start Siri voice assistant first to read the received information by voice.

– Short press on the upper right of the information interface to send a new message to a contact selected via Siri voice.

Podcast and Audio Books

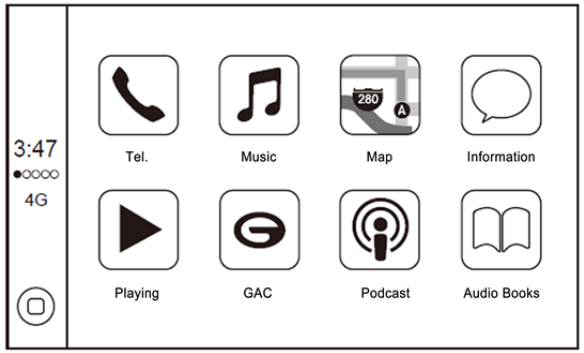
– Short press [Podcast] or [Audio Books] on the main interface to enter the podcast or audio book interface.

– Short press [Playing] on the upper right of the podcast or audio book interface to enter the play interface of podcast or audio book.

Hint

The operation of the podcast or audio book interface is the same as iPhone.

Other Mobile Phone Application



– If an App verified by CarPlay has been installed in iPhone, CarPlay interface will automatically display that App and can use that App by short pressing the corresponding soft button on the main interface to enter corresponding software interface.

Hint

The operation of App verified by CarPlay is the same as iPhone.

4.6.14 Precautions for Product Use

⚠ Warning

- **When navigation system is used for route navigation, please drive according to the actual traffic rules. If the driver only follows the route navigation of the navigation system when driving, sometimes he may break traffic rules or even cause traffic accident.**
- **During the driving process, the driver shall check the images within the shortest possible time. Watching the image for a too long time may cause traffic accident.**
- **During the driving process, the driver shall not execute address login, facility search or other operations, which must be operated after parking. Inattention to observe the front situations may cause traffic accident.**
- **Do not privately disassemble or transform this product, which may cause traffic accident, fire or electric shock, etc.**

⚠ Warning

- **It should be noted that water or other foreign matters shall not intrude into the product, which may cause smoking, fire, failure, etc. In case that smoking or other abnormal conditions occur due to foreign matter intrusion or water soaking, immediately stop using, and contact your GAC MOTOR dealer as soon as possible. Any continued use may cause failure.**
- **Do not use at failure state, including no image display or no sound, which may cause accident, fire, electric shock, critical failure, etc.**
- **Turn off the touch screen before wiping, for which soft dry cloth shall be used. Do not use coarse cleaning cloth, chemical cleaning cloth or organic reagent (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.), which will damage or deteriorate the panel.**

⚠ Warning

- **During a thunderstorm, do not touch antenna or other circuits, which may cause electric shock due to lightning stroke.**
- **Do not operate this product in an area where parking is prohibited, which may cause traffic accident.**

Caution

- Please drive according to the traffic conditions. During the navigation process, the driver may drive the car into an area of no entry due to change of rules.
- During the driving process, the volume shall be adjusted in such a manner that the driver can hear the conditions outside the car. If the volume is too high and the driver cannot hear the conditions outside the car, accident may occur.

4.6.15 Formats Supported by the AUDIO System

Format of USB Disk

Supported Format	Supported Capacity
FAT32, NTFS	Up to 32GB

Image Format

Format			
PNG	JPG	JPEG	BMP

Note: 1) Maximum resolution supported: 4000 x 2000.

Audio Format

Code	Container/Extension
MPEG-4 AAC LC	.3gp, .m4a, .aac, .mp4
MPEG-4 HE AAC	.3gp, .m4a, .aac, .mp4
MPEG-4 HE AAC v2	.3gp, .m4a, .aac, .mp4
MP3	.mp3
WMA2/7/8/9/9.1/9.2	.wma, .asf
PCM/WAVE	.wav
APE	.ape
FLAC	.flac

Video Format

Container	Video Code	Audio Code	Extension
AVI	MPEG-2 MP	MP3, AAC LC, AAC+, AAC+ v2	avi
	MPEG-4 SP/ASP		
	H.264 HP/MP/BP		
MPEG	MPEG-2 MP	MP3	mpeg
WMV	WMV 9 SP/MP/AP	WMA 2/7/8/9/9.1/9.2	wmv
	VC1		
3GP	MPEG-4 SP/ASP	MP3, AAC LC, AAC+, AAC+ v2	3gp
	H.264 HP/MP/BP		
MOV	MPEG-4 SP/ASP	MP3, AAC LC, AAC+, AAC+ v2	mov
	H.264 HP/MP/BP		
FLV	MPEG-4 SP/ASP	MP3, AAC LC, AAC+, AAC+ v2	flv

Note: 1) Maximum resolution supported: 1920 x 1080.

Disc Format

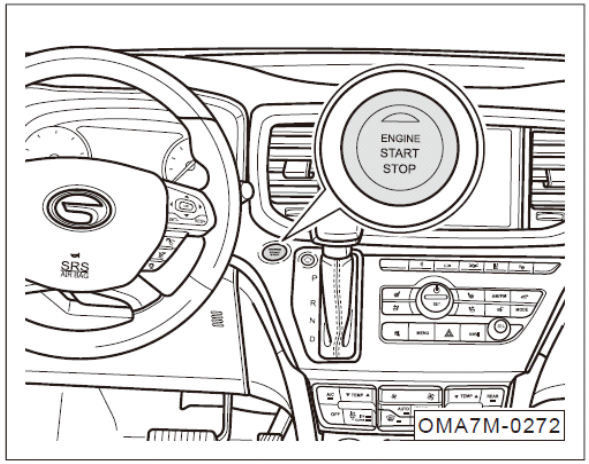
Format	Code
CDDA	PCM
DTS-CD	DTS
DVD-Video	LPCM, MPEG, Dolby, DTS, MPEG-1, MPEG-2, DVD sub

Note: Note: It cannot be guaranteed that all the supported file formats (image format, audio format, video format, disc format) are fully supported. Incompatibility possibly caused by other reasons or connection or read failure caused by non-genuine USB disk cannot be excluded.

5.1 Starting and Driving

5.1.1 Start Switch

Start Switch Mode



The mode of this car's Start switch (“ENGINE START/STOP” button) corresponds to the position of conventional key-operated rotary ignition switch. When operating, you can simply bring the smart key into the car and press the start button to switch among gears or start/stop the engine.

Hint

Only when the smart key is detected in the car can the Start switch be operated.

The Start switch is at "OFF" (deactivation) position if not pressed.

When the transmission shift lever is at “P” position without pressing the brake pedal, press the Start switch and then it will switch by the order of "OFF" → "ACC" → "ON" → "OFF".

OFF: Switch indicator light is off and the Start switch is off.

ACC: Switch indicator light is orange and the cigarette lighter and other accessory circuits are switched on.

ON: Switch indicator light is orange, instrument light is on and all electrical equipment circuits are switched on.

Hint

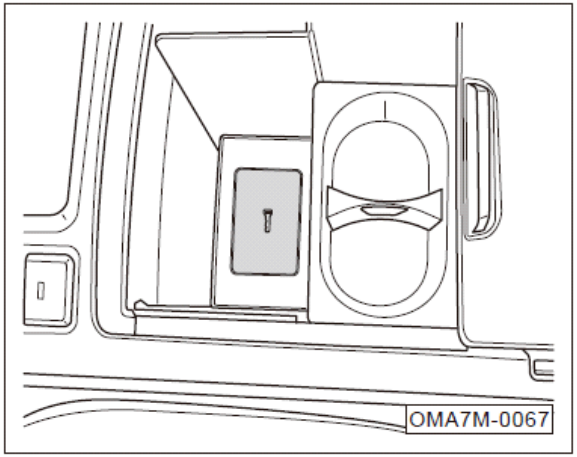
When the transmission shift lever is at other positions other than "P" without pressing the brake pedal, press the Start switch and then it will switch from “OFF” to “ACC”. If you continue pressing, it will switch in the sequence of "ACC" → "ON" → "ACC" and not return to "OFF".

Normally, you can only switch from "ACC" to "ON" in turn. But when the transmission shift lever is at the “P” position and the Start switch is kept at the “ACC” position for an hour, it will be switched to the power saving mode and return to the “OFF” position automatically.

When the AT shift lever is at the “P” or “N” position and the brake pedal is pressed, the Start switch indicator light turns green, then press the Start switch to switch to the “START” position.

START: Switch indicator light is green and the engine is started. Release the Start switch and brake pedal after starting the engine, the Start switch will switch to "ON" position automatically.

Limphome Mode



In case the engine cannot be started due to pwer shortage of smart key, place the smart key on the marked key position on the bottom of armrest box horizontally, press the Start switch to switch to “ACC” or “ON” position, and then tread on the brake pedal, the indicator light of Start switch will turn green; press the Start switch again to start the engine.

Hint

- In case of power shortage of smart key, press the Start switch, the instrument cluster display will indicate "No Key Detected".
- This start method is temporary emergency startup. Please replace the battery of smart key as soon as possible.

5.1.2 Engine Start

– Carry the smart key into the car.

– Depress the brake pedal and maintain it at the full range, and make sure the shift lever is at “P” or “N” position and the Start switch indicator light is green.

– Press the Start switch to start the engine.

Hint

- If the engine is of cold start, it needs idle running to let it warm up before driving. At the same time, because valve lifter takes a few of seconds to reach normal working pressure, it can produce running noise, which is normal phenomenon, requiring no worry.
- After the successful engine start, release the Start switch immediately.

Caution

- Engine startup time cannot exceed 15s. If engine fails to start successfully, wait about 30s to try again.
- After startup, do not depress the accelerator pedal suddenly to run the engine at high speed or overload. Otherwise, the engine can be easily damaged.
- If the battery power is too low to start the engine, you can try the emergency start by connecting cable. =>Refer to Page 475
- If brake signal failure occurs during the engine startup, shut down the engine and go to your GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.

Warning

- **Do not start the engine in a poorly ventilated or enclosed room for a long time. Because engine off-gas contains harmful gas, it can cause coma and even death from suffocation.**
- **Do not leave the engine in unattended mode when the engine is running.**
- **Do not start the engine by push, traction or via starting auxiliary device. Doing so may cause engine damage or even injury accident.**

5.1.3 Engine Stop

– Depress the brake pedal to stop the car, and apply the EPB.

– Put the shift lever at “P” position.

– Release the brake pedal, and press the Start switch to turn off the engine.

Caution

- During driving, long press the Start switch or press the Start switch three times continuously, then the Start switch will return from "ON" to "ACC" position to stop the engine and achieve emergency flameout. The engine can be restarted a few of seconds after emergency flameout.
- During driving, in case of automatic engine shutdown or emergency flameout, put the transmission shift lever at the “N” position and press the Start switch again to restart the engine.

Warning

- **When the engine stops and the brake booster does not work, a greater force shall be applied on the brake pedal when braking to stop the car. If the steering booster does not work, a greater force must be applied to turn the steering wheel.**
- **When driving, do not turn off the engine in non-emergency situations. Otherwise, the airbag will not work.**
- **The radiator fan may still run for some time after the engine stop. Do not touch radiator fan and other rotating components.**

Precautions for Parking

When parking, put the shift lever to the "P" position and pay attention to the following matters:

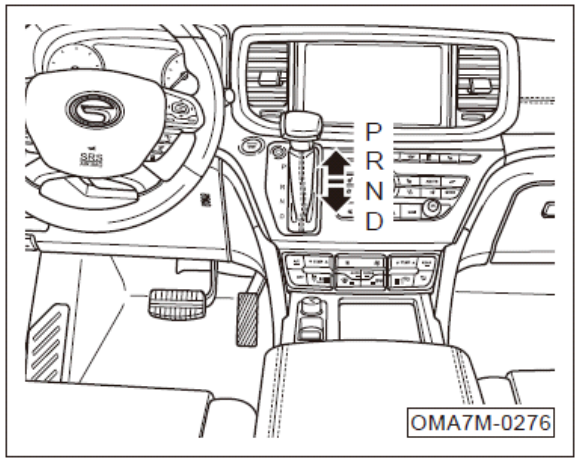
- Pay attention to the car parking direction and do not make the exhaust discharged to the plant to damage the green belt.
- Try to park on a straight road and avoid a steep slope.
- When parking, no matter the car faces the top or base of a slope, the front wheels should face curb.
- Apply the EPB. Turn off all lights and other electrical equipment, and shut down the engine.
- When leaving the car, be sure to carry valuables and smart key with you, and confirm that the skylight, window, door and hatchback door are closed or locked.
- Check whether the immobilizer system indicator light on the instrument cluster is on, and confirm that the immobilizer system has been activated.

⚠ Warning

- **Even if you leave the car temporarily, you must shut down the engine, apply the electronic parking brake, and carry the smart key with you. When leaving the car, do not leave any person, especially children, in the car; Otherwise, person in sealed car is likely to suffer from suffocation, coma and even death.**
- **Do not park the car near inflammables and explosives.**

5.1.4 Gear and Driving Instructions

Gear Description



There are the following gears for shift lever from front to rear part: "P→ R→N→D" gear. The corresponding gear light on the gearshift panel will be on after the shift lever is switched to certain gear, and the instrument cluster will display the corresponding gear.

"P" Gear (Parking Gear):

– Press the unlock button at the front end of the shift lever to switch the shift lever to the "P" gear.

– When switching from "P" gear, you need to press the unlock button at the front end of the shift lever and depress the brake pedal.

Hint

- Only when the car is completely still can the "P" gear be engaged.
- You must ensure that the engine has been started and the brake pedal has been pushed to bottom before switching from "P" gear to the other gears.

"R" Gear (Reverse Gear):

– Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily.

– Press the unlock button at the front end of the shift lever, put the shift lever to "R" gear. At this time, the reversing light will automatically light up, and the reversing system will automatically start. => Refer to Page 367

– Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal slowly to reverse the car.

Caution

Before switching to "R" gear, make sure that the car is completely stopped and that the engine speed is too high. Otherwise, the transmission can be damaged or even an accident may occur.

“N” Gear (Neutral Gear):

– You can directly put the shift lever from "R" or "D" to “N” gear.

– Please depress the brake pedal and do not depress the accelerator pedal before withdrawing the shift lever from the "N" gear.

⚠ Warning

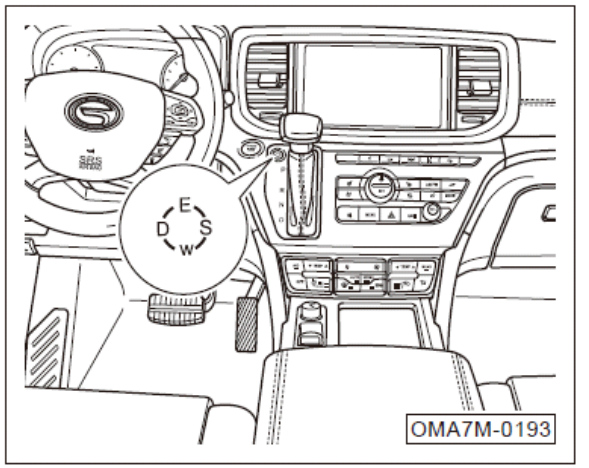
When driving, do not switch to "N" gear to slide. Otherwise, it can easily cause driving hazards.

“D” Gear (Driving Gear):

This gear is engaged generally during driving.

– The shift lever is directly moved from "N" to “D” gear. At this gear, the system will automatically upshift or downshift according to engine load and car speed.

Driving Mode



The transmission gears correspond to 4 driving modes accordingly. After switching the Start switch to “ON” position, press the driving mode key on the gearshift panel continuously and switch the mode in the sequence of "D"→"E"→"S"→"W".

“D” Mode:

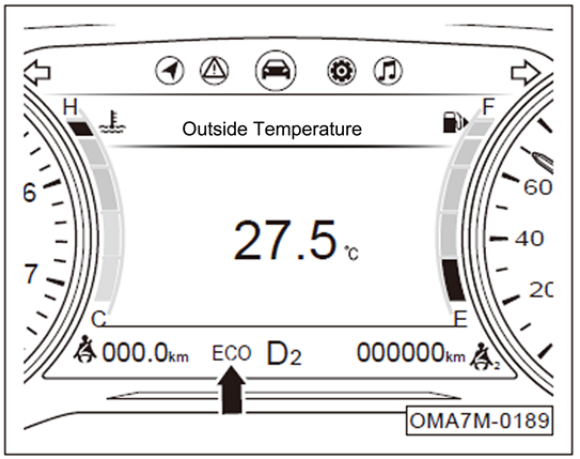
In general, the transmission is in the "D" mode by default, i.e. the normal "D" driving mode.

"E" Mode:

The "E" mode is ECO mode. When the car is in this mode, not only the fuel saving strategy is applied for the TCU, but also the corresponding economic strategy is adopted for the A/C.

Hint

- ECO mode can be applied when the shift lever is at "P, R, N, D" gear, but only works at “D” gear.
- The ECO mode has a power outage memory function, that is, when the engine is restarted after flameout, the transmission will remain in ECO mode.



When the car enters ECO mode, the "ECO" indicator light on the instrument cluster is on.

"S" Mode:

"S" mode is sport mode, in which, the running transmission will downshift to a lower gear according to resistance change (e.g. pulling, uphill driving), and the engine will run at a higher speed to provide greater power for the car. The "S" mode is mainly used for driving in the pursuit of dynamic driving, and can be used for driving on mountainous road to prevent frequent shifting.

⚠ Warning

In driving process, do not suddenly switch the shift lever to "R" or "P" gear. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged or even accidents may occur.

"M" Mode:

In "S" mode, pressing "+/-" button on gearshift knob will trigger and maintain "manual" mode, and then "manual" will appear on the instrument cluster; repressing the driving mode button can switch from "manual" mode to "winter" mode.

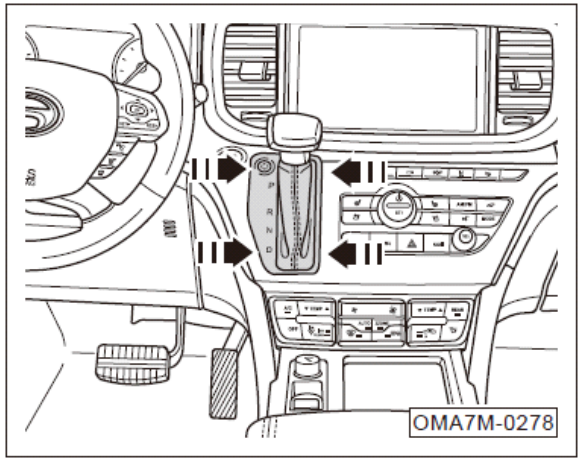
"W" Mode:

"W" mode is the winter driving mode. Driving the car in winter mode can guarantee more stable and moderate torque output. In this mode, the transmission will automatically control the starting gear to avoid the car slipping on road with ice and snow or other slippery roads, and help the driver to control the car on snowfield more easily.

i Hint

Winter mode will limit the PTO of the engine, so that it is suggested that the winter mode should only be used when driving on road with ice and snow or other slippery roads; while on other roads, the winter mode is not recommended, so as to avoid influencing the drivability and fuel economy.

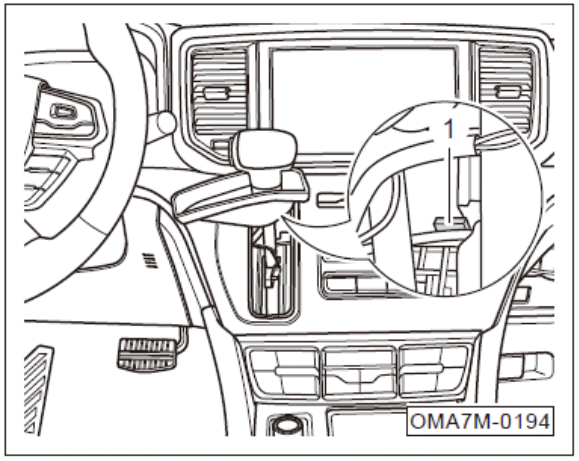
Unlocking the Shift Lever



– Apply the EPB. => Refer to Page 313

– Make sure the Start switch is off.

– Prise out the middle leather panel carefully in direction of the arrows.



– Use a screwdriver or other bar-type tools to push free the unlocking switch ① . Meanwhile press the unlock button at the front end of shift lever grip and then move the shift lever from "P" to "N".

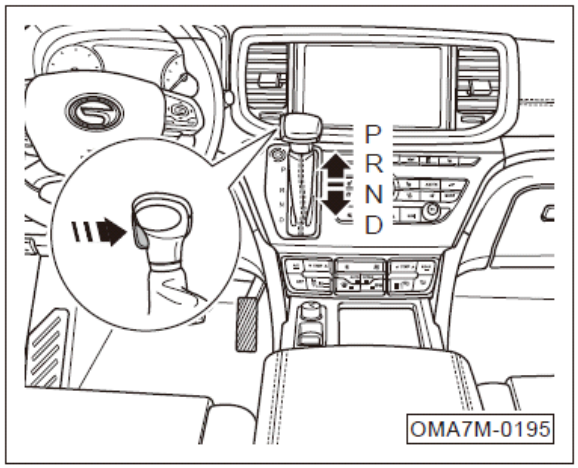
– Install the middle leather panel.

– Press the brake pedal, start the engine and check whether the shift lever restores the normal engagement operation.

Caution

If the shift lever is locked and cannot be withdrawn from the "P" gear, this method can be used to for withdrawal. However, the occurrence of this failure usually indicates the car may have problems and should be checked and repaired as soon as possible at your GAC MOTOR dealer.

Driving Instruction



– Completely press the brake pedal to start the engine => refer to Page 304.

– Press the unlock button on the front side of the shift lever, and put the shift lever to certain gear.

– Unlock the EPB => refer to Page 314.

– Release the brake pedal and slowly depress the accelerator pedal to start the car.

– Depress the brake pedal to stop the car steadily;

– Apply the EPB (=> refer to Page 313), switch the shift lever to “P” position and release the brake pedal.

– Press the Start switch and stop the engine => refer to Page 305.

Caution

- To ensure safety, please ensure that the shift lever is at the "P" or "N" position before starting the engine, and do not start the engine in other gears.
- Idle speed of cold engine is very high, so you should drive your car only after the engine idling is stable before the engine warming.
- Do not depress the accelerator pedal violently when the car is still, which may result in high load, damaging the engine.
- After the engine stop, the system will release a warning beep if the shift lever is not switched to “P” gear.

5.1.5 Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) System

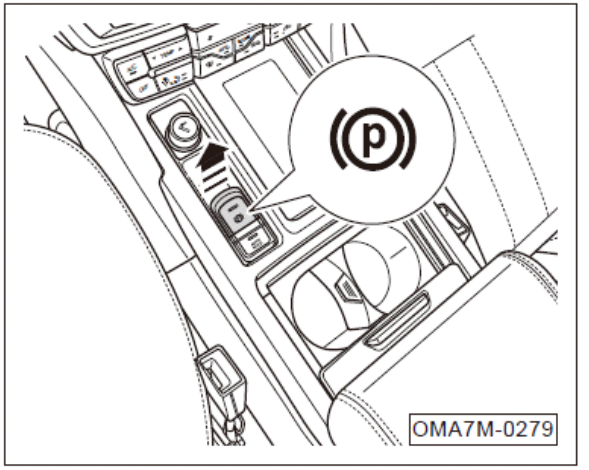
The model is equipped with the latest generation of motor integrated caliper EPB. The driver can enable the vehicle parking and release function through operating the parking switch. In ramp conditions, auxiliary starting function can be used. Under the parking situation, after depressing the accelerator pedal, EPB will be released automatically provide the driver with a convenient driving assistance.

Caution

The EPB system will park the car with fixed force according to slope. If the braking efficiency decreases:

- If the car glides after ramp parking, the EPB will increase the braking force automatically. If this situation occurs frequently, please go to your GAC MOTOR dealer as soon as possible to have your car checked and repaired.
- If the car continues to glide after the automatic increase of braking force, please depress the brake pedal and stop the car on a flat road. Please contact GAC MOTOR dealers for maintenance as soon as possible.

Applying Static Parking Brake



– Apply the parking brake when the car in a static state or the Start switch is at "OFF" position.

– Pull up EPB switch button in the direction of arrow to apply the parking brake until the indicator light on the instrument is on, which indicates that the parking brake has been applied to prevent the sliding.

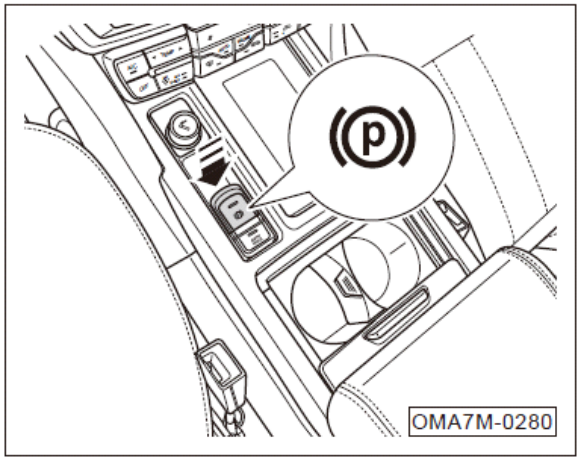
Caution

The parking brake must be applied when parking.

Hint

- After the car has been parked steadily, you should first apply the EPB and then put the shift lever to the "P" position.
- Applying the EPB may generate running noise, which is a normal phenomenon.
- If the car is used to pull other vehicles or is parked on a ramp with larger slope, pull the EPB switch again after the completion of first parking to ensure the maximum parking force.
- On a ramp with a slope of 17%~26%, EPB will clamp again 5 minutes after the first application of force. At the moment, noise will occur, which is a normal phenomenon. On a road with a slope of 27%~30%, EPB will clamp again 5 minutes after the first application of force, at the moment, noise will occur, which is a normal phenomenon.

Releasing Static Parking Brake



– Depress the brake pedal when the Start switch is at “ON” position.

– Press the EPB switch button in the direction of arrow to release the parking brake until the indicator light on the instrument is off, which indicates that the parking brake has been released.

Hint

- If you press the EPB switch button without depressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released. The buzzer will alarm, and the instrument cluster display will indicate "please depress the brake pedal to release the EPB".
- Releasing the EPB may generate running noise, which is a normal phenomenon.
- In case of insufficient power of battery, the system cannot release the EPB, so please contact your GAC MOTOR dealer for handling. If conditions allow, conduct the emergency start through connecting cable (=> refer to Page 475), and then release the EPB.
- If the EPB is not applied for a long time, the system will detect the conditions automatically with audible running noise.

Automatic Driving Release

When the door is closed and the driver has fastened the seat belt, the EPB will be released automatically when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

Caution

- When the car is in the parking state, do not depress the accelerator pedal quickly. Otherwise, it will shorten the service life of EPB more quickly.
- The utilization of the automatic driving release will shorten the service life of the EPB, and it is recommended to be used only in case of hill-start.

Warning

Do not depress the accelerator pedal when any person is operating in front of/ behind or under of the car in such state that the engine is running and the transmission is in driving gear, even if the EPB is applied. Otherwise, the car will move, causing accidents and even casualties.

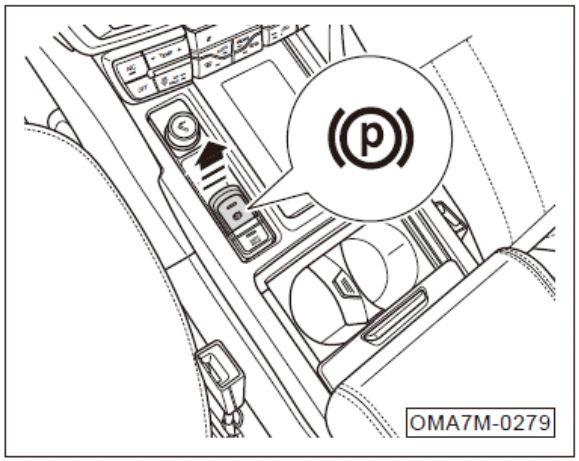
Uphill Start Assist

When the car has been parked on a slope, fasten the seat belt, start the engine, engage a corresponding gear and depress the accelerator pedal to assist uphill start and avoid the sliding. The EPB will be automatically released after a smooth start.

Caution

The EPB cannot be automatically released if the seat belt is not fastened.

Applying Dynamic Emergency Brake



– The dynamic emergency braking can be realized by pulling up the EPB switch button continuously in the direction of arrow in the driving process. If the accelerator pedal is depressed in emergency braking process, the system will quit braking. If the emergency braking is not triggered by driver operation, please depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to quit braking.

Caution

If the Start switch is at "ON" position, the indicator light (red) on the instrument cluster will be on when applying the EPB and will be off when releasing the EPB. In case of any of the following phenomena, please apply and release the EPB again. If the fault persists, please contact your GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance.

- If the indicator light flashes continuously, it indicates that the EPB is in partial engagement/ release state or the system is faulty.
- If the indicator light lights up in red when the EPB is not applied, the system is abnormal.
- If the indicator light (yellow) is on, it indicates that a fault is detected in the EPB system and the EPB performance decreases.

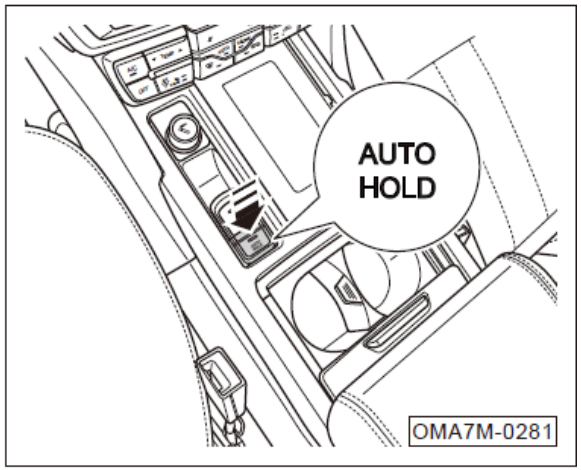
Caution

- Only apply the dynamic emergency braking when necessary, because the parking brake only exerts braking force on the rear wheels, which may easily cause accidents. In addition, the braking distance is longer than that when using the brake pedal, and it will shorten the service life of the parking brake system.
- If the EPB switch is pulled up during driving, the buzzer will alarm and the instrument cluster display will show "Release the EPB switch".
- During the deceleration, the release state of parking brake can be recovered by releasing the EPB switch or depressing the accelerator pedal. If you continue pulling up the EPB switch to stop the car, the parking brake will remain the engaged state.

AUTO HOLD

AUTO HOLD will keep the car still automatically according to the driver's braking needs; the braking will be released automatically when the system detects the driver's intention to start (e.g., depressing the accelerator pedal); it can ensure the start convenience under auto release condition based on the ramp information and make the car still by supercharging actively when the braking force is insufficient.

On and Off



– When the engine is running and the driver’s safety belt is fastened, press the AUTO HOLD switch button to enable the function, and then the indicator light of AUTO HOLD switch button is on. Press again to disable AUTO HOLD function, and then the indicator light is off.

Activation

After being activated, the function supports the auto holding and releasing of brake in moving and stopping conditions. When the driver stops the vehicle by using brake, the vehicle will be parked automatically to avoid the sliding at starting.

Deactivation

The AUTO HOLD function will be deactivated and the parking brake will not be locked in following conditions:

1. The accelerator pedal is depressed at starting.
2. The engine is shut down during driving.
3. The EPB is released manually.
4. The AUTO HOLD switch is pressed when stepping on the brake.

In order to ensure safety, the AUTO HOLD function activated will be disabled and the parking brake will be locked in the following conditions:

1. The engine is shut down.
2. The driver side door is opened or the seat belt is unbuckled in stop state.
3. The switch is pressed to cancel the AUTO HOLD.

Caution

When the car is transferred via conveyor belt to cleaning device and other devices, the AUTO HOLD function must be disabled. Otherwise, the car cannot move or may deviate from the driving track.

EPB Adaptive Learning

In some cases (e.g. the battery suffers power failure suddenly, or the vehicle has not been used for a long time), the red indicator light of EPB will flicker, and manually pulling the EPB switch will cause EPB unable to work. In this case, the driver shall depress the brake pedal and press EPB switch to make EPB execute adaptive learning, enabling EPB to work normally.

5.2 Service Electronic Brake System

5.2.1 Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) is an important part of active safety system.

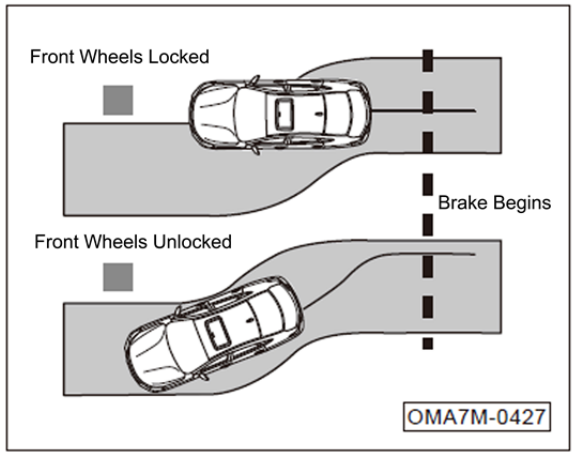
When ABS works, the friction between the wheel and the road is rolling friction and favorable for braking by making use of the maximum adhesion between the wheel and road, thereby improving the braking deceleration, shortening the braking distance, and ensuring the direction stability during braking.

The ABS operation is equivalent to snubbing at a high frequency. The driver will feel the vibration of brake pedal accompanied by the “tick” sound produced by brake master cylinder operation when depressing the brake pedal in emergency. In this case, the ABS is in normal working state. Since the brake master cylinder adjusts the brake pressure constantly, a force will be fed back to the brake pedal continuously. Therefore, in this case, it is required to depress the brake pedal to the end, and it is forbidden to depress the brake pedal repeatedly.

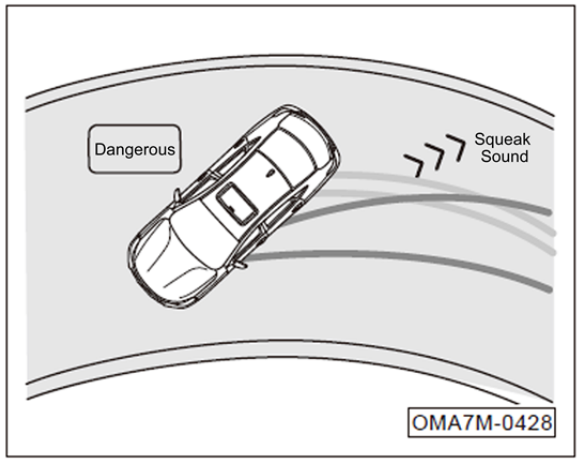
As ABS is only the safety assistant system, its function is very limited. For example, when making a brake on sand and stone road or snowy road, it may have a longer braking distance compared with braking on concrete road or dry road. Don't take it for granted that ABS can get ideal brake performance in any situation. Therefore, do not rely on these systems too much. Only safe driving is the most important.

Under the following conditions, ABS will be activated by depressing the brake pedal. It is normal to feel vibration:

- When shifting gears.
- During emergency braking.
- When turning at high speed.
- When driving on slippery road.
- When driving on projected or pit road.
- When making sudden start after the vehicle is started.



If the front wheels of a vehicle not equipped with ABS are locked, the vehicle cannot turn and only can slide along the braking direction.



If the rear wheels of a vehicle not equipped with ABS are locked, drifting is likely to happen and even reaches to 180° under serious conditions.

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) Indicator Light

After the Start switch is switched to the "ON" position, ABS indicator light is on for about a few of seconds and then goes out upon the completion of system self-inspection.

The occurrence of the following conditions indicates that there is a fault in the system:

- The Start switch is switched to "ON" position, but the indicator light is not on.
- The Start switch is switched to "ON" position, but the indicator light is still on after a few of seconds.
- When the vehicle is running, the indicator light is on.

In case of above situations, stop the vehicle immediately and go to GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

Always adjust the speed according to the weather, road and traffic conditions. To avoid accidents, don't take a risk to drive just depending on the limited safety functions provided by the system.

- **The ABS cannot go beyond the kinematic law. It is still dangerous for a vehicle with ABS to drive on slippery road. While driving, if the ABS is adjusting the brake pressure, immediately slow down to adapt to the road and traffic conditions.**
- **Improper operation or modification (such as modification of parts of braking system, or wheels and tires) may affect the functions of ABS, EBD and ESP.**
- **Specified size of tires must be used. If the vehicle is installed with tires in improper size or non-uniform size, ABS can't work normally.**

⚠ Warning

- **If the indicator lights of ABS and braking system light up, stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid tank => refer to Page 420.**
- **If the brake fluid level is normal, the failure of the braking system may be caused by the abnormal ABS control function. When braking in this case, the rear wheel may be locked soon, resulting in drifting and side sliding. Please go to your GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.**

5.2.2 Electronic Brakeforce Distribution System (EBD)

EBD system is a part of ABS and used for balancing the brakeforce distribution on front and rear wheels according to the vehicle load in conventional vehicle braking.

EBD exerts more brakeforce on the rear wheel through adjusting slip rate to obtain the shortest braking distance under the premise of ensuring braking stability. In particular, the stability and maneuverability of vehicle braking are improved when driving on a road with poor conditions or a slippery road.

5.2.3 Hydraulic Boost Compensation (HBC)

When the vacuum booster fails, HBC can compensate the temporary insufficient vacuum caused by vacuum failure to increase the brake pressure. Meanwhile, "Please check the vacuum booster system" will appear on the instrument cluster, so you should go to your GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired as soon as possible

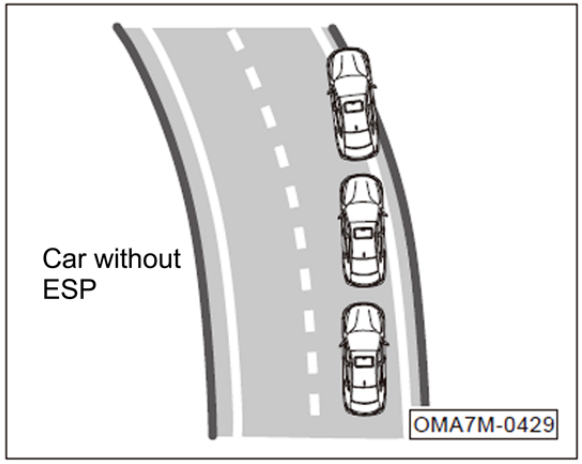
5.2.4 Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

ESP can effectively reduce the risk of vehicle sliding.

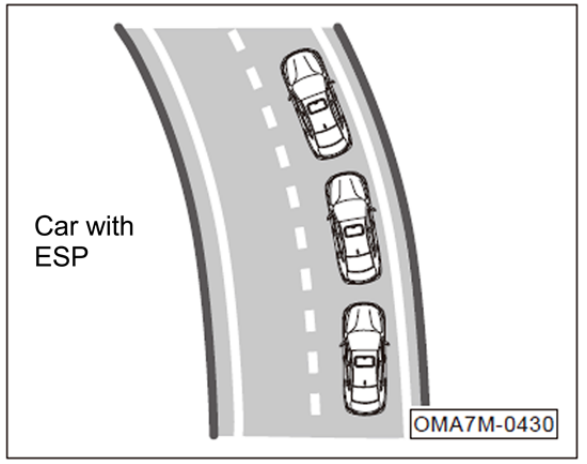
Operating Principle of ESP

ESP confirms the driver's driving intention according to steering wheel angle and vehicle speed, and constantly compares the information with actual driving condition. If the vehicle deviates from the normal running route (e.g., side skidding), the ESP will correct it by applying a brakeforce to the appropriate wheels.

The ESP can be used to recover the stable driving state through the twisting force generated by braking. If the vehicle tends to oversteer (i.e. drift), the system will mainly exert the brakeforce on the front wheel at the outer bending. If the vehicle tends to understeer (i.e. excessive turning radius), the system will mainly exert the brakeforce on the rear wheel at the inner bending.



Vehicle not equipped with ESP sideslips and deviates from the normal route during driving.



Vehicle equipped with ESP can correct the brakeforce according to the sideslip amount to prevent deviating from the route.

ESP Indicator Light on or Flashing

- After the Start switch is switched to "ON" position, the indicator light is on for about 2s and then off.
- If the ESP works in the driving process, the indicator light will flash.
- The indicator light will light up after the ESP function is deactivated.
- The indicator light will light up when the ESP fails to function.
- The ESP indicator light, ABS indicator light , parking brake and braking system indicator light are on when the ABS fails to function.

If the indicator light is on and not off after vehicle start, it indicates that the system has temporarily deactivated the ESP. If instrument cluster display shows the related text message to prompt or warn the driver, try to enable the ESP by turning off the Start switch and then turning on it again. If the indicator light is off at this moment, it suggests that the system has been in working state completely. The indicator light may be on when you reconnect the battery joint to cable after disconnection and turn on the Start switch, and it shall be off after short-distance driving.

⚠ Warning

Always adjust the speed according to the weather, road and traffic conditions. To avoid accidents, don't take a risk to drive just depending on additional safety functions provided by the systems.

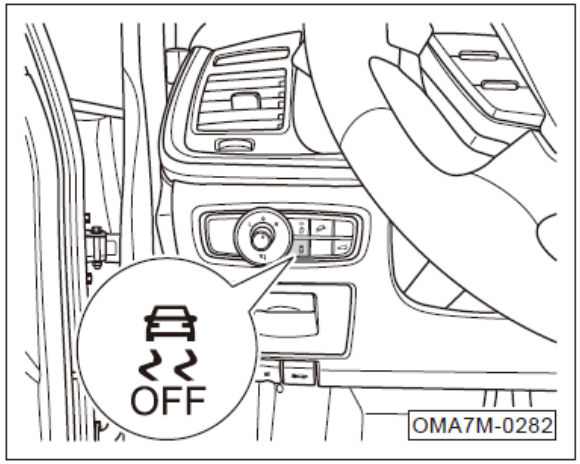
- **Remember: ESP cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion. Be sure to drive on slippery road or drive while towing a trailer with extra care.**
- **The driver must adjust the driving mode according to the road and traffic conditions.**
- **ESP cannot reduce the risk of accidents caused by improper driving such as excessive high driving speed or too close distance to the front vehicle.**
- **Improper operation or modification (such as modification of parts of braking system, or wheels and tires) may affect the functions of ABS, EBD and ESP.**

The ESP works only when the engine is running. The ESP function can be deactivated in special circumstances. For example:

- The vehicle is running with tire chain.
- The vehicle is running on deep snowy or spongy road.
- The vehicle gets stuck in muddy road or other roads, and needs to be moved back and forth.

In the absence of such conditions, the ESP should be activated for driving safety.

Activation and Deactivation of ESP



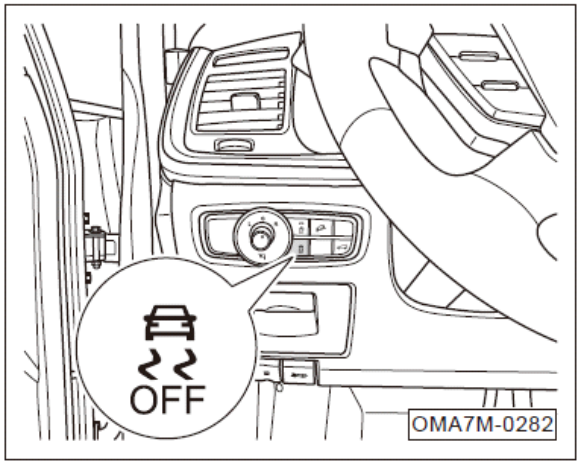
Generally, the ESP system is activated by default when the vehicle is moving.

The ESP system can be deactivated by long pressing (more than 3s, less than 10s) the ESP deactivation button . At this moment, the indicator light on instrument cluster is illuminated. Also, the instrument cluster display will display the corresponding text message.

5.2.5 Traction Control System (TCS)

Traction Control System (TCS) is the subsystem of the ESP. It can judge whether the drive wheel is skidding according to rotation speed of drive wheel and driven wheel. When the rotation speed of drive wheel is higher than that of driven wheel, the TCS can control the rotation speed of drive wheel to prevent the vehicle from sliding.

Activation and Deactivation of TCS



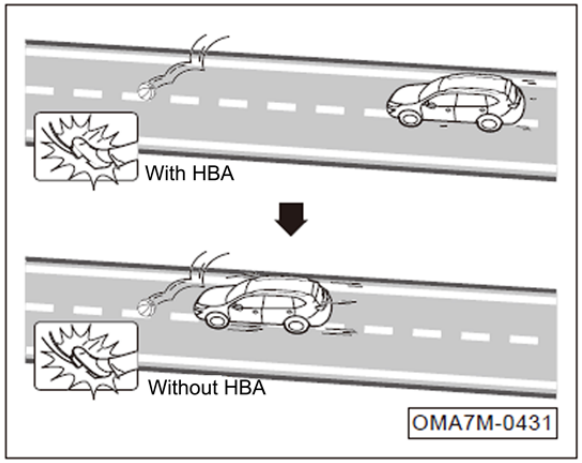
Generally, the TCS system is activated by default when the vehicle is moving. The TCS system is activated/ deactivated when the ESP system is activated/ deactivated manually.

The ESP and TCS can be deactivated by long pressing (more than 3s, less than 10s) the ESP deactivation button . At this moment, the indicator light on instrument cluster is illuminated. Also, the instrument cluster display will display the corresponding note diagrams.

Hint

- The ESP/ TCS function will be activated automatically when the speed is greater than 80 km/h.
- The ESP/ TCS function deactivated can be reactivated by pressing the button at a speed of less than 80 km/h.
- If you press the button for more than 10s, the system will consider it as wrong operation and the system working state will not be affected.

5.2.6 Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)



The Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) assists you to have shorter braking distance in emergency by utilizing the pressure rapidly generated in the braking system. It makes full use of the characteristics of ABS. The HBA will be deactivated automatically when the brake pedal is released, and then the braking system will return to its normal working state.

Most drivers can hit the brakes timely in dangerous situation, but cannot depress the brake pedal with enough force in a short time. Therefore, the braking system does not produce maximum brakeforce, resulting in the increase of braking distance, increasing the risk of the accidents.

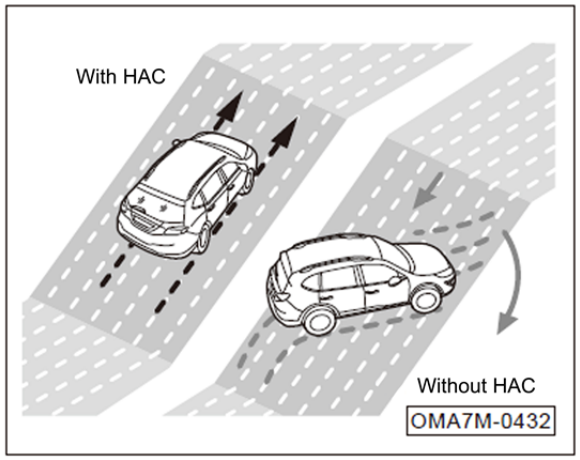
However, for vehicles with HBA, quickly depressing the brake pedal and maintaining the state will produce a greater brakeforce than that under normal braking, which gives full play to critical value of ABS, enabling the braking system to produce the pressure required for the maximum deceleration in the shortest time. Therefore, the shortest braking distance is obtained.

⚠ Warning

HBA can improve driving safety, but it is impossible to go beyond kinematics rules. Please adjust your driving speed according to the road condition and regulated traffic speed.

5.2.7 Hill-start Assist Control (HAC)

HAC allows the driver to easily move his/her foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal when starting on slopes without using the parking brake to avoid sliding accidents.



Activation Conditions for HAC

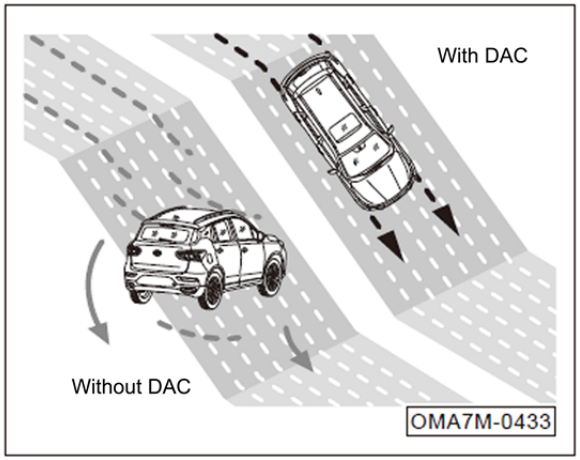
- HAC function is activated to apply brake pressure to the vehicle for 1s, if the driver releases the brake pedal in following conditions: ramp slope of more than 4%, shift lever not at "P" or "N" position, EPB not applied, brake pedal depressed to stop the vehicle and keep it in static state.
- During the working of HAC, when the engine torque exceeds the vehicle resistance torque, the brake pressure will be released to finish starting smoothly.
- HAC also works when the vehicle goes downhill and the shift lever is switched to “R” position.

Hint

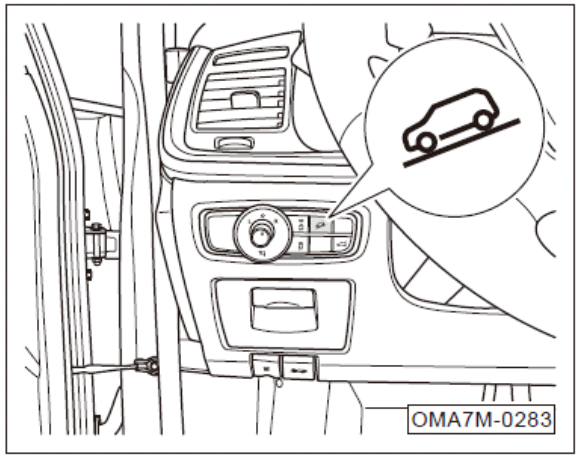
- The HAC will apply a brakeforce automatically when starting on a steep uphill or shifting to reverse gear on downhill, to prevent slipping.
- HAC is integrated on the ESP system. If the HAC fails, the ESP indicator light will be on and graphic prompt will appear on the instrument cluster display accordingly.

5.2.8 Down-hill Assist Control (DAC)

Down-hill Assist Control (DAC) is an additional function in ESP system related to driving comfort. In the downhill process, the DAC exerts the brakeforce to drive down the slope actively through ESP without depressing the brake pedal.



Activation and Deactivation of DAC



– The DAC function is activated by pressing the button at a speed of lower than 35 km/h.

– The DAC function is deactivated by pressing the button again.

– The brake lights of the rear combined light are on simultaneously when the DAC system works.

After the DAC function is activated, the vehicle will move at the minimum speed of 8 km/h and maintain this speed when traveling downhill.

In addition, the driver can depress the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal to adjust the speed. If the driver releases the pedal at a speed of 8 km/h ~ 35 km/h, DAC function will be activated again and the vehicle will continue to move downhill at such a speed.

- The DAC will be automatically deactivated when the speed exceeds 60 km/h.
- When the DAC is enabled, the ESP will automatically intervene in case of excessive wheel slip.

Hint

When the DAC system fails, the function will be deactivated, the instrument cluster display will show graphic prompt accordingly, and an audible alarm of about 5s will appear. In this case, the DAC system will not work properly. The driver should not use the system for downhill driving forcefully, instead he/she shall depress the brake pedal, and go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

Under some special circumstances, DAC system will be in thermal protection mode due to too high braking temperature. For example, if the system is used for a long time at relatively high ambient temperature, the temperature of braking system will increase constantly due to friction; when the limit value is reached, DAC will enter thermal protection mode: this function is activated but does not work. DAC will not function temporarily, and the vehicle will show acceleration sign; DAC will work again when the temperature of braking system drops to effective working temperature.

5.3 Driver Assistance System

5.3.1 Smart Start/Stop System

The smart Start/ Stop system, called the Start/ Stop system for short, can help reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emission.

After the Start/ Stop system is enabled, the engine will automatically stop as the traveling car stops. The Start switch maintains on when the engine is off, and the engine will automatically start again as needed.

Upon the stop of the Start/Stop system, the A/C (if on) will automatically lower the blower below 3rd gear and the seat heating ventilation system (if on) will set the heater to the 1st gear with the lowest power consumption, so as to reduce power consumption.

Basic Service Conditions of the Start/ Stop System

Before using the Start/Stop system, check the following conditions. Only if such conditions are met, the Start/Stop system can operate properly.

- Engine hood must be closed.
- Driver side door must be closed.
- Driver must fasten seat belt.
- Engine water temperature exceeds 54°C (after the engine operates normally for a while).
- The speed has exceeded 8 km/h since the last stop.
- Other conditions.

Caution

- Battery shall be replaced with the one of the specified type (=> refer to Page 455), otherwise it will affect the normal operation of the Start/ Stop system. Please go to your GAC MOTOR dealer for replacement.
- If the speed remains below 8 km/h, the engine will not be turned off by the Start/ Stop system.

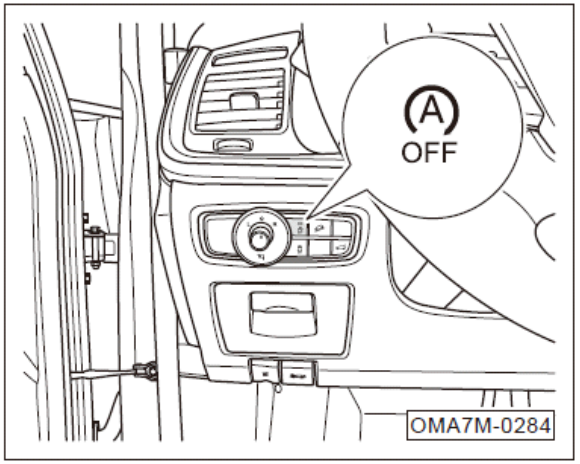
Warning

- **Do not let your car coast with engine off. Or otherwise you could lose control of your car. This may cause accident and serious injuries.**
- **The brake booster and steering assist system do not work when the engine is turned off. You have to step on the brake and turn the steering wheel harder.**

Caution

- During wading, always turn off the Start/ Stop system.
- If the car is stopped and the engine is turned off by the Start/ Stop system, the Start switch will remain on. Be sure that the Start switch is turned off before leaving the car.

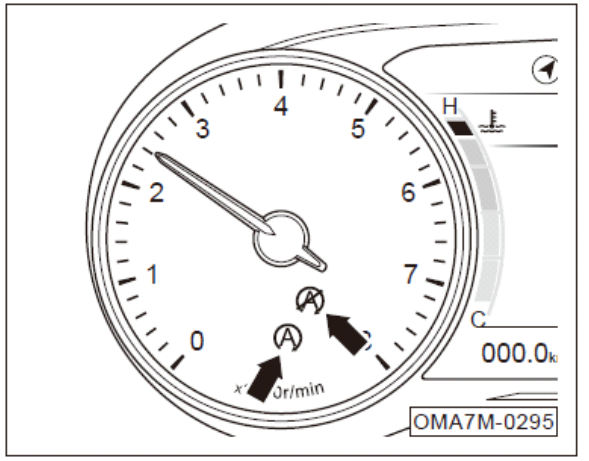
Turning on/off the Start/ Stop System



The Start/Stop system has power-off memory function, i.e. the on-off state is the same as that before the last shutdown when the engine is started. In “On” state, the corresponding indicator light Ⓐ of Start/ Stop system on the instrument cluster is on.

The system is turned off by pressing the Start/Stop system off button Ⓐ OFF and the corresponding indicator light Ⓐ of Start/Stop system on the instrument cluster is off.

Working Process of the Start/ Stop System



– If the speed has exceeded 8 km/h since the last stop, enable the brake until the car stands still and do not release the brake pedal. Then the engine will be automatically turned off by the Start/ Stop system, and the indicator light Ⓐ on the instrument cluster will be on.

– As the engine is off and the Start switch is on, release the brake pedal. Then the engine will automatically start again and the indicator light Ⓐ on the instrument cluster will be off, while the indicator light Ⓐ will be on.

In the following cases, the engine will also be turned off by the Start/Stop system:

- If the shift lever is in the "D" gear, the start will be triggered by releasing the brake pedal.
- If the shift lever is in the "N" gear, the start will not be triggered by releasing the brake pedal unless you press the brake pedal again.
- If the shift lever is in the “N" gear, do not release the brake pedal and move to the “R” or “D” gear to trigger the start.
- In the automatic shutdown state, the start will be triggered when the turning of steering wheel exceeds a certain angle.
- In the automatic shutdown state, the start will be triggered when switching the shift lever to "P" gear.
- In the automatic shutdown state, the start will be triggered by pressing the Start/Stop switch button.
- The start will be triggered when changing the “D” or “E” driving mode to “M” mode.

Hint

If you want to switch to the “D” or “N” gear after putting in the reverse gear, you must firstly drive at 15 km/h to enable the system to turn off the engine again.

Conditions for Operation Failure of Start/Stop system

Under the following circumstances, the Start/ Stop system will not work:

- The engine has not reached the minimum temperature to turn on the Start/Stop system.
- Brake booster vacuum is insufficient.
- The internal temperature set by the A/C is not reached.
- The external temperature is too high or too low.
- Front windshields are being defrosted.
- Battery power is too low.
- Altitude is too high.
- Steering wheel has a substantial deflection or is turning.
- The shift lever is in the “R” gear.
- The vehicle is running on a road with very steep slope.
- Start/Stop switch is turned off.
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) function * is enabled.
- AUTO HOLD function is enabled.
- The semi-auto parking function is enabled *.
- Other conditions.

Automatic Restart of Engine

In the engine shutdown, the following circumstances will disrupt the conventional start/stop function of Start/Stop system and the engine can be started again without the driver's operation:

- Slide on a slope, for example.
- Internal temperature deviates from the value set by the A/C.
- Front windshields are in the deforest state.
- Brake booster vacuum is insufficient.
- Battery power is too low.

Automatic Start Failure Description

After automatic start fails, the instrument cluster will display the prompt of "Start/Stop system is turned off, please manually start the engine" and the driver needs to press the start button again to start the engine:

- There is fault in the Start/Stop system when the engine is idling stop state.
- Engine fails to automatically start more than three times when the engine is in the idling stop state.
- The engine hood is opened in the engine idle stop state: Do not start automatically even if the engine hood is closed. The engine can be started only through pressing the Start switch again.
- The doors are opened in the engine idle stop state: Do not start automatically even if the door is closed. The engine can be started only through pressing the Start switch again.

Adaptive Learning after Battery Power-Off

In case of battery power-off or replacement, the adaptive learning operation of the Start/Stop system shall be conducted according to the following steps after power restoration:

1. Turn off the Start switch and all the electrical equipment of the car and keep the stationary state for at least 4 hours.
2. Start the engine for 3 times and make it operate continually for at least 1 minute each time.

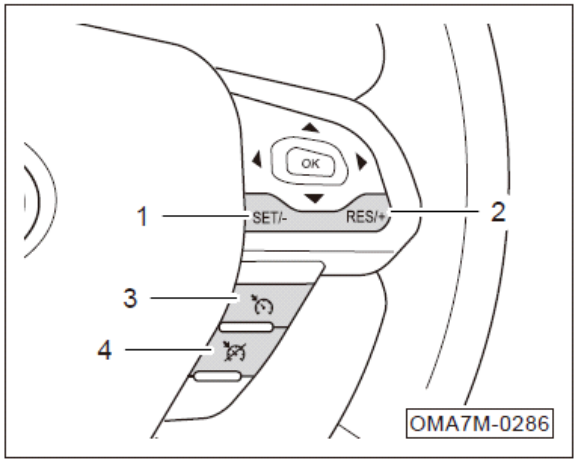
5.3.2 Cruise Control System*

The cruise control system can be set at 40 km/h or higher. Once the speed is set, the driver can release the accelerator pedal and the car will run at the preset speed.

⚠ Warning

- **To avoid accidents, the cruise control system cannot be used where there is dense traffic, hills, winding roads, or slippery roads.**
- **The set speed and the vehicle-to-vehicle distance must be adapted to the current traffic conditions. The cruise control system is only a driver assistance system and shall be used prudently.**
- **The cruise control system shall be shut down timely after stopping cruise control.**

Operation Button



1. SET/-: Activate the cruise control function/deceleration
2. RES/+: Restore the cruise control function/acceleration
3. : Start / stop cruise control
4. ： Stop cruise control

Starting Cruise Control

– Short press the button . Then the corresponding indicator light on the instrument cluster will be on and turn white.

– Accelerate the car to the cruising speed (40 km/h and above).

– Short press SET/- button, then the white indicator light on instrument cluster will turn green.

– Release the accelerator pedal as the car is in cruise control state.

i Hint

Cruise control does not work when the transmission is in "P", "N" or "R" gear.

Stopping Cruise Control

When the car is in cruise control, the cruise control stopped can be restored by the following actions and the corresponding indicator light on instrument cluster will turn white:

- Press the brake pedal.
- Put the transmission in “N” gear.
- Short press .

When the car is in cruise control, the cruise control stopped via following actions cannot be restored by pressing the RES/+ button and the corresponding indicator light on instrument cluster will be off:

- Cruise control is disabled by short pressing the button .
- The shift lever is put in the “P” gear.

Caution

Operating the EPB switch for dynamic braking may stop the cruise control automatically.

Upon stop of cruise control, the engine will stop outputting power, so the engine power output shall be controlled timely via accelerator pedal.

Restoring Cruise Control

Under the conditions that the car exits cruise control, but the cruise control system is not shut down, the cruise control can be reset by the following operations as the corresponding indicator light on instrument cluster is white:

- By short pressing the RES/+ button at the speed of above 40 km/h, the cruise control indicator light on the instrument cluster will turn to green from white and the speed will return to and be kept at the previously set cruising speed.

Hint

If overtaking is needed, by pressing the accelerator pedal greatly, the car will temporarily stop cruise control and the engine power output will be controlled by the accelerator pedal; after the accelerator pedal is released, the car will restore the cruise control.

Increasing Cruising Speed

In cruise control mode, increasing the speed requires the following operations:

– Short press the RES/+ button to increase the speed by 2 km/h each time.

– Long press the RES/+ button to increase the speed continuously until the button is released.

Hint

The allowable maximum cruising speed is 145 km/h. The speed above 145 km/h cannot be adjusted through pressing the RES/+ button.

Decreasing Cruising Speed

In cruise control mode, decreasing the speed requires the following operations:

– Short press the SET/- button to decrease the speed by 2 km/h each time.

– Long press the SET/- button to decrease the speed continuously until the button is released.

Hint

The speed below 40 km/h cannot be adjusted through pressing the SET/- button again.

5.3.3 Intelligent High Beam*

Intelligent high beam system detects traffic and environmental conditions in a real-time manner through a smart forward camera sensor on the upper edge of windshield and can perform automatic switching between low beam and high beam. For example, if the driver activates the intelligent high beam function when driving on a road with poor lighting at night, the system will automatically turn on the high beam upon identifying the conditions requiring high beam; the system will automatically switch from the high beam to the low beam upon identifying meeting or close following.

Hint

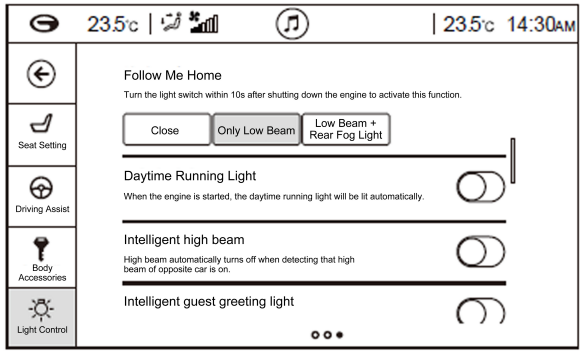
- The system will request to turn on the low beam in heavy fog, rain and other conditions possibly causing dazzling.
- Too low speed or violent driving will restrain the intelligent high beam function.
- Manually turning on high beam or low beam flashlight will restrain the intelligent high beam function.

Warning

The intelligent high beam is a driver assistance function and can help you select the best way to use light under suitable conditions. The driver is always responsible for manually switching between high beam and low beam according to traffic conditions and environmental conditions.

- **The intelligent high beam may not correctly identify all driving conditions and cannot work in some conditions.**
- **Dirt, sticker, ice & snow and other obstacles on the smart forward camera may disable the intelligent high beam;**
- **Any change to lighting system (e.g. headlight refitting) also may degrade the performance of the intelligent high beam or disable its function;**
- **When the car meets bicycle, electric bicycle or other non-motor vehicles or pedestrian, the intelligent high beam system shall be activated timely to prevent them from dazzling.**

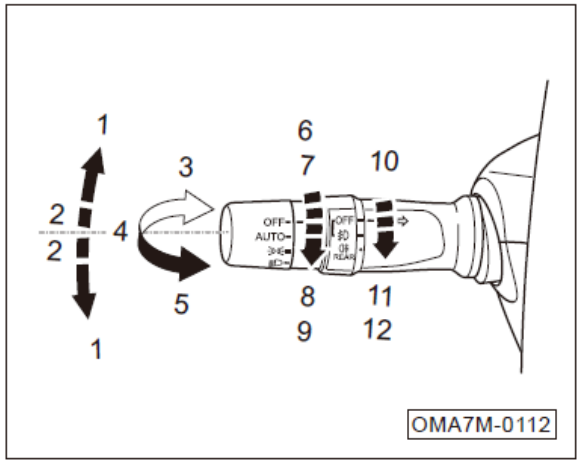
Activating Intelligent High Beam


23.5℃
23.5℃ 14:30AM
Seat Setting
Driving Assist
Body Accessories
Light Control
Follow Me Home
Turn the light switch within 10s after shutting down the engine to activate this function.
Close
Only Low Beam
Low Beam + Rear Fog Light
Daytime Running Light
When the engine is started, the daytime running light will be lit automatically.
Intelligent high beam
High beam automatically turns off when detecting that high beam of opposite car is on.
Intelligent guest greeting light

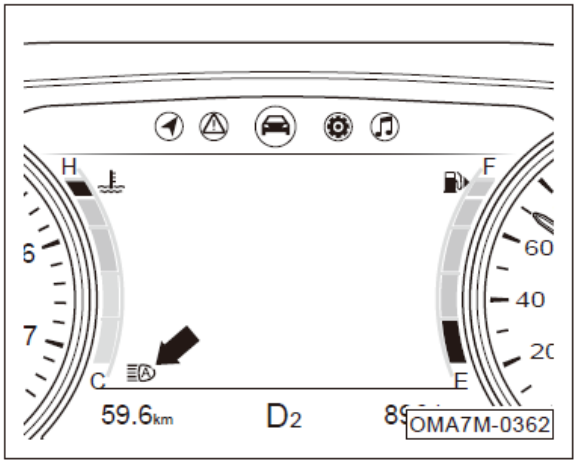
1. Under the "Light Control" in "Car Setting" under the audio system, short press the soft key ◑ to set as on.

Hint

The setting is of memory function, i.e. after restarting the car, the on-off state will be the same as that at the last stop.



2. Turn the light combination switch to AUTO position to turn on auto lighting.



– After being activated, the intelligent high beam is making preparation, and the indicator light on the instrument cluster is off.

– When the low beam of headlight is turned on via auto lighting, the intelligent high beam function is enabled, and the indicator light on the instrument cluster is white and on.

– When the intelligent high beam function is enabled and a request is sent out to turn on the high beam, the indicator light on the instrument cluster keeps white and on, and the indicator light of high beam is on.

– When the high beam or the high beam flashlight is turned on manually, the intelligent high beam is making preparation, with the indictor light on the instrument cluster off and the indicator light of high beam on.

Deactivating Intelligent High Beam

– Turn the light combination switch to a position other than AUTO.

– Under the "Light Control" in "Car Setting" under the audio system, short press the soft key to set as off.

– Turn on the high beam.

– Shut down the vehicle.

Hint

- When the car meets bicycle, electric bicycle or other non-motor vehicles, the function shall be activated timely to prevent them from dazzling.
- The high beam and the high beam flashlight can be activated and deactivated manually at any time.

Conditions Restraining Intelligent High Beam

The high beam is restrained in the following conditions:

– The speed is lower than 27 km/h;

– The fog light is turned on;

– The wiper is placed at HI position for some time;

– The ambient brightness is higher than threshold value;

– Road lamp, vehicle ahead or opposite is detected.

The switching between high beam and low beam is restrained in the following conditions:

– The lateral acceleration or yaw rate is too high;

– High dynamic state is enabled (ABS or ESP enabled);

– The speed is lower than 40km/h;

– The turn signal is turned on.

Conditions Restricting Intelligent High Beam

When the assist function of intelligent high beam is in service, the automatic switching between high beam and low beam may not be achieved timely and even fail absolutely due to the following reasons:

– The surface of windshield in the front of the smart forward camera is covered by ice & snow, fog, dirt, sticker and other objects;

– There are high reflective objects on dark street;

– There is pedestrian or cyclist on road with poor lighting or at the roadside;

– The light of vehicle ahead is obstructed by crash barrier, high central barrier, green belt, etc.;

– The taillight luminance of the front vehicle followed is dark or does not meet national standards;

– A vehicle driving in the opposite and half obstructed is encountered at sharp curve / on mountain road / at low-lying place.

– The car is traveling on steep slope or on bumpy road;

– The car is traveling in rain, snow or fog;

– The smart forward camera is damaged or powered off.

5.3.4 Radar and Camera Sensor *

Radar Sensor

The radar sensor, at the middle part of grille under the front bumper, is used for monitoring traffic conditions and can detect vehicles ahead within a distance.

The radar sensor must be adjusted and calibrated under the following circumstances:

– The radar sensor mounting bracket is removed and then reinstalled;

– The radar sensor is removed and then reinstalled;

– During the four-wheel positioning process, the toe-in or the rear wheel camber has been adjusted.

– There is a collision.

Hint

- The radar sensor shall be adjusted and calibrated with special purpose tools and equipment. If the radar sensor requires adjustment or calibration, please go to GAC MOTOR dealer for the related work.
- The radar sensor out of work or misadjusted may influence adaptive cruise control system, FCW system, AEB system and pedestrian detection system.

Special Instructions for Radar Sensor

The radar sensor is positioned in front of the car, and no obstacle is allowed within its sight. Do not mount number plate frame and other barriers when installing license plate. Otherwise, the radar sensor will be obstructed by the number plate frame or other barriers, which may result in malfunction of adaptive cruise control system, FCW system, AEB system and pedestrian detection system.

Caution

- If the radar sensor becomes dirty or is covered by number plate frame or rain, ice & snow or mud, the radar sensor, adaptive cruise control system, FCW system (vehicle and pedestrian target included) , AEB system (vehicle and pedestrian target included) and pedestrian detection system may not work.
- If the radar wave is reflected strongly at places like parking lot, the pedestrian detection function may be affected.
- There shall be no sticker, driver assistance light, number plate frame and other similar barriers in the front of and surrounding area of the radar, because they may influence the pedestrian protection function.

Caution

- Maintaining the front body may change the direction of radar sensor, influencing the pedestrian protection function. So, please go to your GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have it checked and repaired.
- If the radar sensor is damaged or changed in direction, please deactivate the pedestrian protection function and go to your GAC MOTOR dealer to have the radar sensor recalibrated.
- The direction of radar sensor may be changed due to vibration, for example the radar sensor is damaged when parking. The direction change of radar sensor may influence the system performance and even cause the abnormal shutdown of the system.
- It is suggested to remove snow on the sensor surface with a brush and ice on the sensor surface with insoluble deicing spray.

Smart Forward Camera

A smart forward camera is installed on the upper part of front windshield to detect surroundings; it can identify pedestrian at the maximum distance of 80m (under ideal light and other conditions) without any obstacles, and its minimum pedestrian detection height is 0.8m.

Hint

If only the smart forward camera fails, the FCW system, adaptive cruise control system and AEB system will still function to keep safe.

Caution

Poor lighting conditions, rain, fog, ice & snow or mud may influence the smart forward camera, resulting in malfunction of lane departure warning system, intelligent high beam system and pedestrian detection system. Meanwhile, the instrument cluster will indicate the graphic message of "Please check the lane departure warning system" or "The pedestrian detection function is disabled".

Caution

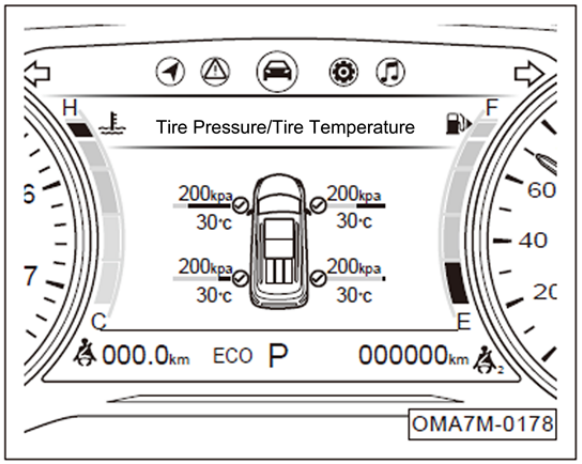
- The sight of the smart forward camera may be affected by dust or deposit on the front windshield, which will result in the malfunction of lane departure warning system, intelligent high beam and pedestrian detection system; in this case, please wipe up the area around the camera on the front windshield.
- When the factors disturbing the smart forward camera disappear, the pedestrian protection function is enabled again.
- Low light at sunset or night may affect the pedestrian protection function. Sticker or lighttight object shall not obstacle the sight of the smart forward camera, because the pedestrian protection function may not work normally for this reason.
- Make sure that there is no obstacle in the camera area before driving.
- Keep the sight of camera sensor on front windshield clear.

5.3.5 Tire Pressure Monitoring System *

Direct tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is adopted for this model to monitor the tire pressure and temperature information through the tire pressure sensor mounted on the wheel rim, and then the information is sent via wireless transmitter to the receiver. The receiver receives, decodes and analyzes the received signals and sends them through the bus to instruments for displaying current tire pressure and temperature. In case of low/high tire pressure, fast air leakage and over-temperature, alarm signal will be sent by the receiver and displayed on the instrument cluster.

When the Start switch is at “ON” position, if the car does not move or moves at a speed lower than 25 km/h, the pressure and temperature values are both displayed as “---” on the instrument cluster. Several minutes after the speed is higher than 25 km/h, the instrument cluster displays current tire pressure and temperature.

Tire Information Display



The information displayed is about the pressure and temperature of four tires.

When the speed exceeds 25 km/h, the tire pressure sensor will send the data to the receiver. After being decoded analyzed, such information will be sent to the instrument cluster through the bus to display current pressure and temperature.

- If the tire pressure is higher than 330 Kpa, the TPMS indicator light will be on, and the text alarm on the instrument cluster display will be displayed as high tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure is lower than 75% of the normal set value, the TPMS indicator light will be on, and the text alarm on the instrument cluster display will be displayed as low tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure continuously decreases below a specified value, the TPMS indicator light will be on, and the text alarm on the instrument cluster display will be displayed as tire leakage.
- If the tire temperature exceeds 85°C, the TPMS indicator light will be on, and the text alarm on the instrument cluster display will be displayed as high tire temperature.

Caution

- Some added electronic equipment may cause the abnormal operation of TPMS.
- If it is necessary to replace the tire pressure sensor inside the tire, or replace or reposition the tire, one should learn the matching of sensors in four tires again. Please go to your GAC MOTOR dealer for replacement.

Hint

- The standard half-load tire pressure is used as the normal setting for alarm reference of the TPMS.
- If the tire suffers high temperature, high pressure, low pressure, or rapid air leakage, the instrument cluster will give early warning, with position of the corresponding failed tire displayed in circular manner. If the TPMS fails, the instrument cluster will give early warning, with “Please check the TPMS” displayed in circular manner.
- Where there is high temperature alarm, it is recommended to stop the car and wait until the tires cool.
- The traveling alarm not handled until the car stops will remain when the car starts again, with pressure and temperature displayed as “---”. But when the speed exceeds 25 km/h, the receiver will receive updated data and update relevant data, and then the alarm disappears.

Hint

After replacing with a spare tire or with a new tire in some other places, the low tire pressure alarm lasts during traveling because of the missing tire sensor. Do not mistake this as abnormal tire pressure signal.

5.4 Parking Assist System

5.4.1 Reversing Radar System

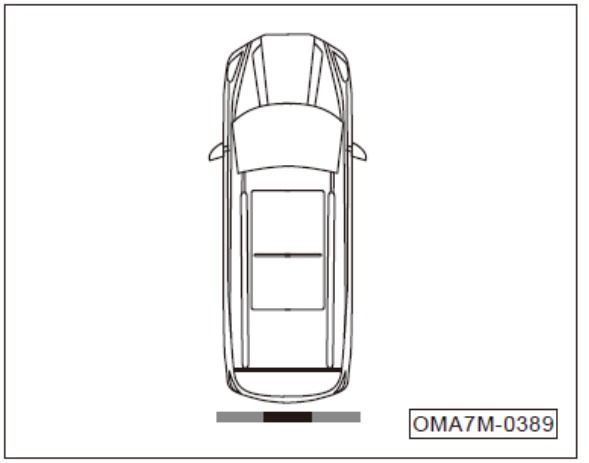
Reversing radar system can assist the driver in parking and adjusting the parking position.

The system transmits and receives ultrasonic waves via the radar sensor on the rear bumper and calculates the distance between the car and the rear obstacle based on the ultrasonic waves sent and reflected upon coming across an obstacle. If the rear part of the car is approaching an obstacle, the system will give out intermittent audible alarms to the driver. The shorter the distance between the rear part of the car and the obstacle is, the shorter the alarm sound will be; if the distance is very short, the system will give out continuous alarm sound. If, under this case, the car continues approaching the obstacle, the system will be unable to detect the obstacle behind any more. Except alarm sound, the audio system display will also show the dynamic icons of radar detection.

Activating and Deactivating the Reversing Radar System

As the Start switch is at “ON” position, release the EPB and switch the shift lever to “R” position; the rear radar sensor is enabled at the speed of lower than 10 km/h, and disabled at the speed of greater than 10 km/h. Move the shift lever from “R” position, enable the parking brake and switch the Start switch from “ON” position, then the reversing radar is disabled.

Dynamic Icon *



The dynamic icons shown on the display screen indicate the distance between the car and the rear obstacles. The dynamic icon of the rear part turns to yellow or red from green when the car is getting closer to obstacles.

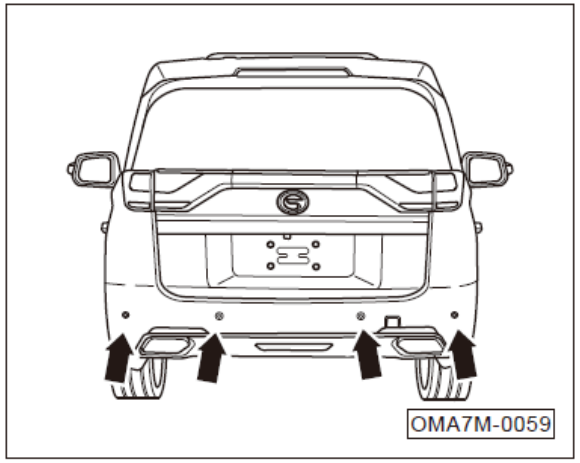
The change of such dynamic icons synchronizes with the change of distance alarm.

Distance Reference Alarm Sound

The alarm sound changes with the distance between the obstacles and the rear bumper; meanwhile the color shown on the audio system display also changes:

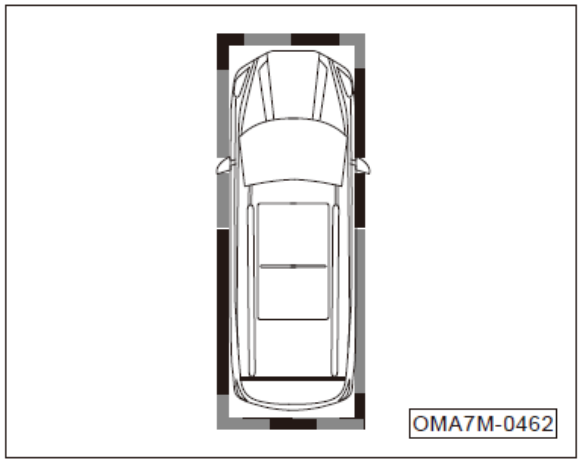
Detected Distance to Obstacles		Alarm Sound	Color Displayed
Rear corner sensor	Rear central sensor		
/	90~150cm	Low-speed intermittent alarm sound	Green
/	60~90cm	Medium-speed intermittent alarm sound	Green
30~60cm	30~60cm	High-speed intermittent alarm sound	Yellow
Within 30cm	Within 30cm	Continuous alarm sound	Red

Distribution of Radar Sensor



The rear radar sensor is installed on the rear bumper cover.

Dynamic Icon *



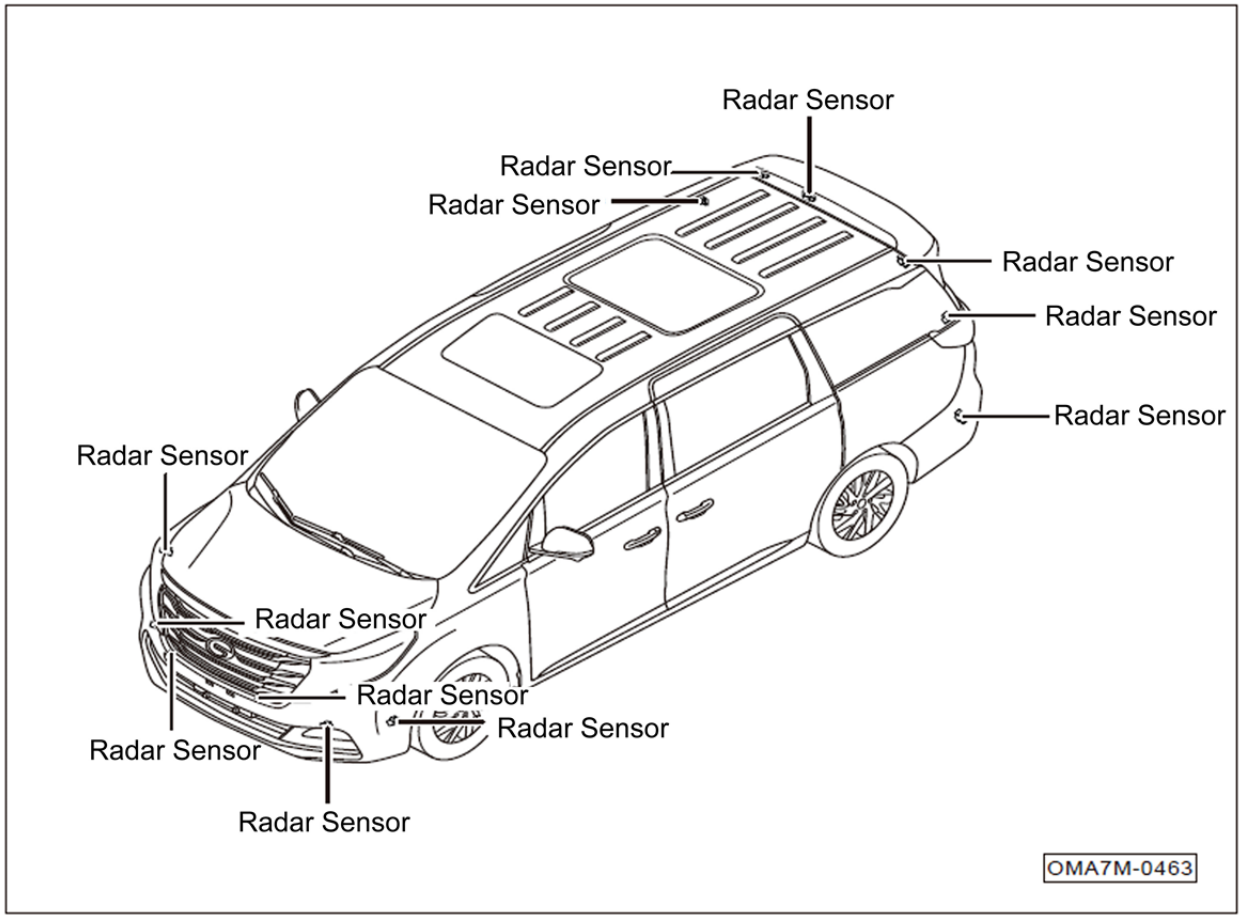
For the model equipped with semi-auto parking system, the display indicates the dynamic icon as shown, meaning the present distance with obstacles ahead and behind. The dynamic icon of the front/rear part turns to yellow or red from green when the car is getting closer to obstacles.

The change of such dynamic icons synchronizes with the change of distance alarm.

Detected Distance to Obstacles			Alarm Sound	Color Displayed
Front side area	Front edge and corner area	Front central area		
/	/	90~110cm	Low-speed intermittent alarm sound	Green
/	/	60~90cm	Medium-speed intermittent alarm sound	Green
30~60cm	30~60cm	30~60cm	High-speed intermittent alarm sound	Yellow
Within 30cm	Within 30cm	Within 30cm	Continuous alarm sound	Red
Detected Distance to Obstacles			Alarm Sound	Color Displayed
Rear Side Area	Rear Edge and Corner	Rear Central Area		
/	/	90~150cm	Low-speed intermittent alarm sound	Green
/	/	60~90cm	Medium-speed intermittent alarm sound	Green
30~60cm	30~60cm	30~60cm	High-speed intermittent alarm sound	Yellow
Within 30cm	Within 30cm	Within 30cm	Continuous alarm sound	Yellow

Distance Reference Alarm Sound

When the front / rear dumper is getting closer obstacles, the radar alarm sound becomes rapid, and green, yellow or red accordingly appears in the display interface of panorama parking system.



Distribution of Radar Sensor

The radar sensor is installed on the front / rear bumper cover.

Caution

- Always keep the radar sensor surface clean, and do not cover the radar sensor.
- Keep the radar sensor on the bumper clean and avoid icing to ensure its function.
- Clean the radar sensor surface with soft wet cloth to avoid surface scratching.

Warning

- **The reversing radar system does not take the place of the driver's observation to the surrounding environment, so the driver shall focus attention on reversing safely and adjusting parking position according to actual conditions.**
- **There may be blind zone when the radar sensor is detecting obstacles, so the driver must observe carefully during reversing, to avoid scraping or collision.**
- **During reversing in a narrow space or on uphill, the radar sensor may detect railings, trees or slope, which is considered normal.**
- **At fast reversing speed, the detection accuracy of the radar sensor may decrease somewhat. It is suggested that the reversing speed should not exceed 10 km/h. The continuous alarm sound from the reversing radar system indicates that the car is very close to the obstacles. The driver shall stop reversing immediately to avoid accident.**

Warning

- **Clean the radar sensor with high pressure cleaning device in a short time and in gentle manner; keep at least 10 cm between the nozzle and the sensor.**
- **Water drops on the radar sensor of the rear bumper can influence sensitivity of the sensor. To restore sensitivity, wipe off the water drops.**
- **Surfaces of certain materials cannot reflect the signals from the radar sensor, so that the sensor cannot detect such objects or persons in clothes made of such materials.**
- **The radar sensor may not detect the objects if interfered by outside noise.**
- **The radar sensor is a precision part. Do not dismantle or repair it by yourself. Damage caused by such dismantling or repairing is not covered in the warranty of GAC MOTOR.**

5.4.2 Reversing Rear-view System*

The reversing rear-view system can provide 130° wide-angle video coverage, display a wide range of rear view by video on the audio system display to help the driver see the complex road conditions behind the car in all directions, enhancing the reversing safety.

Start and Stop of the Reversing Rear-View System

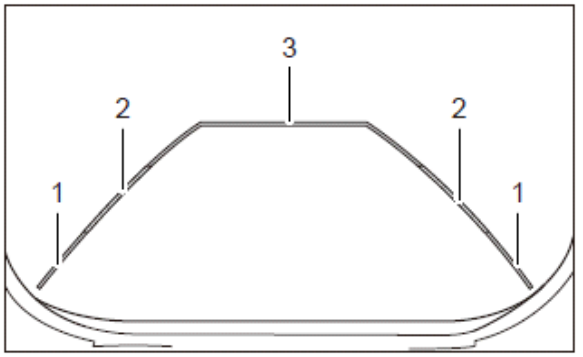
When the Start switch is at "ON" position, placing the shift lever at "R" position can make the reversing rear-view system work automatically, and the audio system display will start displaying the rear shot images marked with the reference distance line.

Switching the shift lever from “R” position can make the reversing rear-view system exit automatically, and the audio system will stop displaying reversing image.

⚠ Warning

The reversing rear-view system does not take the place of the driver’s observation to the surrounding environment, so that the driver shall focus attention on parking safely and adjusting parking position according to actual conditions.

Reference Distance Line



The lines in three colors on the display represent the reference horizontal distance between the line position and the rear bumper.

Line 1 (Red): 0~0.3m

Line 2 (Yellow): 0.3~0.6m

Line 3 (Green): 0.6~1.2m

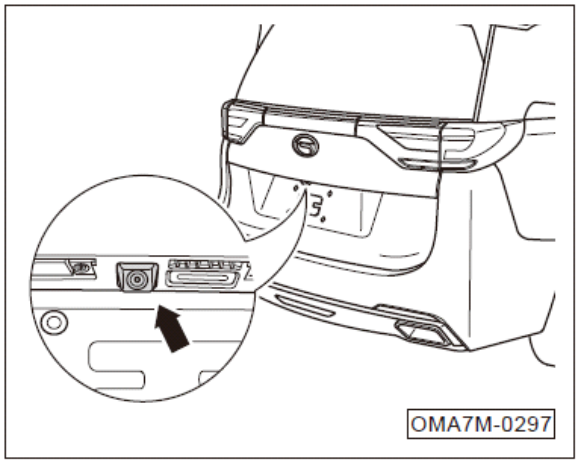
Caution

The above distance is measured on flat ground and is only taken as a reference value of view distance. If there is a slope, the above distance is not correct.

Hint

- The longitudinal lines on both sides of the reference distance line can be used as the reference lines for determination of the required space for reversing or parking.
- The reference distance lines change with turning of the steering wheel.

Rear-View Camera



Rear-view camera is installed under the panel of hatchback door.

Warning

- **Blind zone may exist in detecting scope of the rear-view camera, because the camera may be unable to detect children or small animals. Pay special attention to children or small animals around when reversing.**
- **Upright objects with higher elevation, such as protruding wall edges, may also not be detected by the rear-view camera.**

Caution

- Always keep the rear-view camera surface clean. Cleaning the rear-view camera with soft wet cloth to avoid scratching.
- Do not use high pressure cleaning device to clean the rear-view camera for a long time, and keep a distance of at least 30 cm from the camera when cleaning.
- Do not cover the rear-view camera.

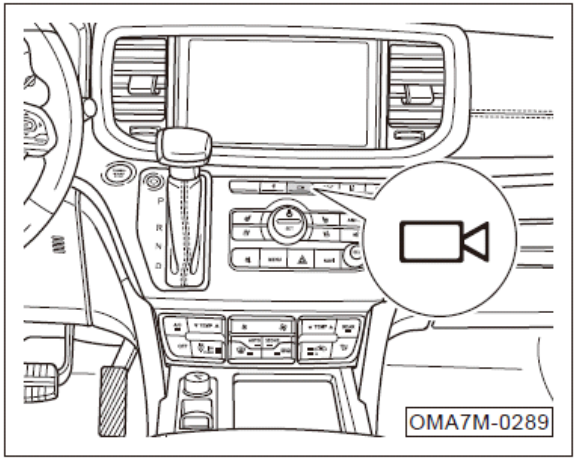
5.4.3 Panorama Parking System*

The panorama parking system consists of a control host module and four 180º cameras. The control host module captures images at front, rear, left and right sides of the car and merges them into a 360° aerial view, which is displayed via audio system display, through processing algorithm. The panorama parking system can provide the information of environment around the vehicle to the driver through real-time image, reduce the blind zones of driving, and forecast the movement track of the vehicle in combination with steering wheel angle and vehicle dimensions and other related parameters; adding such information into the panoramic image can make the driver fully understand the traveling direction of the vehicle and judge whether the reversing is safe.

Start and Stop of the Panorama Parking System

1. Start and stop through shift lever. When the Start switch is at “ON” position:

- Placing the shift lever at “R” position can make the panorama parking system automatically start;
- When the shift lever is moved from “R” position without operations of the driver, the panorama parking system will exit automatically after displaying for 30s.



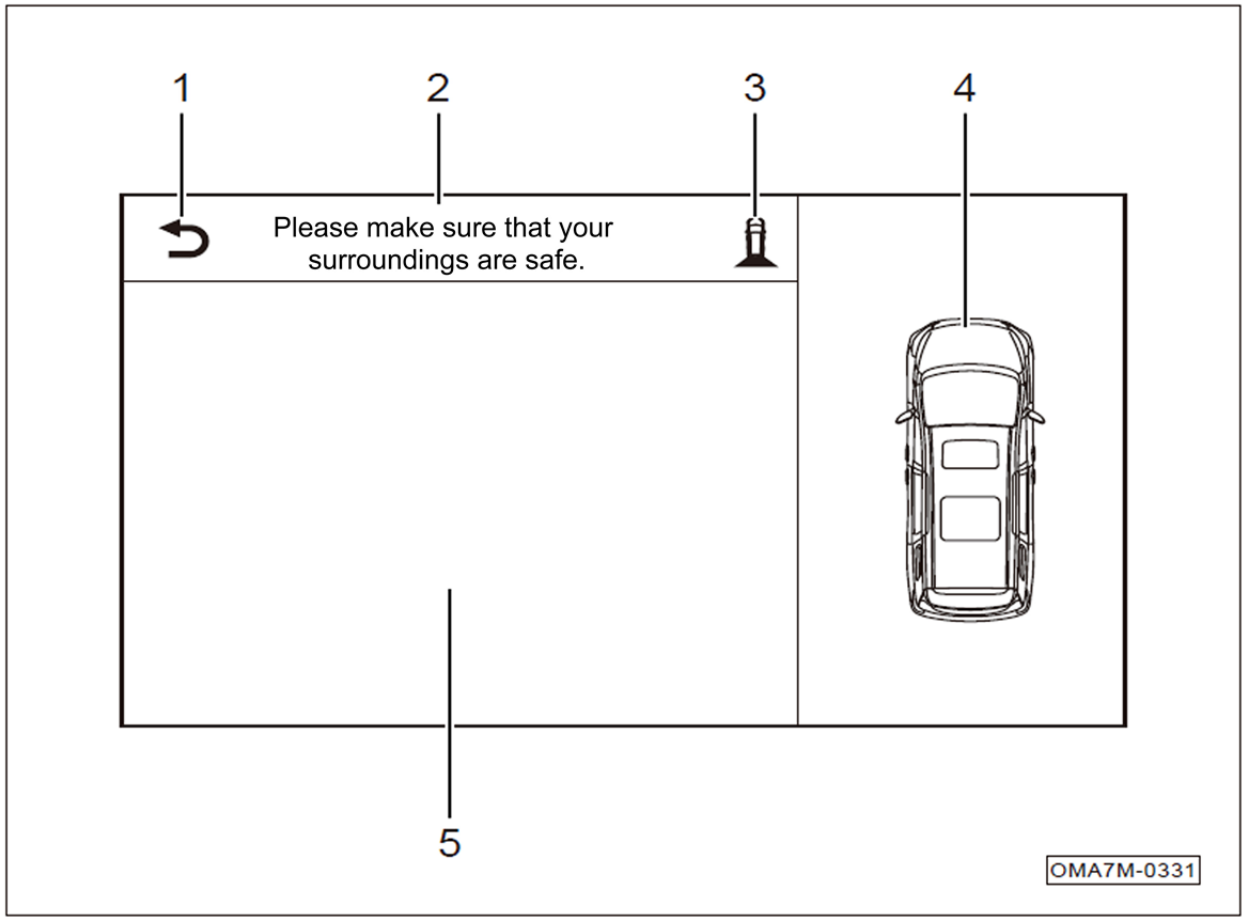
2. Start and stop through button. When the Start switch is at “ON” position:

- Short press the button, the button light will be on and the panorama parking system will start.
- Short press the button again, the button light will be off and the panorama parking system will stop.

Hint

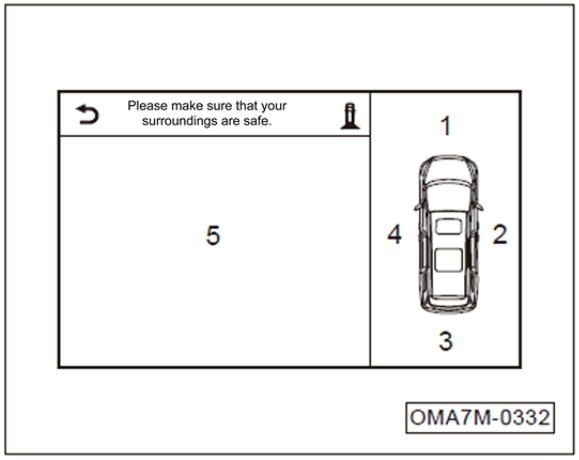
- When the panorama parking system starts, the audio system display will start to display the images shot around the car, with some auxiliary lines on the image.
- When the car is running at a speed of more than 20 km/h, the panorama parking system will stop automatically.
- If the “R” gear is not engaged and the system has been activated for more than 30s, the system will automatically stop (at a speed of lower than 20 km/h).
- The panorama parking system cannot work normally if the audio system is not turned on fully.

Interface Description



1. Soft exit key
2. Text instruction
3. View instruction
4. Image display zone
5. Image display zone

Panorama Interface Description

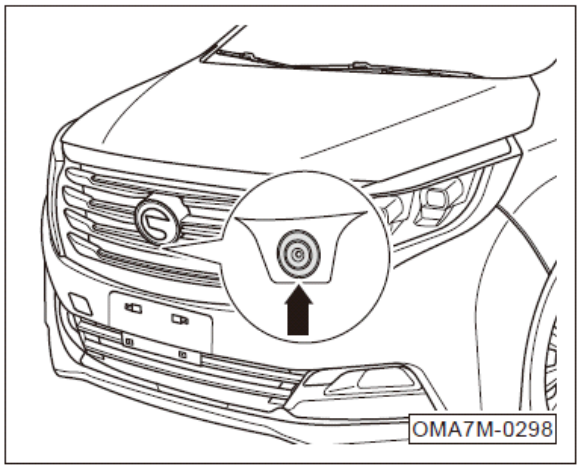


When the panorama parking system is activated and the transmission shift lever is not at "R" position, the front/right/rear/left view interface on the panorama interface ⑤ can be switched through clicking ①/②/③/④ touch control zone on the panorama interface.

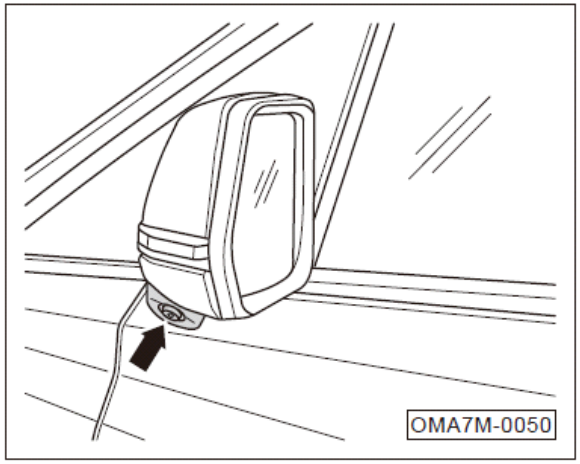
Hint

- The display interface instruction is only for reference; in case of difference from the actually displayed, the actually displayed shall prevail.
- When the shift lever is at "R" position, the rear-view interface appears on panorama parking system by default; while the shift lever is not at "R" position, the front-view interface appears on panorama parking system by default. The front/right/rear/left view interface on the panorama interface ⑤ can be switched through clicking ①/②/③/④ touch control zone on the panorama interface.

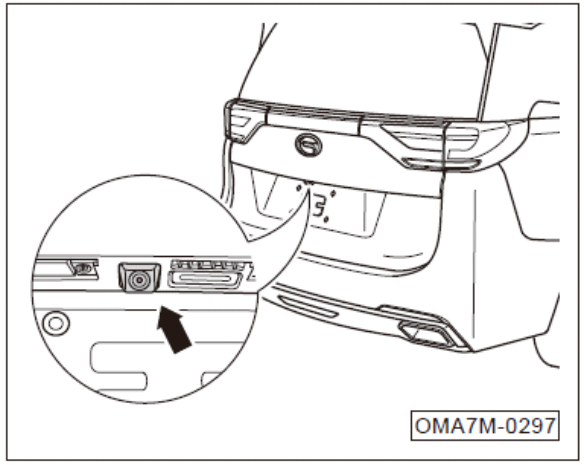
Camera Distribution



The front camera is installed below the car logo on front grille.



The left/right cameras are installed at the bottom of left/right exterior rear-view mirrors.



Rear-view camera is installed under the panel of hatchback door.

Caution

- Keep the camera surface clean.
- Do not use high pressure cleaning device to clean the camera for a long time, and keep a distance of at least 30 cm from the camera when cleaning.

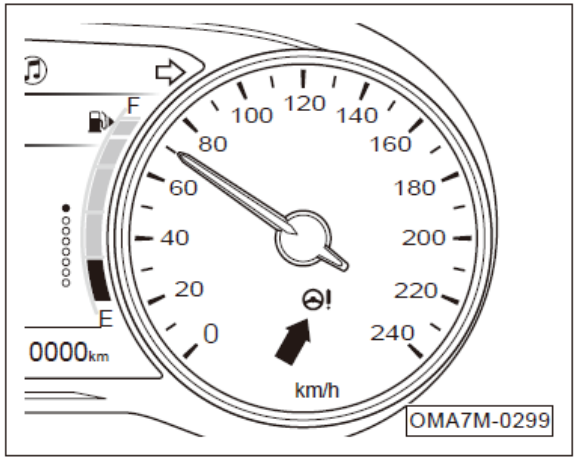
5.5 Electric Power Steering (EPS) System

The EPS is a power steering system directly relying on motor to provide auxiliary torque. EPS is mainly composed of torque sensor, motor, decelerating mechanism and electric steering control unit (ECU).

By detecting the driver's torque input and signals of whole car conditions, for example, speed and engine speed, the ECU controls the torque output of the assist motor in real-time manner, so as to realize the best steering assist, ensure flexibility at low speed and stability at high speed, and improve driving comfort and car safety.

Steering Mode of Steering Wheel

There are "Standard" and "Sport" steering modes. You may have to steer harder with sport mode. "Standard" is the default mode of the system. You can set the steering mode in audio system.



ECU is equipped with warning light alarm and text alarm. When the Start switch is at "ON" position, the indicator light (⊖!) of the electric power steering (EPS) system will be on; after starting the engine for several seconds, the EPS control unit will finish the self-inspection, the warning light will be off, which indicates that the EPS system works normally.

If the indicator light goes on after start of the engine or during driving, there is fault in the EPS system, and relevant text alarm will be shown on the instrument cluster display.

When fault occurs in the EPS system, park the car in a safe place, turn off the engine and then start the engine again. If the light is still on after re-start or during driving, please go to your GAC MOTOR dealer timely for repair.

5.6 Driving Skills

5.6.1 Safety Check for Driving

It is better to do safety check before driving. Checking your car for a few minutes helps safe and enjoyable driving.

Before Starting the Engine

1. External Check

- Check the tires for normal tire pressure, no incision, bulge, damage or excessive wear.
- Guarantee that the tire bolts are not missing or loose.
- Guarantee that the front combination light, brake light, taillight, steering signal light and other lights work normally. Check lighting direction of the front combination light.

2. Internal Check

- Inspect and confirm the seat belt has been fastened securely. The seat belts are free from wear or damage.
- Check the instruments and controllers, and especially make sure the instrument indicator lights and defroster work well.
- Make sure the pedal has enough free clearance.
- Ensure sufficient coolant level. => Refer to Page 413
- Check the condition of 12V battery. Check whether there is corrosion or loosening on terminal and cracks on the shell. Check if the cable connection is good.

After Starting the Engine

- Check whether there is leakage of fuel, engine oil, water or other liquid from the car bottom. Water drops from the use of A/C is normal.
- Park the car on flat ground; turn off the engine; then check the engine oil level after the engine is cool. => Refer to Page 409

During Driving

- Make sure the instruments work well.
- For checking and confirming the brake on safe road, the car shall not deviate to any side.
- For other abnormalities: check for no loose components or leakage; listen whether there is any abnormal noise.

5.6.2 Driving during Running-in Period

To ensure your car's service life, you have to run it in at the initial stage before putting it into normal use. When your car is in running-in period, please observe the following requirements:

- The mileage of running-in period is 1,500 km.
- Drive on good roads under reduced load at limited speed.
- Avoid full-accelerator starting or rapid acceleration.
- Avoid emergency braking for the first 300km.
- Strictly follow the operating instructions and keep the normal operating temperature of the engine. Do not change the engine oil before the regular maintenance.
- Carefully do routine maintenance; frequently check and fasten the external bolts and nuts; pay attention to the changes of sounds and temperature of each assembly during running, and adjust timely.

Running-in of the Engine

You have to run a new engine in for 1,500 km. Within 1,000 km of traveling mileage of the car:

- The speed shall not exceed 3/4 of the maximum speed.
- Avoid full-accelerator driving.
- Avoid high engine speed.
- Do not tow a trailer.

When the traveling mileage is within 1,000 km-1,500 km, the engine speed and speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable range.

At the early stage of running-in period, the internal frictional resistance of the engine is much greater than that after the running-in. All the moving components of the engine coordinate well only after running-in.

Full running-in of the engine can increase the service life and reduce fuel consumption.

Running-in of Tires and Braking Pads

Drive at moderate speed within the first 500km to properly run the new tires in.

Within the first 200km ~ 300km of traveling mileage, the new braking pad cannot realize the optimal friction status, so that drive at medium or low speed and avoid emergency braking as much as possible.

⚠ Warning

- **The best adhesion and friction cannot be realized for new tires and braking pad without running-in. Therefore, drive carefully for the first 500km to run in the tires well and avoid accidents.**
- **After replacement, the new braking pad shall also go through running-in period in accordance with the above requirements.**
- **Keep an appropriate distance with other vehicles during driving to prevent emergency braking, because at that time, both the new tires and braking pad are not fully run-in, and emergency braking may cause traffic accident.**
- **If the brake is damped or frozen, or the car is running on salt spreading road, the braking effect weakens.**

⚠ Warning

- **Heavy work load of the brake during running downhill makes it prone to overheat. It is recommended to slow down by shifting to a lower gear and fully use engine braking to reduce its work load.**
- **Always brake the car according to the road and traffic conditions. Avoid unnecessary press of brake pedal. Doing so can make the brake overheating, resulting in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.**
- **Do not let your car coast with the engine off, because as the brake booster is disabled, the braking distance will be much longer, making the situation accident-prone.**
- **Do not use the brake fluid for too long. Be sure to replace the brake fluid according to the maintenance intervals in the Warranty Manual.**

5.6.3 Important Tips for Driving under Different Conditions

- Drive slowly with wind blowing laterally, so as to control your car easily.
- Keep the right driving angle and avoid passing through high or sharp objects or other road barriers, or otherwise it may cause tire burst or serious damage.
- Slow down during driving on very bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the car will be seriously damaged by impact and chassis scratching.
- After car washing or driving through road with deep ponding, since the braking pads and brake disc are soaked, the braking effect weakens. At this time, drive at slow speed and slightly press down the brake pedal for several times to eliminate left water drops in the brakes, and then drive normally as the braking effect resumes.

⚠ Warning

- **Before driving, make sure the parking brake is released fully and its indicator light is off.**
- **Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal during driving. Or otherwise it can lead to dangerous overheating, unnecessary wear and fuel wasting.**
- **When driving downward on a long slope, decelerate and downshift. Remember that using the brakes frequently can make them too overheated to work.**
- **Be careful during acceleration, up-shifting, down-shifting or braking on slippery road. Sudden acceleration or engine braking can cause wheel slipping or spinning.**
- **Do not drive any more when the brake is wet. If the brake gets wet, braking distance will be longer than usual and the car may deviate during braking. The parking brake cannot stop the car firmly, either.**

Precautions for Driving through Ponding Road:

1. Before driving through a waterlogged road section, find out the ponding depth which shall not exceed the lower edge of car body.
2. In case of driving through water, turn off the air conditioner before starting; drive slowly; slightly step on the accelerator pedal and do not release; drive through the waterlogged section at a stable and low speed.
3. Do not park your car in water, nor reverse or turn off the engine.
4. After passing the waterlogged section, slightly step on the brake pedal for several times to evaporate water on the braking disc, so as to recover braking performance as soon as possible.

Important Tips for Driving in Winter

1. Make sure the anti-freezing solution works well.

- Use the coolant solution of the same model as the originally used, and select suitable coolant solution according to the environment temperature and add it to the cooling system.

- The engine can be damaged by unsuitable coolant solution.

2. Check the conditions of battery and cable.

- Battery energy may decrease in cold weather, so that sufficient energy shall be reserved for starting in winter.

3. Prevent the door lock from being frozen by ice and snow.

4. Spray deicing agent or glycerin into keyhole to avoid freezing.

5. Use detergent containing anti-freezing agent.

- These products are available in GAC MOTOR dealers.

- The mixing ratio between water and anti-freezing agent shall be based on the manufacturer's instructions.

6. There shall be no ice or snow accumulated under the mudflap.

- Accumulated ice or snow under the mudflap causes hard steering. In winter, stop the car frequently to check if there is accumulated ice or snow under the mudflap.

7. Based on different road conditions, it is recommended that necessary emergency tools or articles should be carried.

- It would be better to place tire chain, window scraper, a bag of sand or salt, signal flasher, scoop, connecting cable and other necessary articles in the car.

5.6.4 Efficient Use of the Car

- Maintain the correct tire pressure. Insufficient tire pressure will result in tire wear and fuel waste. Tire pressure parameters => Refer to Page 454
- Make sure wheels are accurately positioned. Inaccurate positioning makes the tires wear out faster, increases engine load and wastes fuel.
- Do not make your car under over-load. Excessive weight increases engine load, wasting fuel.
- Accelerate slowly and steadily. Avoid emergency starting. Try to drive in a higher gear as soon as possible.
- Avoid areas with dense traffic or traffic jam as much as possible to prevent continuous acceleration and deceleration, because stop-and-go driving mode wastes fuel.
- Avoid unnecessary parking and braking and keep a stable speed. Driving according to traffic signals helps avoid frequent stop. Or choose thoroughfares without traffic lights. Keep appropriate distances with other cars to avoid emergency braking. This helps reduce brake wear.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal. This will cause early wear or overheating of braking pad and fuel waste.
- Avoid hitting road shoulder while driving. Slow down when driving on uneven roads.
- Avoiding mud or other foreign matters stuck on chassis helps reduce car weight and prevent corrosion.
- Regularly maintain your car to keep it in its best working condition. Dirty air filter, unclean spark plug, and polluted engine oil and grease will degrade engine performance and waste fuel. To extend the service life of all components and reduce operating costs, be sure to perform regular maintenance. Maintain your car more frequently if you often drive under bad conditions.

Fuel-saving Driving

Fuel-saving driving can not only save fuel but also protect environment.

- Drive slowly for several minutes after starting at low temperature, and then accelerate after the engine warms.
- Unload unnecessary items before driving.
- Keep proper tire pressure.
- Try to drive on good roads.
- Avoid rapid acceleration. Depress the accelerator pedal gently. Do not depress the pedals hard for start or stop.
- Do not open windows when driving at high speed.
- Use the AC, audio system and other devices properly.
- Turn off all unnecessary electric appliances.
- Shut off the engine for long-time parking and prevent it from long-time running at idle speed.
- Drive on flat roads at economic speed.
- Always drive in an appropriate gear based on the running speed. Do not drive at high speed in low gear.
- Perform regular maintenance according to instructions.

5.6.5 Fire Prevention

In order to prevent car fire, the following notices shall be kept in mind:

1. Flammables and explosives shall not be stored in your car;

- In hot summer, the internal temperature of car parking in the sun can reach higher than 70 °C. If there is lighter, detergent, perfume, and other flammables and explosives in your car, it is very easy to cause fire or even explosion.

2. After smoking, make sure that the cigarette is put out completely;

- Cigarette not put out completely may cause fire.

3. It is recommended to go to your GAC MOTOR dealer for regular check;

- Regularly check the circuits of the whole car to make sure connectors, insulation and fixing positions of all electric appliances and harnesses are in good condition. Once problems are found, troubleshoot timely.

4. Refitting the car circuits or adding electrical components is prohibited;

- Adding other electric appliances (e.g. high-power audio device and xenon headlights) will overload the circuit, and the harness will be prone to heat and cause fire.

- It is strictly prohibited to use fuse out of the rated specifications of electric appliance, or use other metal wire to substitute fuse.

5. Precautions for driving;

- For parking, especially in summer, be sure to check whether flammables exist under your car, such as hay, deadwood, leaves, or wheat straw, because the temperature of engine or other components increase after long-time running, and flammables under the car may cause fire.

- When driving, try to avoid the road with stacking leaves, wheat straw, weed or other flammables, or timely stop and check whether such inflammables are caught on car bottom after passing through. Avoid parking in places exposed to direct sunlight.

6. Portable fire extinguisher shall always be kept on your car, and you should know how to use it;

- In order to guarantee safety, fire extinguisher shall be kept on your car and also be checked and replaced periodically. You should know how to use a fire extinguisher, so as to be prepared for accident.

7. During maintenance, disconnect the negative wire of battery;

8. Please use the cigarette lighter provided on this car. Do not use inverter to take electricity from cigarette lighter.

6.1. Maintenance Instructions

Safety Precautions

To avoid potential hazards, please read this chapter and make sure you have tools and technology required before maintenance.

- Make sure your car is parked on level ground, the engine is off, and the parking brake is applied.
- Use commercially available degreasant or detergent to clean parts and do not use gasoline.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.
- Wear goggles and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

⚠ Warning

Driving after incorrect maintenance or before elimination of problems may cause traffic accidents and lead to severe injury or death.

Potential Hazards

- Carbon monoxide: Carbon monoxide from engine exhaust is poisonous. Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- Scald: The engine and exhaust system will produce high temperature when working, which is very easy to cause scald. Therefore, do not touch any components until the engine has been stopped for at least 30 minutes and the engine and exhaust system has cooled down.

Caution

Some of the most important safety precautions are given in this chapter. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can be raised in maintenance.

6.2 Interior Maintenance

Cleaning and Maintaining the Instrument and Plastic Parts

Clean the surfaces of the instrument and plastic parts with a clean soft cloth and fresh water.

Otherwise, use special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent to clean them.

Caution

Cleaning agent with solvent may damage the plastic parts.

Warning

Do not use any driver's compartment spray or cleaning agent with solvent to clean the surfaces of the instrument panel and airbag module. Doing so could loosen the surfaces and trigger the airbags, resulting in serious personal injury.

Cleaning and Maintaining the Carpet

Remove dust on the carpet with a vacuum cleaner regularly. Scrub the carpet with detergent regularly to keep it clean.

Caution

Follow the instructions of the detergent to do the cleaning work.

Warning

It is strictly forbidden to add water into foam-type cleaner. Make sure that the carpet is dry.

Cleaning and Maintaining the Leather *

– Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather.

– Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with clear water.

– Then, buff it with a clean and dry cloth.

– If further cleaning is needed, use special saddle soap or detergent to clean it.

Caution

After you wipe the leather with special detergent, dry it as soon as possible with a soft and dry cloth.

Warning

Do not place soft cloth soaked with detergent on any interior parts for a long time, to avoid discoloration or breakage to the resin or fiber of the interior braided fabrics.

Cleaning and Maintaining the Seat Belts

– Pull out each belt slowly and hold it there.

– Use a soft brush and neutral soap water to clean dirt.

– Let the seat belts dry completely before retracting them.

Caution

- Do not retract the seat belts until they are completely dry. Otherwise, the seat belt retractor may be damaged.
- Check all seat belts in the car regularly and keep them clean to ensure their proper operation.

⚠ Warning

- **Please contact GAC MOTOR dealer for replacement as soon as possible in case of any damage to the base, connection unit, retractor or buckle of the seat belt.**
- **Whether damage or not, be sure to replace the seat belts after a collision.**
- **When replacing the belt, be sure to use a new belt of the same model and structure.**
- **Prevent foreign matters or liquids from entering the seat belt buckles. Failure to do so can cause the buckles and the belts to function abnormally.**
- **Do not remove or transform the belts in any case by yourself.**
- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents to clean the seat belts to avoid damaging the seat belt base, thus affecting its function.**

Cleaning and Replacing Filters

The vehicle is equipped with air filter, air conditioner filter, oil filter and fuel filter, which play a role in filtering gas or oil. If the filter is too dirty or blocked, the normal work of the corresponding system will be influenced, so it is recommended that the user should go to GAC MOTOR dealer periodically to clean or replace the filter according to the provisions of the Warranty Manual.

6.3 Exterior Maintenance

Vehicle Washing

Frequent washing helps preserve your car's appearance.

Wash your car in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If your vehicle is exposed to the sun for a long time, wait until the exterior cools down before washing.

Follow the instructions of the operator when using an automatic car washer.

⚠ Warning

Switch the Start switch off before washing the vehicle.

Caution

- Although the body paint is strong enough to withstand the flushing from the automatic car washer, pay attention to its impact on the paint. The washer structure, used cleaner, filtration state of fresh water, and type of wax solvent which do not meet the specified requirements are likely to damage the paint.
- If the brake is dampened or even frozen after being washed, the braking efficiency will be reduced to some extent. After washing, try to avoid sudden brake to prevent traffic accidents.

Manual Washing

– Rinse the car thoroughly with clean water to remove floating dust.

– Prepare a bucket of clear water and mix the water with special washing cleaner.

– Wash the car gently with soft cloth, sponge or a bristle brush and rinse it from top to bottom frequently.

– Finally, rinse the wheels, doorsills and others. Remember to replace the sponge or soft cloth during washing.

– Then rinse the car thoroughly with a plenty of water.

– After that, dry it with a chamois or soft towel carefully.

Caution

If there is asphalt or other dirt on the car body, special cleaner needs to be used. Then rinse the body with water to avoid damage to the finish. As drying the car, check it for chips and scratches. In case of any, go to GAC MOTOR dealer for repair.

Extra care must be paid when washing the car with a high-pressure washer. Follow the instructions and requirements of the high-pressure washer when doing so. Pay particular attention to the operating pressure and the spray rinsing distance.

Warning

Water, ice and anti-skid salt in the brake system can cause reaction retardation of the brakes, resulting in a longer braking distance which is likely to lead to accidents.

- **If the vehicle has just been washed, try to avoid emergency braking.**
- **Press the brake pedal gently to test the brake before driving.**
- **Try to avoid braking before removing the ice or anti-skid salt attached to the brake. Apply the brake with extra care to avoid traffic accidents.**

Warning

- **Make sure that you have carefully read and followed relevant instructions and warnings before operation.**
- **Pay attention to personal safety and avoid being scratched by angular parts under the bottom of the car during manual washing.**
- **Pay special attention to the bottom of the car and the inside part of the wheel cover during washing and prevent your hand and arm from being hurt by sharp parts.**
- **Do not directly spray water into the engine compartment when washing the car. Otherwise, the service life of parts in the engine compartment may be affected.**

Waxing

Regular waxing helps protect car body's paint and keep the body bright and clean. In order to protect body paint surface, it is suggested to apply high quality hard wax every year to protect the paint surface from being corroded due to poor environment and withstand light mechanical scratch.

The waxing operation must be executed after the surface of the whole car is wiped dry. High quality paint protective wax shall be used. In general, there are two types of products:

- Body wax: A wax coats the finish and protects it from the damage by exposure to sunlight, air pollution, and other poor external environment. It always applies to new cars.
- Polishing wax: Polishing wax can restore the luster of oxidized paint or the paint without gloss. It is mainly used to restore the luster of paint.

Caution

Do not polish your car in a dusty environment.

Cleaning and Maintaining the External Plastic Parts

In general, clean the external plastic parts with fresh water, soft cloth and bristle brush. If further cleaning is needed, use the special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent recommended by GAC MOTOR.

Caution

Do not use any cleaning agent with solvent to clean the plastic parts. Doing so can cause damage to the plastic parts.

Cleaning the Windows and Rear-View Mirrors

Clean the window glass and rear-view mirrors with alcoholic glass cleaner, and then dry glass surface with a clean, lint-free, soft cloth or chamois towel.

Caution

Do not wipe off the windows and rear-view mirrors with the chamois towel which has been used to clean the paint. The residual wax on the chamois towel may blur the glass surface.

If there is any residual rubber, grease or silicone on the glass, remove it with a special window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

After maintaining the car body surface, the wax remaining on the glass shall be removed by special cleanser and cleaning cloth, so as to prevent scratching the windscreen wiper.

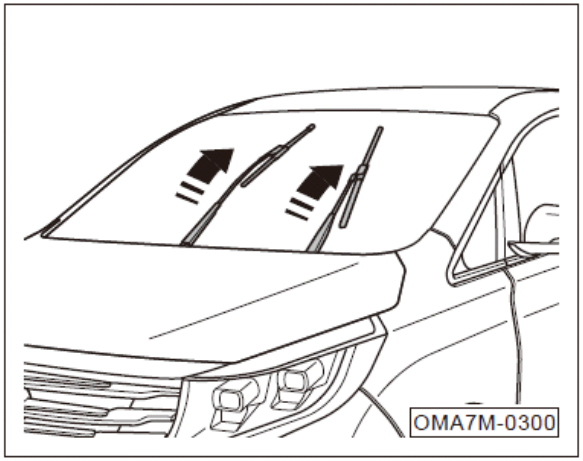
Remove the snow on the windows and rear-view mirrors with a bristle brush.

Remove ice using the special deicing spray. You can also remove the ice using the scraper with extra care to avoid damage to the components. Be sure to scrape the ice in the same direction.

Caution

- Do not scrape the ice back and forth.
- Do not use warm or hot water to remove the ice and snow on the windows and rear-view mirrors. Doing so may crack the glass.

Cleaning the Front Wiper Blades



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position, and then to “OFF” position.

– Within 10s after finishing the last step, move the combination switch of wiper to MIST gear, then the wiper arm will move for half circle.

– Lift the wiper arm and carefully remove the dust and dirt from the wiper blade with a soft cloth.

– Carefully lower the wiper arm back to the windshield when the cleaning is finished.

– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position, making the wiper arm back to its original position automatically.

Caution

- When lifting the wiper arm, grasp the hard support by hand, and do not grasp soft wiper blade.
- Carefully lower the wiper arm to prevent striking the windscreen due to instantaneous drop.

Caution

- Replace the damaged blade in time.
- A new wiper blade surface is coated with a layer of graphite which can make the wiper blade move smoothly without scratching noise. Damaged graphite layer may increase scratching noises. Be sure to repair it timely.
- Cleaner with solvent, hard sponge and sharp tools will damage the graphite layer.
- In winter or cold weather, check whether the wiper blades are frozen with the windshield before operating them. If so, remove the ice from the wiper blades firstly. Failure to do so may cause damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor.

Maintaining the Sealing Strips

Frequent and appropriate protection of the rubber sealing strips for the doors, windows and other parts can maintain their flexibility and prolong their service life. Such action can improve the leakproofness, making the doors easier to open and reducing the closing sound. It also makes the sealing strips not easy to be frozen in winter.

When maintaining the sealing strip, use soft cloth to remove the surface dust and dirt. Apply the special protective agent to the rubber sealing strips regularly.

Cleaning and Maintaining the Wheels:

Regular wheel maintenance can keep the wheel artistic, and periodically removing the antiskid salt and brake lining abrasive dust on the wheel can maintain the surface smoothness of the wheel and increase the service life. In order to protect your car, it is suggested that the following operations should be executed periodically:

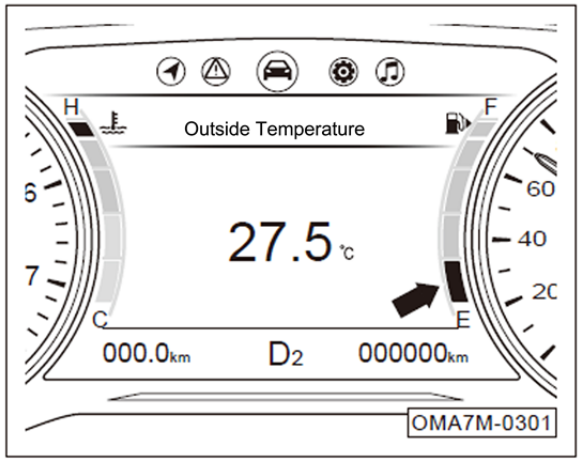
- Use acid-free cleanser to remove the antiskid salt and brake lining abrasive dust on the wheel every two weeks.
- Apply the alloy wheels with high-quality hard wax every three months.

Caution

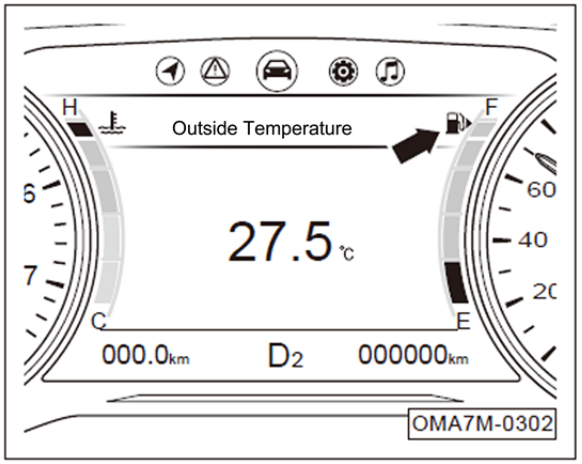
- Be sure to clean the alloy wheels with acid-free cleaner.
- Do not clean the wheel surface with polishing agent or other grinding agents.
- If the protective layer of the wheel is damaged, be sure to repair it in time.
- The high-pressure washer may cause permanent visible or invisible damage to the wheels, resulting serious injury or death.
- Never spray the tires with a cluster nozzle. Even a short-time long-distance cleaning may cause damage to the tires, causing traffic accidents.

6.4 Checking and Adding Fluids

6.4.1 Fuel Oil

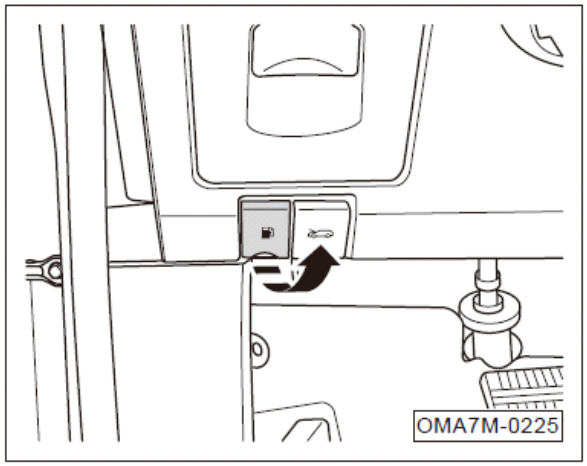


The scale of the fuel gauge (see the arrow) will decrease gradually with the decrease of fuel oil during the traveling process.

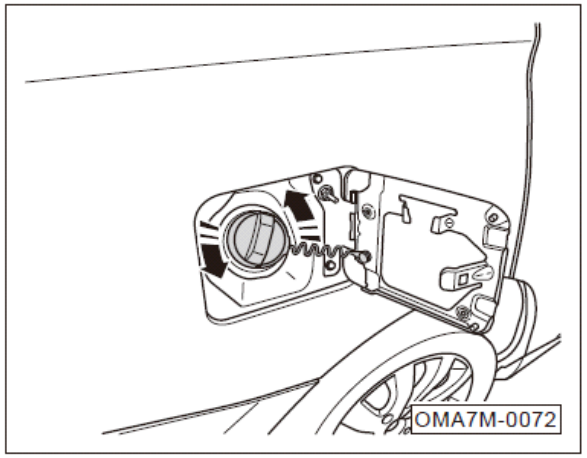


The low fuel indicator light (yellow) (see the arrow) will flash when the fuel level is too low. Then it is required to add fuel as soon as possible.

Filling the Fuel



– In the direction of arrow, pull the fuel tank lid release handle that is located below the instrument panel on the driver side, and then the fuel tank lid will spring up.



– Fully open the fuel tank lid, slowly screw out the filler cap anticlockwise in the direction of arrow, hold the filler cap at the original position for a moment when fully screwing out to allow the fuel tank to release the internal fuel vapor pressure, and then take out the filler cap.

– Hang the filler cap inside the fuel tank lid, and start adding fuel oil.

– When finishing adding fuel oil, screw the filler cap clockwise until you hear three "clicks", which indicates the filler cap is fully tightened.

Hint

Please refer to the description on the fuel requirement lable at the fuel filler door of each vehicle.

Warning

- **When the weather is dry, static electricity is liable to be produced, so release the static electricity on your body before opening the filler cap to prevent the spark generated by static electricity from igniting the fuel vapor.**
- **The fuel oil is highly flammable. Therefore, igniting, naked flame or smoking is strictly prohibited when fuel oil is filling.**
- **Do not let the fuel oil contact skin or clothes. Skin directly contacting fuel oil or inhaling fuel fog will be harmful to health. If fuel oil sticks on the skin negligently, immediately wash with water.**

Caution

Using fuel oil with lower grade or not meeting the standard may damage the engine or may not satisfy the performance requirements.

Warning

Do not add diesel oil for gasoline engine vehicle. Do not mix diesel oil into gasoline. This will damage the fuel system and engine, and may cause fire.

6.4.2 Engine Oil

Function of Engine Oil

Engine oil contributes to engine's lubrication, sealing, cooling, anti-corrosion, cleaning, etc.

Engine Oil Specification

High-quality engine oil, which can be used throughout the year, except for extreme cold weather, has been filled into the engine when the vehicle is delivered.

Check whether the specifications of the oil are applicable to your engine when purchasing.

Hint

- Engine oil specification: SN class and above
- Engine oil viscosity: SAE 5W-30

Warning

- **Be sure to use the engine oil applicable to the engine of your vehicle.**
- **Using the engine oil of other specifications may damage the engine and cause accidents.**

Oil Pressure Warning Light

After the engine starts, if the warning light is on (=> Refer to Page 48), and meanwhile the system gives out three audible alarms, the instrument cluster display screen will also display corresponding text message to prompt or warn the driver. At the moment, immediately turn off the engine. After the engine cools, inspect the engine oil level, and add engine oil if necessary.

If the engine oil level is normal but the warning light is still on, do not continue driving, nor allow the engine to idle; contact GAC MOTOR dealer as soon as possible to inspect your car.

Warning

Ignoring the oil pressure warning light and the relevant warnings can damage the engine thus causing serious accidents.

Hint

The oil pressure warning light cannot indicate the engine oil level. Be sure to check the oil level regularly. You'd better check the oil level before driving.

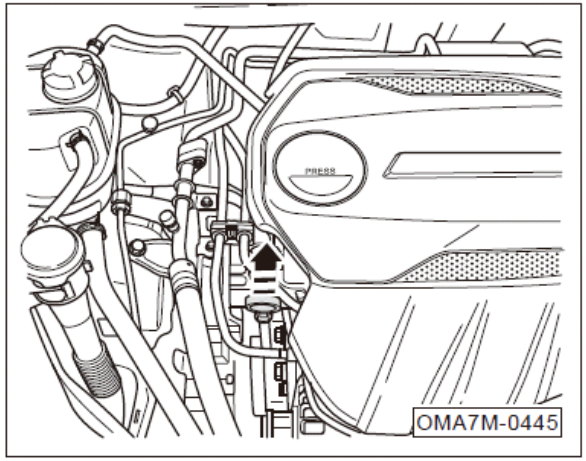
Checking Engine Oil Level

All engines will consume a certain amount of engine oil. The oil consumption depends on driving mode and vehicle working conditions. Therefore, the engine oil level must be checked regularly.

When your vehicle is traveling on the expressway for a long distance in summer, or is traveling with drawbar trailer, or is climbing along the mountain road with the engine operating under severe conditions, the engine oil level shall not exceed the mark of upper limit.

Warning

- **Carefully read and fully follow relevant warnings before operation in engine compartment.**
- **The engine compartment is a high-risk area. Before opening the engine hood, please carefully read and comply with relevant warnings and instructions.**

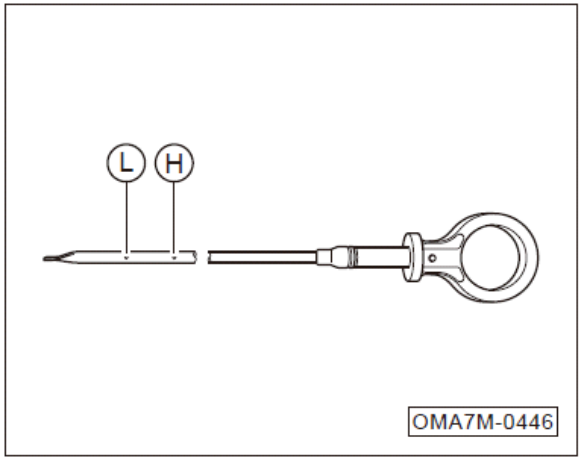


– Park your vehicle on a horizontal road and apply parking braking.

– Turn off the Start switch.

– Open the engine hood.

– After the engine cools down, pull out the engine oil dipstick in direction of the arrow.



– Wipe off the oil stains on the dipstick with a clean cloth. Then insert the dipstick all the way back into its hole.

– Pull out the engine oil dipstick again, read the measured oil level, and add engine oil according to the oil level.

- Point H is the engine oil upper limit mark.
- Point L is the engine oil lower limit mark.
- The oil level should be between the minimum mark and the maximum mark.

⚠ Warning

If the engine oil level should be inspected when the engine is hot, firstly turn off the engine and wait for several minutes until the engine oil fully flows back to the oil sump, and then inspect the engine oil level. The oil level can be checked immediately when the engine is in cooling condition.

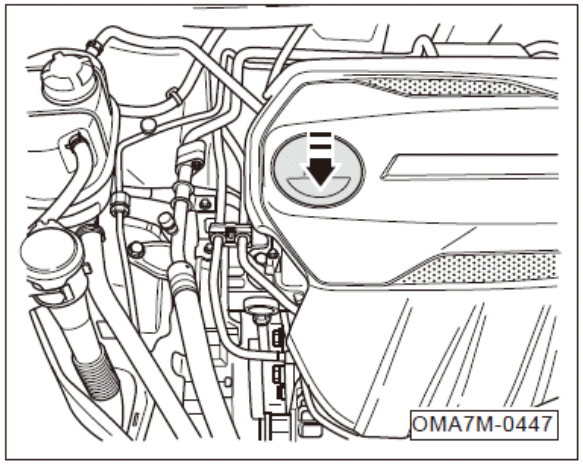
Caution

If the engine oil is insufficient, please timely add a proper amount of engine oil. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.

i Hint

The shape and color of engine oil dipstick for the vehicle you purchase may be different with those of the engine oil dipstick shown in the figure, but the oil level mark on the engine oil dipstick as shown in the figure applies to the engine oil dipstick of all vehicle models.

Add the Engine Oil

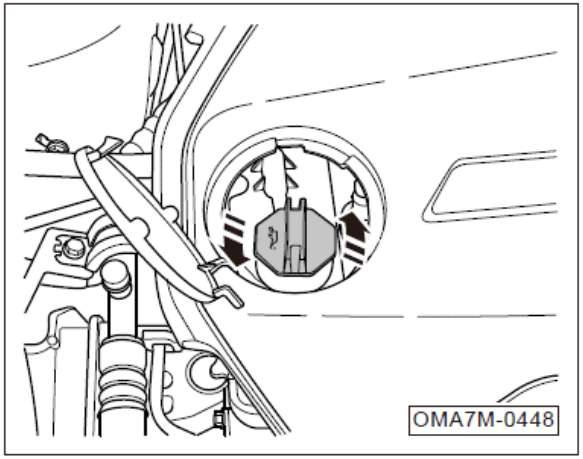


– Park your vehicle on a horizontal road and apply parking braking.

– Turn off the Start switch.

– Open the engine hood.

– After the engine cools down, press the engine oil filler cap cover along the direction of arrow to open it.



– Screw out the oil filling cap clockwise in direction of the arrow.

– Fill engine oil into the filler repeatedly by small amount, and check the engine oil level after each filling.

– When the oil level is close to the upper limit mark, i.e. the engine oil is sufficient, stop adding oil, assemble the filler cap and tighten clockwise.

⚠ Warning

- **Engine oil is a type of highly combustible material. Be careful to add the engine oil and do not sprinkle the engine oil onto the scorching hot engine parts or exhaust system piping.**
- **If too much engine oil is filled, please do not start the engine, and contact GAC MOTOR dealer for treatment as soon as possible. Otherwise, the three-way catalytic converter may be damaged.**
- **After the filling is completed, the engine oil filler cap must always be tightened, so as to prevent the engine oil from spilling when the engine is operating and avoid fire.**

Replace Engine Oil

Replace the engine oil as per the intervals specified in the Warranty Manual. Replace the engine oil at GAC MOTOR dealer.

If the vehicle is used under severe conditions, or fuel oil with higher sulfur content is used, or short-distance traveling frequently occurs, or the vehicle will idle for a long time (e.g. taxi), or the vehicle will travel in high dust area, or the vehicle will frequently travel with drawbar trailer, or the vehicle will be used in high and cold area, increase the number of maintenance times or reduce the maintenance period of several maintenance items between periodic maintenances.

⚠ Warning

Never replace the engine oil by yourself unless you have relevant expertise.

- **Be sure to operate after the engine cools down, so as to prevent scald by high temperature engine oil.**
- **To prevent engine oil from getting into your eyes, be sure to wear goggles when replacing the engine oil.**
- **When unscrewing the oil drain plug, be sure to place your arm horizontally to prevent the oil from flowing along it.**
- **If the engine oil splashes on the skin, rinse it thoroughly.**
- **Put the used oil into a special container which is large enough to contain all used oil.**
- **Do not store the used oil in a food container or any other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning.**
- **As engine oil is toxic, please first put it on a safe place to prevent children from touching it before disposing it.**

Caution

- Add no lubricant into engine oil; otherwise, the engine may be damaged. Any fault caused by addition of lubricant isn't included in quality guarantee.
- Disposing the used oil is a highly specialized work, requiring relevant expertise and necessary tools. Therefore, it is suggested to dispose the used engine oil by GAC MOTOR dealer.
- Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment and water source, so do not discard it in a sewer line or dump it on the ground. In addition, the cost for treating the soil absorbing the waste engine oil is very high.

6.4.3 Coolant

Function of Coolant

The coolant possesses cooling, anti-freezing, and anti-corrosion functions.

Specification of Coolant

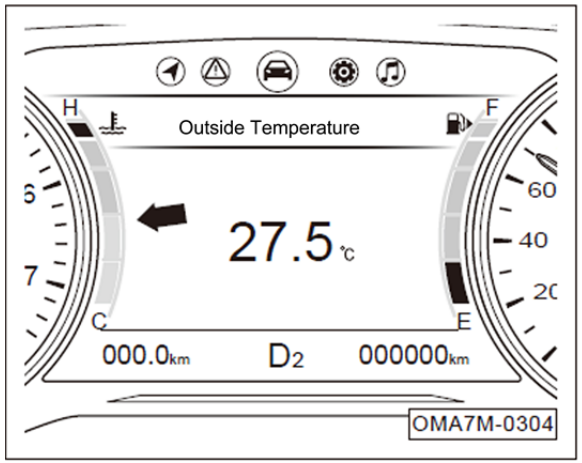
When delivery, the cooling system of this car has been added with coolant and the car has an anti-freezing ability of -35℃. The coolant can be used throughout the year except for extreme cold weather, prevent the alloy components of cooling system from corrosion and the system from scaling and increase the boiling point of the coolant.

If the anti-freezing ability of coolant needs to be enhanced during severe cold seasons, the proportion of coolant additive can be increased appropriately, but the coolant concentration must not exceed 65%. Otherwise the anti-freezing ability of coolant may decrease, thus weakening the cooling effect.

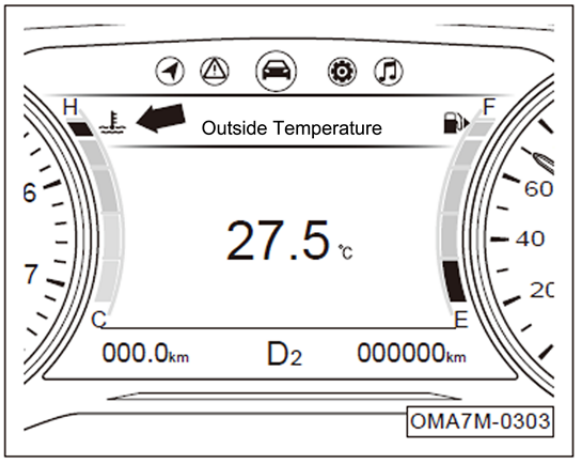
Hint

Specification of coolant: DF-6, -35℃ coolant.

Engine Coolant Temperature Too High



Under normal driving conditions, the scale lighting on the temperature gauge of engine coolant on the instrument cluster shall be approximately at the middle position (2~3 sections). When the engine runs at heavy load and the ambient temperature is high, the coolant temperature may rise and the scale reading may increase.



If the coolant temperature is too high, the warning light (🌡) (red) (see the arrow) on the instrument cluster will be on immediately to prompt or warn the driver. At the moment, immediately stop the car and turn off the engine; after the engine cools, inspect the coolant level.

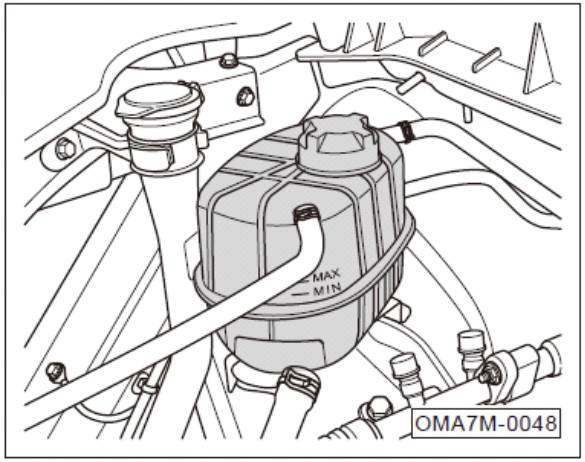
If the coolant level is normal, the system overheating may be caused by the failure of radiation fan. Inspect whether the fuse of the radiation fan fuses, and replace the fuse as the case may be. =>Refer to Page 466

If the warning light is on again when you have driven for a short distance after the fuse is replaced, immediately stop your vehicle, turn off the engine, and contact GAC MOTOR dealer.

⚠ Warning

- **Carefully read and fully follow relevant warnings before operation in engine compartment.**
- **The engine compartment is a high-risk area. Before opening the engine hood, please carefully read and comply with relevant warnings and instructions.**
- **If it is observed that steam or coolant spills from the engine compartment, do not open the engine hood to avoid scald. Open the engine hood after there is no steam or coolant spilling from the engine compartment.**

Checking the Coolant Level



– Park the car on level road.

– Turn off the engine, and wait until the engine cools down.

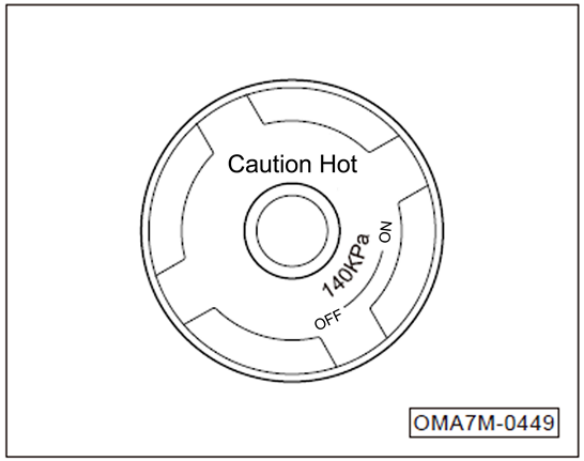
– Open the engine hood, and inspect whether the liquid level in the expansion tank is within the scope of marker line on the side.

- "MAX" refers to the upper limit mark of coolant.
- "MIN" refers to the lower limit mark of coolant.
- The coolant level should be between the upper and lower limit marks and close to the upper one.
- If the coolant level is lower than the "MIN" mark, add coolant.

Caution

- Whether the coolant level is normal or not is crucial to the proper operation of the engine cooling system.
- In order to correctly inspect the coolant level, the vehicle shall be parked on level road and the engine shall be at cold status.

Adding Coolant



After inspecting the coolant level, add coolant if necessary in the following steps:

– Wrap the expansion tank cover with a large and thick cloth and carefully screw it out anticlockwise.

– Slowly add coolant to make the coolant level reach the scope of marker line on the side of expansion tank.

– Install and tighten the expansion tank cover clockwise.

Caution

- Please firstly inspect the level before adding coolant, and get ready according to the inspection requirements.
- When the engine is in warm or hot condition, the cooling system has high pressure. At this moment, never open the coolant expansion tank cover. Doing so may cause scalding by steam.
- Each time when screwing the expansion tank cover, use cloth to wrap the cover to avoid scald.
- Add new coolant only and the discharged coolant cannot be reused.

Hint

When the engine is hot, the coolant level may exceed the MAX mark slightly.

Warning

- **The coolant must be stored in its original container. Keep both the coolant and the used coolant out of the reach of children.**
- **Do not store the coolant in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning.**
- **Make sure the anti-freezing capability of the coolant is sufficient in cold weather. Add enough DF-6 coolant based on the environment temperature. Otherwise, the coolant may be frozen, resulting in breakdown of the vehicle. In addition, the driver and passengers will be exposed to severe cold due to the disabled heating system.**

Caution

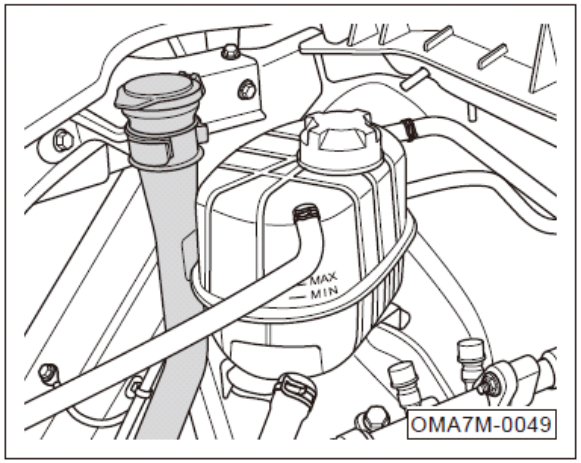
- Do not mix the original coolant with other unrecognized coolant. Otherwise, the engine may be seriously damaged.
- If the coolant is needed to be added, only add new coolant. The coolant must meet the provisions of this Manual; do not add other types of coolant even if no DF-6 coolant can be purchased temporarily. If necessary, add pure water temporarily. But, to restore the normal concentration, you must add the recommended coolant as required as soon as possible.
- If the coolant in the coolant expansion tank discolors, and no coolant of other color mixes, replace the coolant periodically according to the requirements of the Warranty Manual.

Caution

- Do not add coolant until the engine cools down. After adding coolant, make sure the coolant level is at or below the MAX mark. Otherwise, the excessive coolant will spill out of the cooling system when the engine becomes hot.
- If a large amount of coolant is consumed, add cold coolant after the engine cools down; otherwise, the engine may be damaged. Great loss of coolant implies a leakage failure in the cooling system. Go to GAC MOTOR dealer to inspect the cooling system as soon as possible, so as to avoid damaging the engine.
- Collect and dispose the used coolant in accordance with environmental protection laws and regulations.

6.4.4 Windshield Washing Liquid and Wiper Blade

Adding Windshield Washing Liquid



Windshield cleaning device will have its washing liquid supplied by the washing fluid tank in the engine compartment. Each time before using the washing liquid, if the washing liquid level is found to be too low, timely add washing liquid into the washing liquid tank.

Pure water is difficult to completely clean the windshield, so washing liquid additive accepted by GAC MOTOR must be added into the pure water; please prepare the washing liquid according to the proportion specified in the outer packing of additive.

⚠ Warning

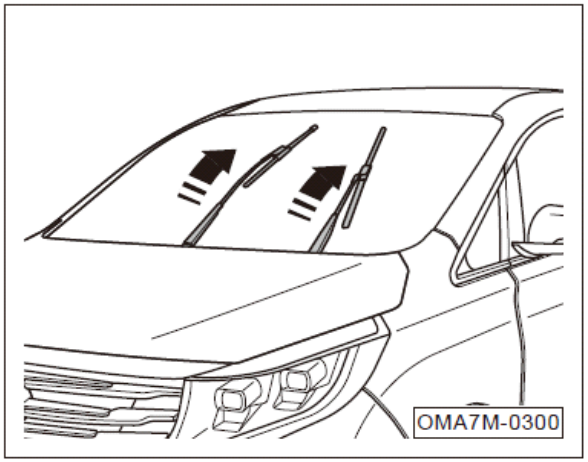
Carefully read and fully follow relevant warnings before operation in engine compartment.

- **Before operation, carefully read and comply with relevant safety warnings and instructions.**
- **Windshield washing liquid shall not be added with coolant or any other additive. Otherwise, oil stain may remain on the windshield when cleaning, which may seriously influence the forward visibility, and is very easy to cause accident.**

Caution

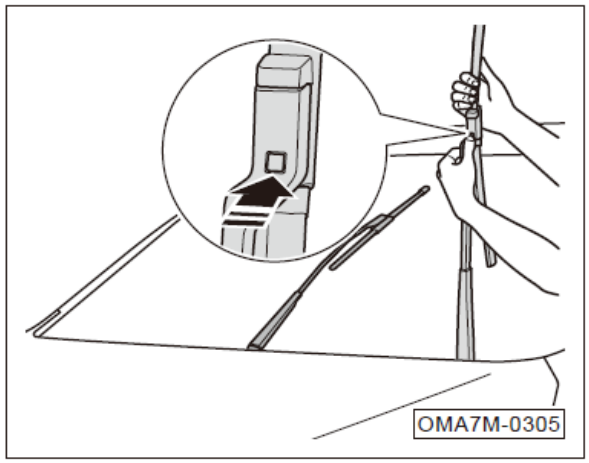
Do not mix the windshield washer fluid with other cleaning agents. Doing so may cause the washer fluid to be decomposed, blocking the windshield washer nozzle.

Replacing Front Windshield Wiper Blade



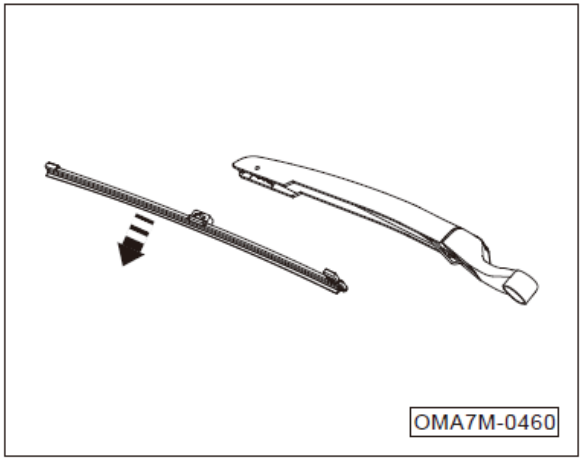
– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position, and then to “OFF” position.

– Within 10s after finishing the last step, move the wiper combination switch to MIST gear. By this time, the wiper arm will move for half circle.



– Raise the wiper arm and press the locking button (see the arrow) to disassemble the wiper blade.
– Slowly lower the wiper arm.
– Place a new wiper blade back to the wiper arm in reverse steps until hearing a “click” sound.
– Carefully lower the wiper arm back to the windshield.
– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position, making the wiper arm back to its original position automatically.

Replacing Rear Windshield Wiper Blade



– Within 10s since the Start switch is set to "OFF", turn the rear wiper knob to ON and then quickly return the wiper to initial position, the rear wipers move to the highest positions and then stop.
– Raise the wiper arm and press the wiper blade in the direction of arrow to disassemble the wiper blade.
– Place a new wiper blade back to the wiper arm in reverse steps until hearing a “click” sound.
– Carefully lower the wiper arm back to the windshield.
– Switch the Start switch to “ON” position, making the wiper arm back to its original position automatically.

It is recommended to replace your wiper blade at GAC MOTOR dealer when necessary.

Caution

- When lifting the wiper arm, grasp the wiper arm with hand, and do not grasp the soft wiper blade.
- Be sure to use new wiper blade with the same length and specification.
- Carefully lower the wiper arm to prevent striking the windscreen due to instantaneous drop.
- Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly, and replace them as required. Timely replace the damaged wiper blade.
- Seriously worn or dirty wiper blade is very easy to scratch the windscreen, and will influence the forward visibility and reduce the driving safety during use.

6.4.5 Brake Fluid

Function of Brake Fluid

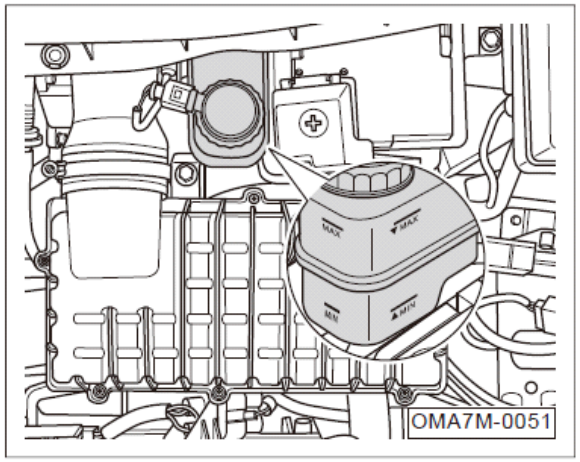
The brake fluid is used to transfer power in the hydraulic brake system.

Check the brake fluid level or replace the brake fluid regularly as per the Warranty Manual.

Hint

Specification of brake fluid: DOT4 synthetic brake fluid.

Inspecting the Brake Fluid Level



– Check whether the brake fluid level is between the MAX and MIN marks on the side of the tank when the engine cools down.

- "MAX" refers to the upper limit mark of brake fluid.
- "MIN" refers to the lower limit mark of brake fluid.
- The brake fluid level should be between the MAX and MIN marks.

– If the liquid level is lower than the "MIN" mark, add the brake fluid.

During the using of your vehicle, the system will automatically adjust the brake fluid level due to the wear of braking pad, causing slight decrease of brake fluid level, which is a normal phenomenon and requires no worry.

If the liquid level decreases obviously or decreases below the "MIN" mark within a short time, the braking system may leak. In this case, immediately stop the car (do not continue driving), and contact GAC MOTOR dealer as soon as possible to inspect the braking system.

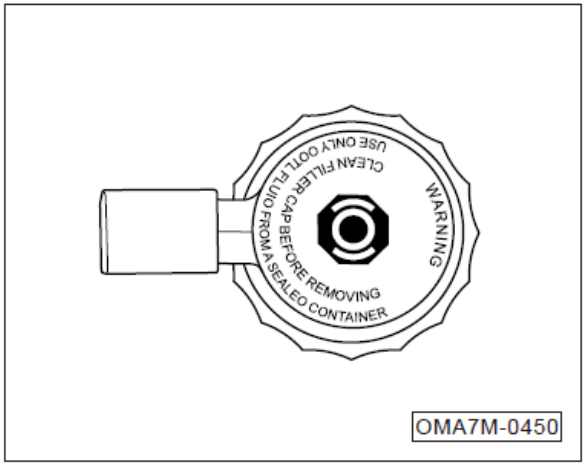
Hint

If the brake fluid storage tank is blocked by other parts in the engine compartment, preventing inspection of the brake fluid level directly, go to GAC MOTOR dealer.

⚠ Warning

- **Read and follow the warnings and instructions before opening the engine hood.**
- **If the warning light of brake system is constantly on or turns on during traveling, the brake fluid level in the tank may be too low. In this case, immediately stop the car to prevent accident. Do not continue driving. Please contact GAC MOTOR dealer for inspecting the system as soon as possible.**

Replacing Brake Fluid



Replace the brake fluid with standard one at GAC MOTOR dealer to ensure normal operation of the brake system.

The brake fluid is water-absorbing. It can absorb moisture from the air around constantly in the process of usage. Excessive moisture content in the brake fluid will corrode the brake system, greatly reduce the boiling point of the brake fluid and reduce the braking effect.

Caution

The brake fluid is corrosive to the body paint. If you get brake fluid on the body paint, wipe it off timely.

Hint

Collect and dispose the used brake fluid in accordance with environmental protection laws and regulations.

⚠ Warning

Using waste brake fluid or brake fluid not suitable for this vehicle will greatly decrease the braking effect, or even cause failure of the brake system.

- **The brake fluid container is labeled with the specifications. Always use the brake fluid with correct specifications.**
- **The brake fluid is toxic.**
- **Do not store the brake fluid in a food container or any other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning. Store the brake fluid in its original sealed container and put it in a safe place. Keep the container away from children to avoid poisoning accidents.**

⚠ Warning

- **Brake fluid must be replaced according to the schedule specified in the Warranty Manual, because if the brake fluid stays inside the system for a long time, air lock will be produced inside the pipeline of braking system. In this case, it will reduce brake effect and driving safety, and even cause complete failure of the braking system and accidents.**

6.4.6 Battery

Alert Symbols and Descriptions of Battery Operation

	Always wear goggles when operating!
	The electrolyte of storage battery belongs to a strong corrosive material, so that protective gloves and goggles must be worn when operating!
	Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, naked lights and smoke.
	Highly explosive mixed gas will be generated when the battery is charged!
	Children must keep away from the electrolyte and vehicle battery!

Do not perform any operation on the electrical system unless you are familiar with the operational process and have proper equipment. Otherwise, let your GAC MOTOR dealer do this.

⚠ Warning

- **Before operation, carefully read and comply with relevant safety warnings and instructions about the operation of the battery.**
- **Do not perform operation on the battery unless you have enough expertise.**
- **Do not open the battery. Beware of chemical bums and battery explosion.**
- **Damaged or leaked battery isn't allowed to connect. It should be recycled and disposed according to laws and regulations of environmental protection.**
- **Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, naked lights and smoke. When operating the cables and electrical equipment, be sure to prevent sparks and static electricity. Do not allow the battery terminals to be short-circuited. Otherwise, high energy electric sparks from short circuit may injure operators.**

Charging system warning light

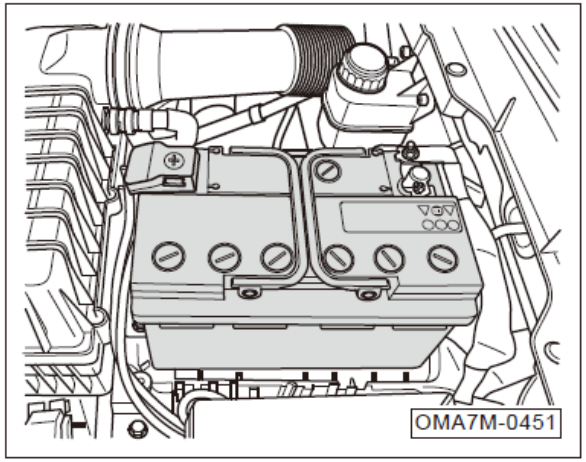
This warning light indicates the generator fault.

With the Start switch at "ON" position, the warning light ( ) of the charging system is on when the engine is not started and is off after the engine is started.

If the warning light comes on when the vehicle is moving, it indicates that the generator cannot charge the battery any more. Go to your GAC MOTOR dealer to have the car checked as soon as possible.

Checking Battery

Please regularly check the battery capacity when driving for a long distance or in hot areas or using the battery for a long time.



– Turn over the battery positive pole cover.

– Inspect the connection between battery joint and cable; in case of corrosion or looseness, go to GAC MOTOR dealer for treatment as soon as possible.

Charging Battery and Replacing Battery

If your vehicle is always driven for short distances or stored for a long time, perform more frequent checks for the battery than the specified maintenance intervals.

If the battery is damaged, its capacity will be insufficient, making it difficult to start the vehicle. In this case, we recommend you to have your GAC MOTOR dealer charge or replace the battery.

Charging the Battery

Battery charging requires relevant expertise and must be done in controllable environment, so it should be done by your GAC MOTOR dealer.

If the Start switch fails to turn off after the engine is shut down, the battery will discharge rapidly when any electrical equipment on the car is used.

1. Do not use any electrical equipment for an extended period after the engine is shut down.
2. When leaving the vehicle, be sure to close the doors tightly and turn off all the electrical equipment (e.g., lights, etc.)
3. If the engine cannot be started after electrical equipment is used, do not continuously start the engine but restart it after 5~10min. If the engine still cannot be started, please contact your GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance.

Replacing the Battery

The battery can meet the vehicle maintenance, performance and safety requirements.

Caution

- Battery shall be replaced with the one of the specified type or otherwise it will affect the normal operation of the Start/ Stop system. Please go to your GAC MOTOR dealer for replacement.
- To avoid damaging your vehicle's electrical system, do not connect the solar panels or battery charger and other power generation equipment to the 12V power outlet or cigarette lighter.
- As the battery contains toxic materials such as sulfuric acid and lead, dispose it carefully and don't take it just as a common household waste.

Hint

- With the battery reconnected to the electrical system of the vehicle, the warning light of electronic stability program (ESP) will be on.
- The warning light shall go out after the car travels at a speed of 15~20km/h for a short distance.

Caution

Whenever the battery is disconnected and re-connected, operation needs to be performed on adaptive learning of the Start/Stop system:

1. Turn off the Start switch and all in- vehicle electrical equipment, and keep the car still for more than 4h.
2. Start the vehicle for 3 times, and let it operate continuously for at least 1 minute each time.

6.5 A/C Filter

Checking and Cleaning Air Filter

Periodically inspect or clean the A/C filter according to the provisions of the Warranty Manual. When the vehicle is driven in dusty environment, the A/C filter may become very dirty and earlier replacement is recommended.

The A/C filter is located inside the glove box on the front passenger side. When disassembling the A/C filter, complex components shall be disassembled; in order to avoid unnecessary components damage, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealers to inspect, clean or replace the A/C filter.

6.6 Replacing Bulbs

Safe Operation Instructions for Replacing the Lights

Check the following lights:

1. Headlight (low beam and high beam)
2. Front/ rear position lights
3 Daytime running light
4. Brake light
5. Turn signal light
6. Side turn signal light
7. Reversing light
8. Hazard warning indicator light
9. Number plate light
10. High brake light
11. Front/ rear fog light
12. Interior lights

If you find any bulbs are burned out, replace them as soon as possible. Before replacing the bulb, be sure to check the relevant fuse. The blown fuse can cause the light failure. In addition, do the following:

1. Turn the relevant light switch to the OFF position.
2. Move the light combination switch control lever to the middle position.
3. Switch the Start switch to “OFF” position.

Caution

Only replace the burned-out bulb with a new one of the same specification. The bulb specification is generally marked on the bulb glass or the socket.

Bulb specification of this car =>Refer to Page 456

For example:

LL = long-lasting bulbs, with life longer than that of standard bulbs.

Blue = blue/ white bulbs, matching with the color of gas discharge lights (Xenon).

Procedure of Replacing Bulbs

When replacing any bulb, do not touch the glass with your fingers. Otherwise, the bulb heat may evaporate your fingerprint and make it condense on the bulb reflector, reducing the light illumination.

Check the light operating condition after replacement. After replacing light bulbs, go to GAC MOTOR dealer to inspect the light beam adjustment status.

Hint

Basically the same methods will be used for removing or installing the bulbs on the left and right sides, so that only the removing or installing for one side will be described herein.

Don not touch the bulb glass while removing/ installing a bulb.

Warning

Unless you have the expertise about the operational process, safe operation specifications and the tools, have your GAC MOTOR dealer replace the bulb.

- **Turn off the relevant switch and let the bulb cool down before replacing it.**
- **During operation, pay attention to the sharp components on the headlight housing and the combination taillight housing in engine compartment. Be sure to protect your hands from being scratched.**
- **Be cautious when operating the high voltage components of gas discharge bulb. The operation shall be correct. Otherwise casualty accident may be incurred. Consult your GAC MOTOR dealer for related information.**

Replacing the Front Combination Headlight

The high beam, low beam, position light and daytime running light are equipped with LED bulbs and cannot be replaced separately. Therefore, when the high beam, low beam, position light or daytime running light fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

Replacing Front Fog Light Bulb

Disassembling/assembling of bulbs is complex. Do not do it by yourself. Therefore, if the front fog light fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

Replacing Turn Signal Light on Rear-View Mirror Side

The turn signal light on rear-view mirror side uses LED bulb. Therefore, the turn signal light assembly on rear-view mirror side shall be replaced as a whole and replacing a single LED bulb is not allowed.

In case the turn signal light on rear-view mirror side fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

Replacing Rear Combination Light

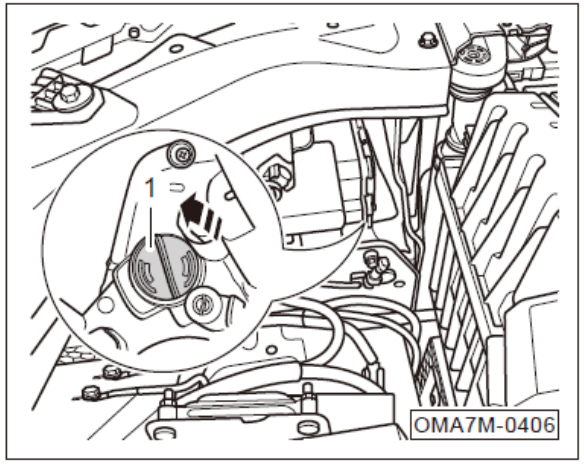
All LED rear combination light cannot be replaced separately. Therefore, when the rear turn signal light, brake light, rear position light or reversing light fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

Replacing Rear Fog Light Bulb

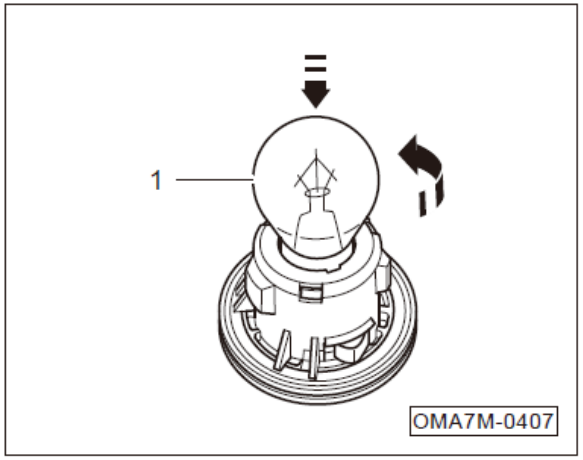
The rear fog light uses LED bulb. Therefore, the rear fog light assembly shall be replaced as a whole and replacing a single LED bulb is not allowed.

In case the rear fog light fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

Replacing Front Turn Signal Light Bulb



1. Turn off the Start switch.
2. Unscrew the front turn signal light's holder and bulb ①anticlockwise to remove them.



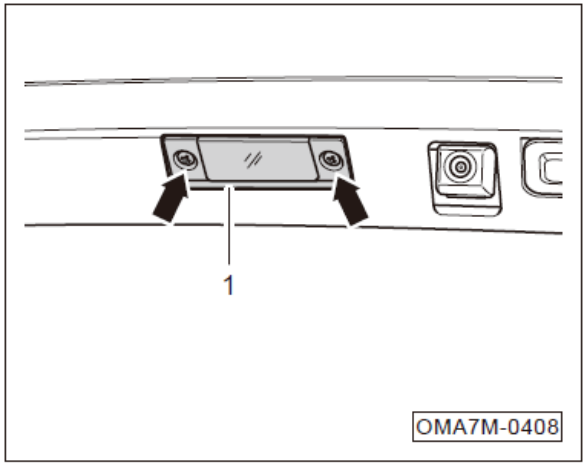
3. Press bulb ① and unscrew the front turn signal light's bulb ① anticlockwise to remove it.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Replacing High Brake Light

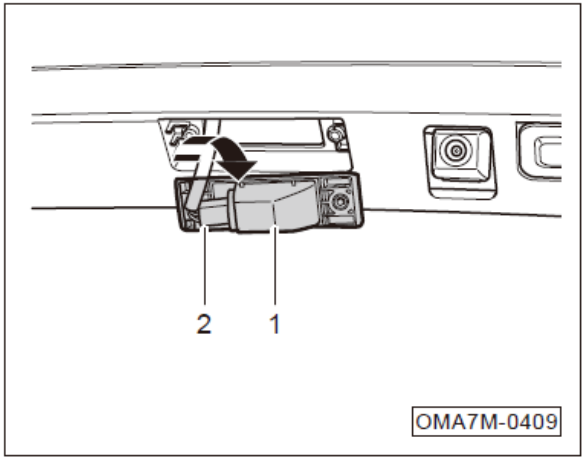
High brake light uses LED bulb. Therefore, the high brake light assembly shall be replaced as a whole and replacing single LED bulb is not allowed.

In case the high brake light fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

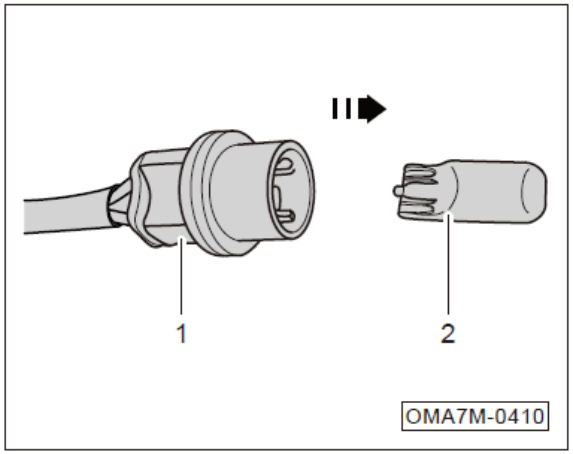
Replacing Number Plate Light Bulb



1. Turn off the Start switch.
2. Unscrew the fixing screws (see arrows) of the number plate light assembly and take out the assembly ①.



3. Rotate the harness assembly ② of the number plate light in direction of the arrow. Take out the light housing ①.



4. Pull out the number plate light bulb ② from its holder ① in direction of the arrow.
5. Install in the reverse order.

Replacing Front Dome Light Bulb

The front dome light bulb belongs to integrated bulb, which cannot be replaced separately. If the front dome light bulb fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

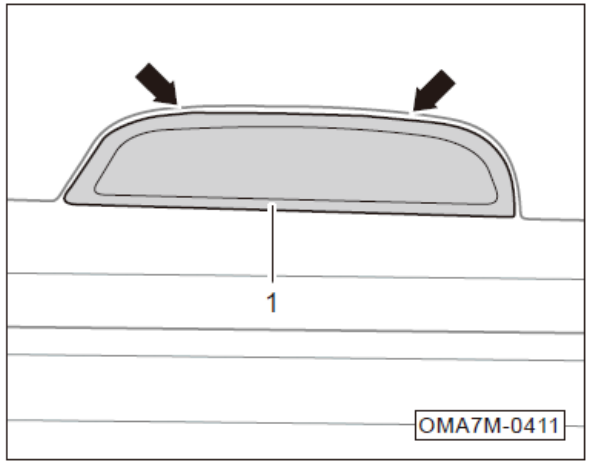
Replacing Bulbs of the Second/ Third Row Dome Lights

The bulbs of the second/third row dome lights belong to integrated bulb, which cannot be replaced separately. If the bulbs of the second/third row dome lights fail, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

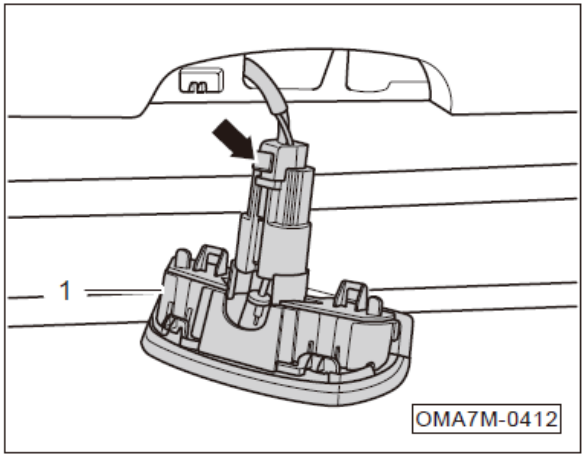
Replacing Atmosphere Light *

The instrument panel atmosphere light is located in the instrument panel, the door atmosphere light is located in the door trim panel, and the roof atmosphere light is located in the roof. Complex components shall be dismantled to replace the instrument panel atmosphere light, door atmosphere light and roof atmosphere light. In order to avoid unnecessary parts damage, if the atmosphere light bulb fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

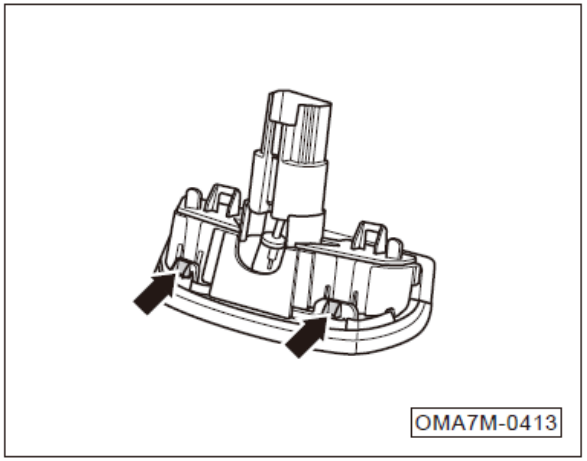
Replacing Door Open Warning Light Bulb



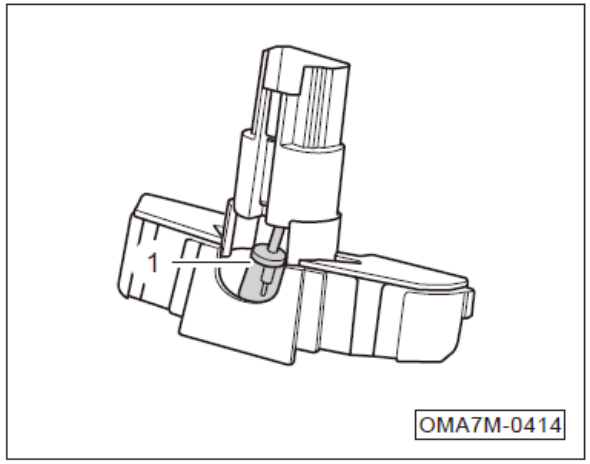
1. Turn off the Start switch.
2. Pry the door open warning light ① out at the positions indicated by the arrows.



3. Disconnect the connector at the position indicated by the arrow, and take down the door open warning light ①.



4. Disconnect the plastic clip carefully at the position indicated by the arrow, and dismantle the door open warning light cover.

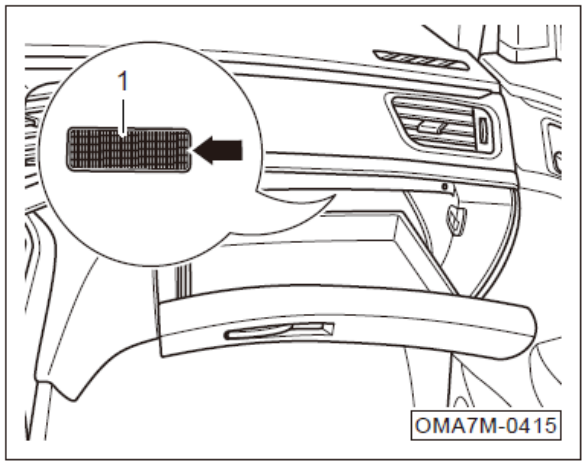


5. Remove the door open warning light bulb ①.
6. Install in the reverse order.

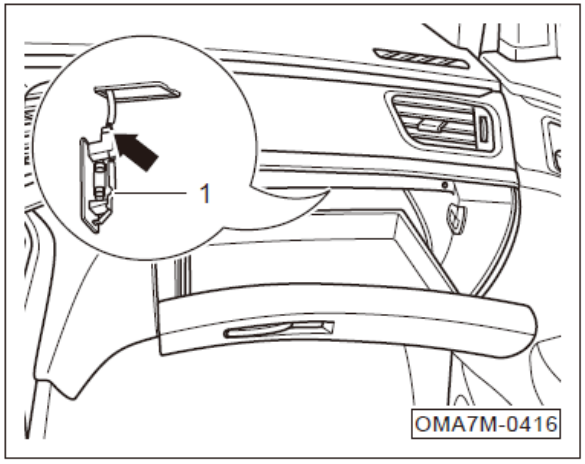
Replacing Vanity Mirror Light Bulb

The vanity mirror light uses LED bulb. If the vanity mirror light fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

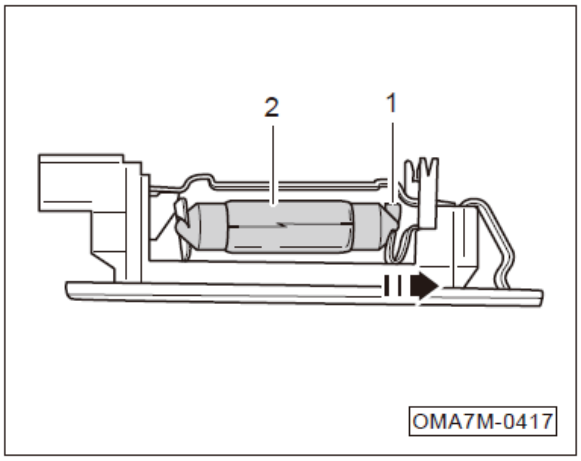
Replacing Glove Box Light



1. Turn off the Start switch.
2. Open the glove box.
3. Remove the glove box light ① at the position indicated by the arrow with an appropriate tool.



4. Disconnect the connector (see the arrow) of the glove box light and remove the glove box light ①.

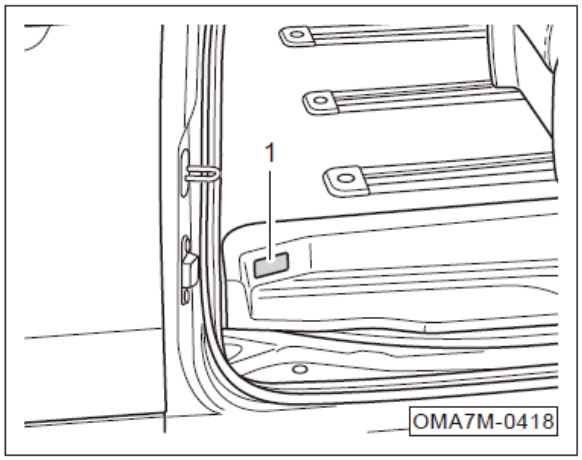


5. Press the metal clamp ① in direction of the arrow and take out the glove box light bulb ②.
6. Install in the reverse order.

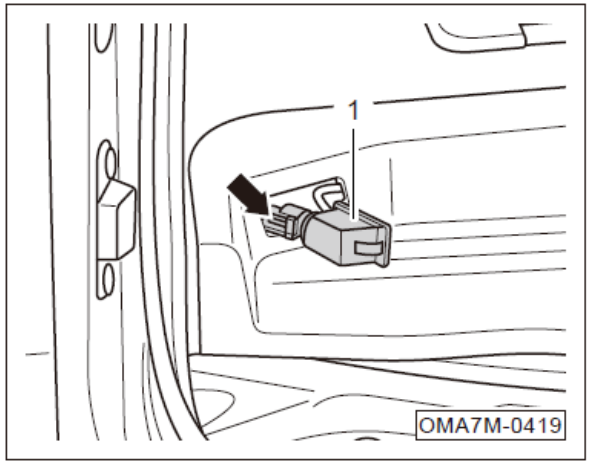
Footlight

Footlights are arranged at both sides of the instrument panel and below front seats and they are difficult to be assembled and disassembled. If the footlight fails, it is recommended to go to GAC MOTOR dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.

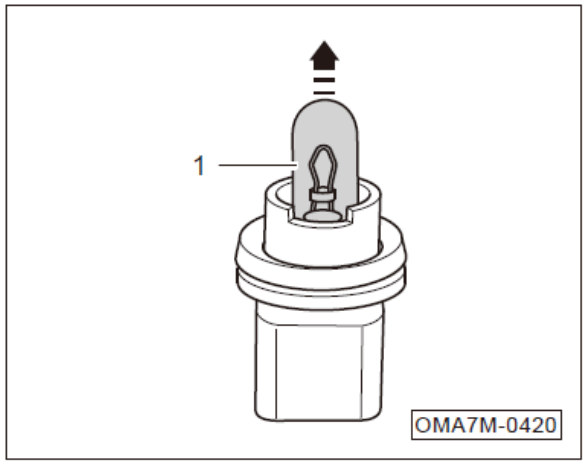
Replacing Second-Row Guest Greeting Light



1. Turn off the Start switch.
2. Pry the second-row guest greeting light ① out with an appropriate tool.

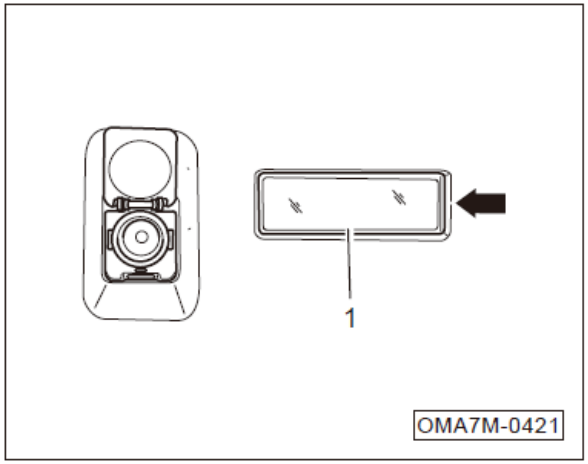


3. Disconnect the harness connector (see the arrow) of the second-row guest greeting light and remove the second-row guest greeting light ①.

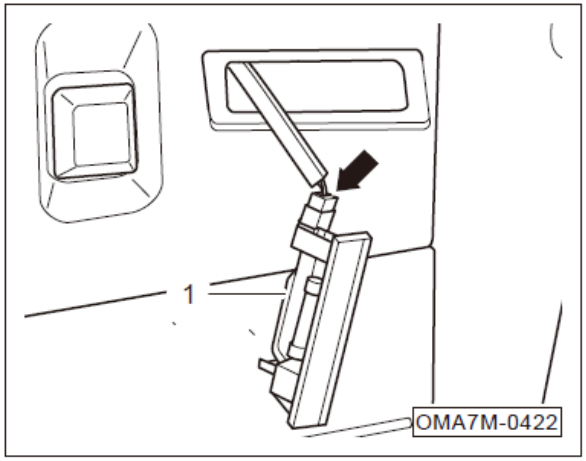


4. Remove the second-row guest greeting light bulb ① in direction of the arrow.
5. Install in the reverse order.

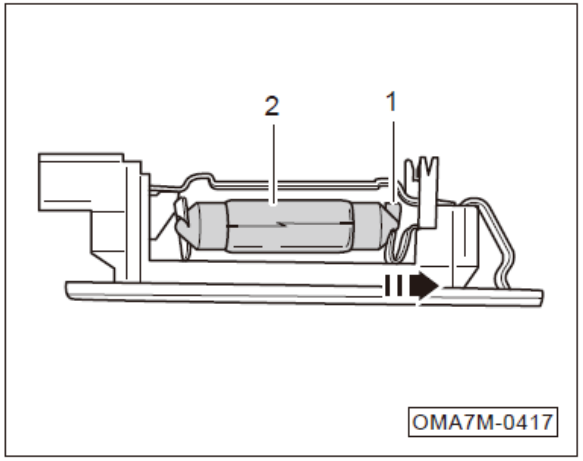
Trunk Light



1. Turn off the Start switch.
2. Open hatchback door.
3. Pry out the trunk light ① at the position indicated by the arrow with a straight screwdriver.



4. Disconnect the connector (see the arrow) of the trunk light and remove the trunk light ①.



5. Press the metal clamp ① in direction of the arrow and take out the trunk light bulb ②.
6. Install in the reverse order.

6.7 Wheels

⚠ Warning

You cannot get the best adhesion from a new tire during the first 500km, so drive your vehicle at a moderate speed with care to avoid accidents.

- **The tire which has not been run in or has been overworn provides insufficient adhesion, directly affecting the braking effect.**
- **If the vehicle vibrates abnormally or departures, stop the vehicle at a safe place immediately and check the tires for damage.**
- **If uneven excessive wear of the tires is found, go to GAC MOTOR dealer for inspection as soon as possible.**

⚠ Warning

Tire burst or air leakage during traveling can cause serious traffic accidents.

- **Do not drive with damaged tires or wheels or tires worn to the wear mark of tread pattern. Otherwise, it may cause accidents. Because the damaged tires may explode during traveling and cause traffic accidents and injure persons. Replace such tires and wheels timely.**
- **Tire pressure must comply with specifications. Otherwise it may cause accidents. If the tire pressure is insufficient, constant high-speed driving will cause tire deflection, resulting in tire overheating which may lead to tire shelling or burst.**
- **Always prevent the tires from touching chemicals, oil, grease, fuel and brake fluid.**

⚠ Warning

- **Try to avoid using a tire more than six years old. If no other choice, be sure to drive at a low speed with extra care.**
- **Do not use any old wheels and tires with dubious background under any circumstances. Such wheels and tires which may be already damaged invisibly will cause the vehicle out of control while driving, resulting in accidents.**

Prevention Measures for Wheel Fault

- To cross over curbs or similar obstacles, slow down your vehicle and drive in the vertical direction of the obstacle as far as possible.
- Prevent the tires from touching grease, oil and fuel.
- Periodically inspect the tire damage state (e.g. tire cut, crack, bump and other damage).
- Periodically remove sundries embedded in the tire tread.

Notice of Tire Storage

- Make a mark on the tire to indicate the direction of rotation before removing the tire. Re-install the tire according to the mark to keep the direction of rotation and the dynamic balance state of the wheel unchanged.
- Make a mark on the tire to indicate the direction of rotation before removing the tire. Re-install the tire according to the mark to keep the direction of rotation and the dynamic balance state of the wheel unchanged.
- Tires which have not been installed on the wheels should be stored upright.

New Tires and Wheels

Carefully select new tire and wheel.

Please use tires of the same structural form and size (rolling circumference) on all wheels. The tire pattern shall be of the same specification as far as possible.

Try not to replace one tire only. At least the two tires on the same axle shall be replaced simultaneously.

Do not use any tire whose effective size exceeds the standard approved by our Company.

The tire and wheel combination from our Company is recommended to be installed and used.

Specifications of Rims and Tires

Rim:

6.5J×17*

7.0J×18*

Tire:

225/60R17*

225/55R18*

Spare Tire:

Non-full Size Tire

Hint

The tire information label is located below the B-pillar on the driver's side. Select the rims and tires based on the recommended size and type on the information label.

Non-full Size Tire

The spare tire is different from the standard tire in such aspects as structure, pattern, speed grade and load index. Therefore, the spare tire cannot replace the standard tire.

Please replace the spare tire as soon as possible to avoid potential hazards due to prolonged using.

Hint

- The spare tire can only be used temporarily in emergency circumstances, with the maximum speed not exceeding 80km/ h and the traveling mileage not exceeding 100km.
- The service life of the spare tire is about 3 years, after which it shall be replaced.

Summer Tire

The tread depth shall not be less than 3mm.

A very high risk of hydroplaning exists when the tread depth is less than 3mm.

Winter Tire

Winter tire can improve the driving performance of vehicles on snow and ice covered roads.

- Winter tires shall be used on all four wheels.
- Only winter tire allowable for this vehicle can be used.
- It should be noted that the maximum speed applicable to winter tire is relatively low.
- It should be noted that sufficient tread depth shall be reserved on the tread of winter tire (The tread depth shall not be less than 4mm, otherwise the winter applicability will be restricted).
- After installing the tire, inspect the inflation pressure of the tire.

⚠ Warning

- **The winter and summer tires are designed according to the traveling conditions on their respective typical lanes under corresponding season conditions. Winter tire is recommended in winter. At low temperature, the adaptability of summer tire is obviously poor, and it may lose adhesive force and braking capacity.**
- **Under severe cold conditions, if a summer tire is used, crack may appear on the tire, which will damage the tire completely, and cause excessive tire noise and out of balance.**

Hidden Damage

The damage of tires and rims is often invisible. If abnormal vibration or deflection occurs when the vehicle is traveling, the tire may be damaged. If you are suspicious of tire damage, be sure to decrease the speed immediately. Stop the vehicle and inspect the tire damage condition. If the damage is unable to be perceived from outside, please slow down and continue driving, and go to GAC MOTOR dealer as soon as possible for inspection.

Tire Marked with Rolling Direction

Some tires are marked with arrows on their sides to indicate rolling direction. This rolling direction must be followed when the tire is used. This guarantees that the travel performances of the tire are optimized in terms of preventing hydroplaning phenomenon, enhancing adhesive ability, reducing traveling noise, extending friction durability, etc.

Tire Pressure

Unless the vehicle ran several kilometers at a low speed in the past three hours, can the tire pressure be checked and adjusted. The friction and deflection deformation during traveling causes the tire temperature rise and air expansion, resulting in inaccurate inspection of tire pressure. So check the tire pressure when they are cold.

The tire pressure described in this Manual is based on the tire pressure in summer and winter under cold condition. The hot tire pressure will be higher than the cold tire pressure. If the cold tire pressure meets the specification, do not let air out when the tire becomes hot. Otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient, resulting in sudden tire burst during moving.

Whether the tire pressure is normal or not is crucial for the vehicle moving at a high speed. Therefore, check the tire pressure before refueling and long-distance driving. The pressure in the spare tire and the emergency spare tire shall be kept at the maximum pressure specified for your vehicle.

Checking Tire Pressure

Tire Pressure KPa (kgf/cm²)		
225/60R17 103H 225/55R18 102V	Front Tire	Rear Tire
Half load	240 (2. 4)	240 (2. 4)
Full load	260 (2. 6)	260 (2. 6)

OMA7M-0458

The standard pressure data of the original tires are also given on the tire information label on the B-pillar on the driver's side.

– Look up the data label to find out tire pressure suitable for this car (pressure listed is suitable for tires in summer and winter).

– Unscrew the protective cap of the valve stem (If the protective cap is lost, be sure to re-install a new one timely).

– Install the tire pressure gauge to the valve stem.

– Check the tire pressure when the tires are cold. When the temperature rises, the pressure is a little bit higher than the specification. But there is no need to reduce the tire pressure.

– Adjust the tire pressure according to the vehicle's load.

– Remember to check the pressure of spare tire or emergency spare tire at the same time.

– Re-install and tighten the protective cap of the valve stem.

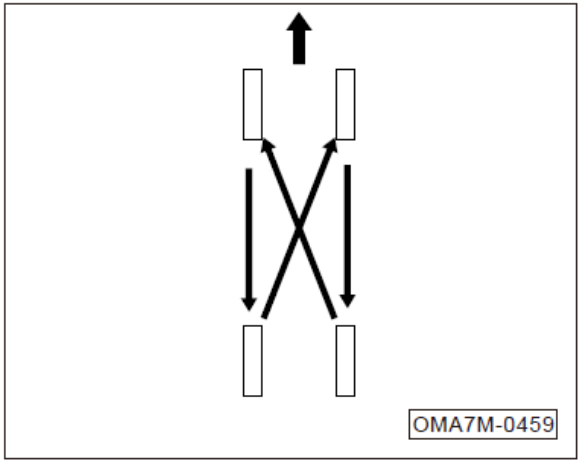
Hint

For some models, the cluster screen can display current tire pressure.

⚠ Warning

- **Abnormal tire pressure may cause tire burst, resulting in accidents, personal injury or even death.**
- **Check the tire pressure once a month at least and before long-distance driving. Make sure the tire pressure meets the specification to avoid accidents.**
- **Insufficient tire pressure will exacerbate tire deflection, resulting in tire overheating which may lead to tire shelling and burst.**
- **Both underinflated and overinflated tires may cause early wear, and adversely reduce the vehicle's handling stability.**

Tire Service Life



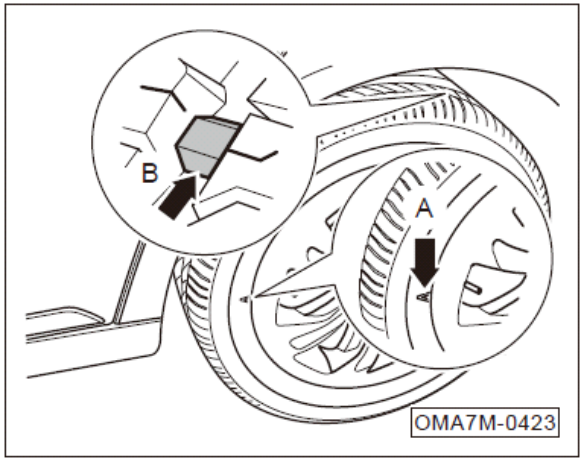
The service life of tire depends on tire pressure, driving style and tire assembly condition.

If the front tires are worn more seriously than the rear tires do, it is recommended to exchange the tires as shown in the figure, thereby making all the tires have the similar service life.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle is equipped with tire pressure monitoring system, the tire exchange or replacement shall be operated by GAC Motor dealer.

Tread Wear Marks



The pattern of external circumference (see arrow A) is used for directing the position of "tread wear indication mark" raised on the bottom of tire tread pattern groove.

The raised "tread wear indication mark" (see arrow B) is 1.6mm high. If the worn tread pattern is of the same height with such raised mark, the tire cannot be used safely, and must be replaced immediately.

Caution

Sudden turning, acceleration and emergency braking can cause tires to wear out faster. Try to avoid the above driving models as far as possible.

Wheel Balance

The wheels of a new vehicle have been balanced, however, during the running process, the wheels may be out of balance due to various influences, which can be perceived from the shaking of steering mechanism.

The imbalance of wheel will cause excessive wear of steering system, wheel suspension mechanism and tire, so that the wheel shall be rebalanced.

In addition, if a new tire is installed or the tire is repaired, the wheel must also be rebalanced.

Wheel Misalignment

The misalignment of wheels will cause uneven excessive wear of tires, and affect the traveling safety; if uneven excessive wear of tires is found, go to GAC MOTOR dealer to inspect the wheel alignment as soon as possible.

6.8 Tire Chain

When driving on snow or ice road or in other severe environments in winter, the tire wear degree may increase or other failure may occur. The following suggestions must be observed in order to reduce the failure in winter:

- When driving in deep snow, it is necessary to install tire chain. If a tire chain is to be installed, an equivalent product with its size and type conforming to the tire specification must be selected. Otherwise, the vehicle performance and safety will be adversely affected. High risk exists for such operations as speeding, emergency acceleration, emergency braking and emergency steering.

- When decelerating, make the best of the braking function of the engine. Emergency braking on roads with snow or ice will cause vehicle drifting or slipping. Keep a safe distance with the front vehicle, slightly tread the brake pedal, and note that the tire chain installed can provide certain force of friction but cannot prevent the occurrence of sideslip.

Hint

Different countries and regions have different laws and regulations on tire chain, which shall be referenced before a tire chain is assembled. Do not install a tire chain without understanding the laws and regulations of a country or region, which may restrict the use of tire chain.

Caution

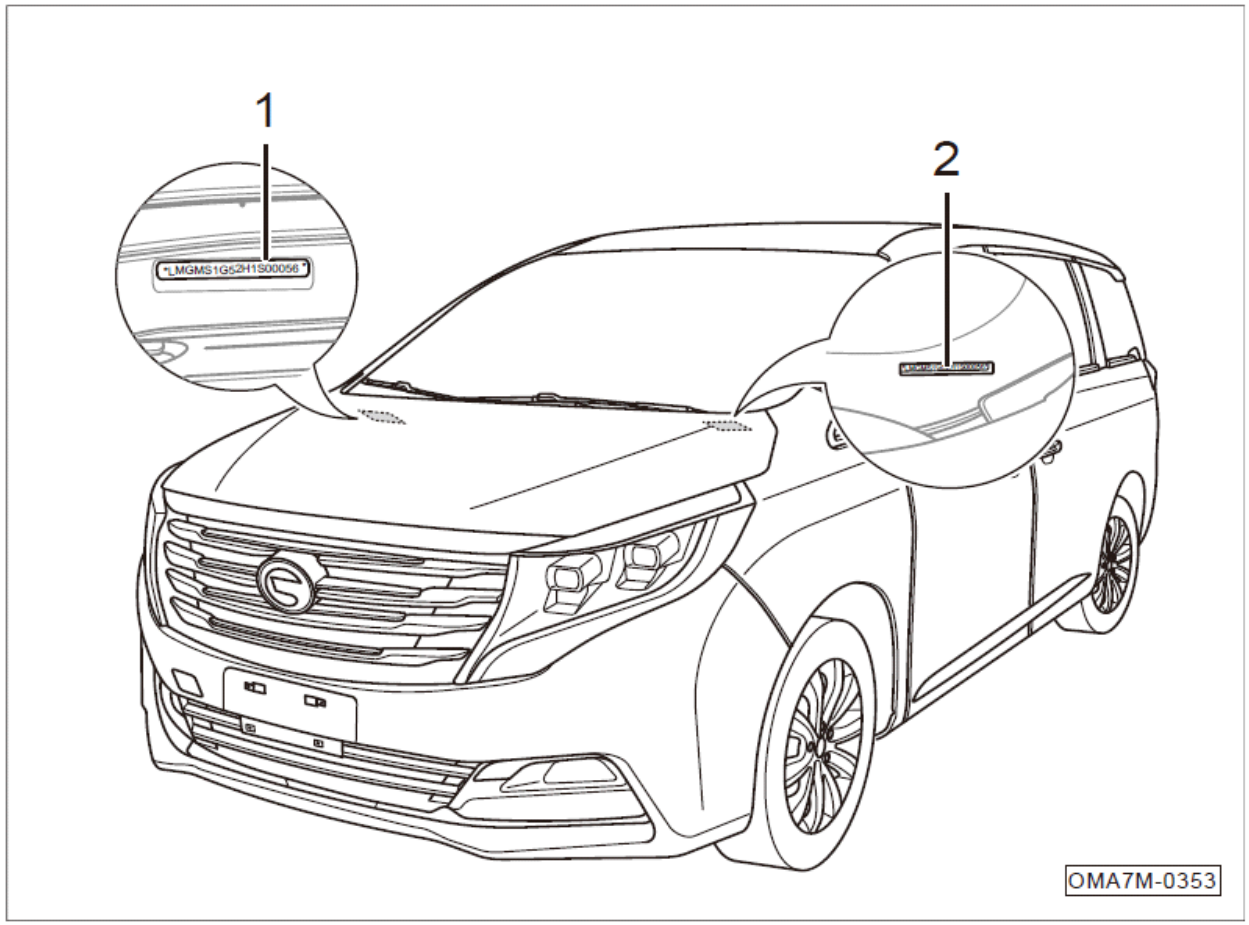
If a tire chain is to be installed, make sure that the size and type of the tire chain are consistent with those of the standard tire. Otherwise, the driving safety and maneuverability of the vehicle will be adversely affected.

Installing tire chain on all tires shall guarantee the balanced driving under various weather conditions. Keep in mind that the vehicle may be short of power after being installed with tire chain. Drive with care even if the road condition is good. The driving speed shall not exceed the specified speed for tire chain, nor exceed 50km/h, whichever is smaller.

6.9 Maintenance Instructions for Car Body Anti-Theft

Normal use requires no maintenance. Contact GAC MOTOR dealer when a problem occurs.

7.1 Vehicle Identification Numbers



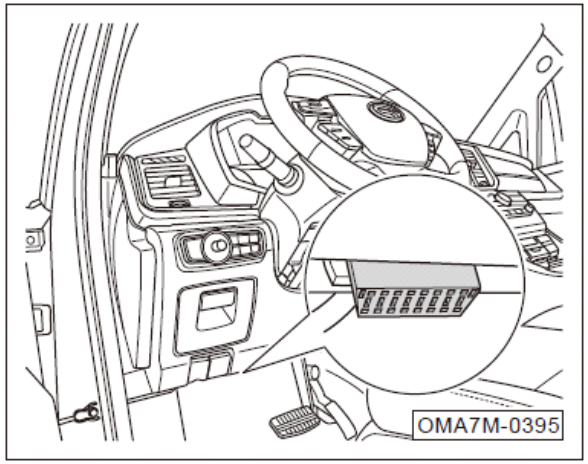
The positions of vehicle identification numbers (VINs) are shown in the figure:

1. Vehicle identification number (VIN): on the engine compartment diaphragm
2. Vehicle identification number (VIN): on the left side of instrument panel

Hint

The vehicle identification number (VIN) positions shown in the figure do not apply to all vehicles, and the position indication and quantity of vehicle identification numbers (VINs) are not complete. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

OBD Diagnostic Interface

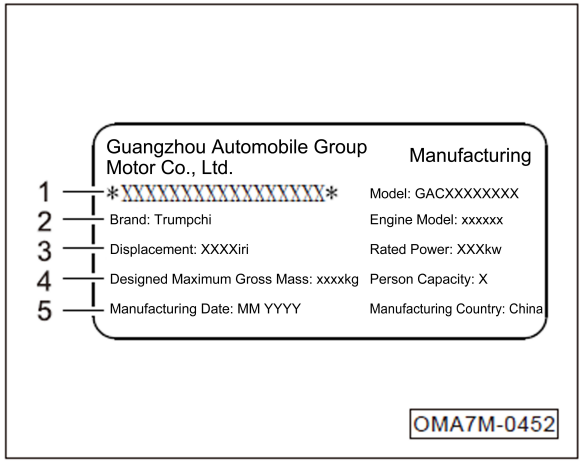


The OBD interface for reading electronic VIN is located at rear left lower of the instrument panel. Special diagnosis tester can be used to read such data as electronic VIN and vehicle status information.

Hint

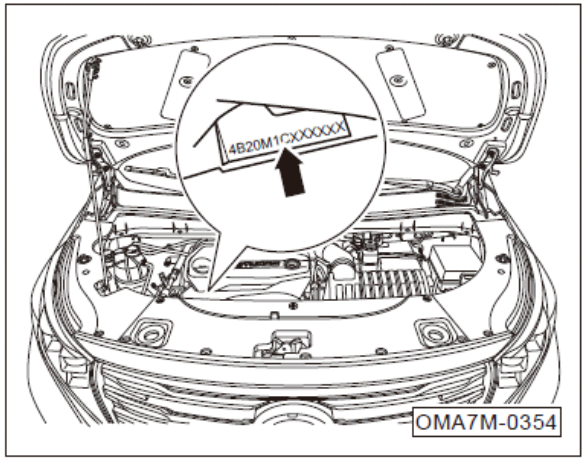
If you want to buy a diagnosis tester, please contact GAC MOTOR dealer.

Vehicle Nameplate



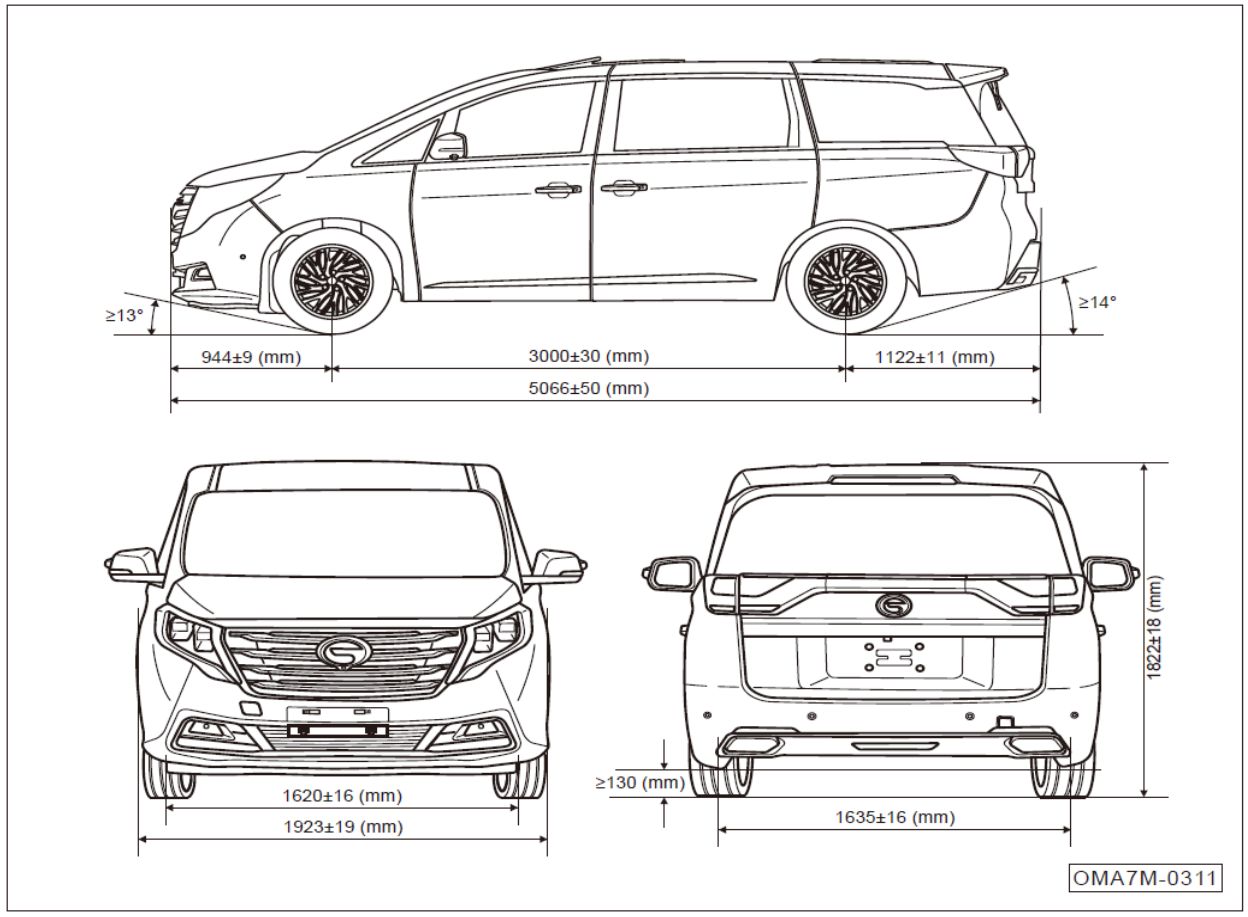
1. VIN, model
2. Brand, engine model
3. Engine displacement, rated power
4. Total mass, occupant capacity
5. Manufacturing date and place

Engine Number



The engine number (see the arrow) is located on the engine cylinder block (behind the alternator).

7.2 Vehicle Parameters



Dimension

Item		Parameters	
		Numerical Value	Unit
Total length		5066±50	mm
Total width		1923±19	mm
Total height		1822±18	mm
Wheel base		3000±30	mm
Tread	Front wheel	1620±16	mm
	Rear wheel	1635±16	mm
Front overhang		944±9	mm
Rear overhang		1122±11	mm
Minimum ground clearance (full load)		≥130	mm
Approach angle (full load)		13	°
Departure angle (full load)		14	°

Note: The exterior rear-view mirrors (left/right) next to the connection between the lower end of A-pillar and front door and the antenna above the rear roof are not included in the outer width.

7.3 Vehicle Parameters

Mass

Model	Complete Vehicle Kerb Mass (kg)			Max. Total Mass (kg)		
	Kerb Mass	Front Axle Load	Rear Axle Load	Max. Total Mass	Front Axle Load	Rear Axle Load
GAC6510M1F5	2002±60	1101±33	901±27	2600	1222	1378
GAC6510M2F5	2060±61	1119±33	941±28			

Integrated Parameters

Item	Performance Parameters	Unit
Number of occupants	7	Person
Minimum turning diameter	≤12	m
Maximum gradeability	≥40	%
0 km/h ~ 100 km/h accelerating time	≤12	S
Maximum speed	≥190	km/h
Fuel consumption under urban conditions	≤11.1	L/100km
Fuel consumption under suburb conditions	≤7.7	L/100km
Fuel consumption under comprehensive conditions	≤8.9	L/100km

Engine Parameters

Model	4B20M1
Layout pattern	Front-transverse mounted
Type	Inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, turbocharged and intercooled, multipoint electronic controlled injection, double overhead camshafts, dual continuous variable valve timing
Number of cylinders	4
Ignition order	1-3-4-2
Cylinder diameter (mm)	83
Stroke (mm)	92
Displacement (mL)	1991
Compression ratio	9.6: 1
Rated power / Rotated speed per Minute (kW/(r/min))	148/5200
Maximum net power / rotated speed per minute (kW/(r/min))	140/5200
Maximum torque / Rotated speed per Minute (Nm/(r/min))	320/1750 ~ 4000
Maximum net torque / Rotated speed per Minute (Nm/(r/min))	300/1750 ~ 4000
Idling stabilization RPM (r/min)	750±50

Note: 1) Adding fuel oil with sulfur content higher than the standard for a long time may cause excessive emission. Please pay attention to use the fuel oil meeting the standards of vehicle selling place.

Oil Specification and Capacity

Item	Specification	Volume	
Fuel oil	Please refer to the description on the fuel requirement lable at the fuel filler door of each vehicle.	-	68 L
Engine coolant [1)]	DF-6, -35℃ coolant	-	10.18±0.1 L
Engine oil	Engine oil specification: Grade SN or above, viscosity: SAE 5W-30	Total volume[2)]	5.3 L
ATF	AW - 1	-	6.6 L
Brake fluid	DOT4	-	0.82 L
Windshield washing liquid storage tank	50% ethyl alcohol or isopropyl alcohol and 50% water with a hardness not greater than 205 g/t	-	4.0 L
A/C refrigerant	R134a	-	850±15 g

Notes: 1) Including the coolant in the storage tank and the coolant remaining in the engine

2) Volume required for overhaul of engine assembly

7.4 Vehicle Parameters

Transmission Parameter

Model	TF-83SC
Type	Automatic transmission, six gears
Drive	Front-wheel drive
Final drive ratio	3.749
1st gear	4.188
2nd gear	2.416
3rd gear	1.556
4th gear	1.153
5th gear	0.852
6th gear	0.673
Reverse gear	3.203

Wheels

Rim		6.5Jx17*, 7.0JX18*	
Tire Specification		225/60R17*, 225/55R18*	
Tire Pressure	—	Front wheel	Rear wheel
	Half load	240kPa	240kPa
	Full load	260kPa	260kPa
Spare tire specification		T155/90D17	
Spare tire pressure		420kPa	

Note: The standard pressure data of the original tires are also given on the tire information label below the B-pillar on the driver's side.

Suspension

Type	Front	Rear
	McPherson independent type	Multi-connecting rod independent type

Steering Gear

Type	Pinion-and-rack mechanical steering gear
Power type	Electric power

Brake

Type	Vacuum servo, X type hydraulic double-loop
Front wheel	Disc brake
Rear wheel	Disc brake
Parking brake	Electrical Parking Brake (EPB), acting on rear brake

Wheel Dynamic Balancing Value

Name		**The Residual Amount of Dynamic Unbalance**
Front wheel	Inside	≤ 8g
	Outside	≤ 8g
Rear wheel	Inside	≤ 8g
	Outside	≤ 8g

Brake Pedal Free Stroke

Name	Parameters
Stroke	114±3 mm
Free stroke	≤4 mm

Technical Parameters of Brake Lining

Name	Parameters
Wear limit for front brake lining (excluding its backing plate)	2 mm
Wear limit for rear brake lining (excluding its backing plate)	2 mm

Wheel Alignment Number

Name		Parameters
Front wheel	Toe-in of single wheel	2′±3′
	Wheel camber	-28′±30′
	Kingpin caster angle	7°19′±45′
	Kingpin inclination angle	13°19′±30′
Rear wheel	Toe-in of single wheel	5′±3′
	Wheel camber	-1°11′±30′

Battery

Model		Valta H6
Parameters	Rated voltage	12 V
	20hr rated capacity	70Ah
	Low-temperature start current (EN)	760A

Fuse

Instrument Panel Fuse Box	=>Refer to Page 468
Engine Compartment Fuse Box	=>Refer to Page 472

Lights

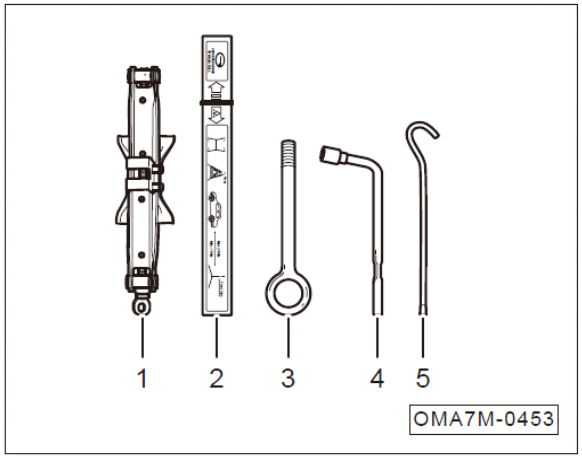
Lights		Parameters
Front combination light	Low beam	LED
	High beam	LED
	Front position light/daytime running light	LED
	Front turn signal light (halogen)	12V WY21W
Front fog light (halogen)		H16 12V19W
Guest greeting light *		LED
Rear-view mirror side turn signal		LED
Rear combination light	Rear position light/brake light	LED
	Reversing light	LED
	Rear turn signal light	LED
Number plate light (halogen)		12V W5W
High brake light		LED
Front roof light		LED
Second/third row roof light		LED
Door open warning light (halogen)		12V1W
Glove box light (halogen)		12V W5W
Trunk light (halogen)		12V W5W

Lights	Parameters
Sun visor vanity mirror light	LED
Roof atmosphere light	LED
Front door interior trim panel atmosphere light	LED
Rear door interior trim panel atmosphere light	LED
Front door interior buckle atmosphere light	LED
Rear door interior buckle atmosphere light	LED

If the bulb is to be replaced (=>Refer to Page 427), please refer to the configuration of the actual vehicle, because some bulbs only apply to certain vehicles!

8.1 Vehicle Tools and Spare Tire

Vehicle Tools



The vehicle tools include the following:

1. Jack
2. Warning triangle
3. Towing hook
4. Removal wrench for wheel bolts
5. Special wrench for jack

Caution

After using a jack, recover it to the state before use, and then place the special spanner for jack and the jack into the accompanied tool box.

Warning

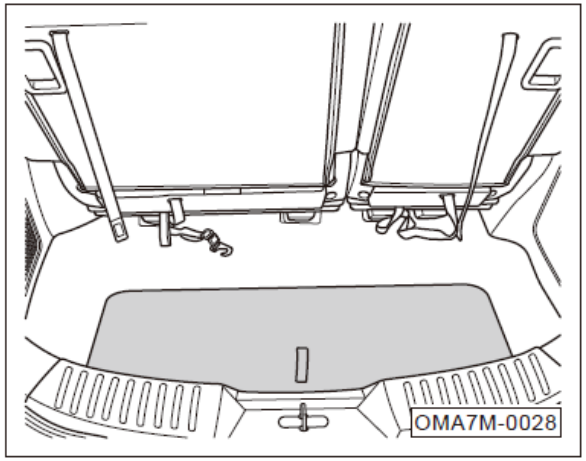
- **Tighten the wheel bolts according to the specified torque correctly. Failure to do so may make the bolts become loose when the vehicle is moving, resulting in accidents.**
- **Be sure to tighten the wheel bolts with the special wrench provided on the vehicle.**

Warning

Improper use of the jack may cause serious damage.

- **Only use the jack on solid and level ground.**
- **Only use your jack to jack up your vehicle. Do not use your jack to jack up other weights or vehicles.**
- **Do not start the engine when using the jack. Doing so can cause accidents.**
- **To avoid the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle when the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Place appropriate protective support under the vehicle if the operation has to be done under the vehicle.**

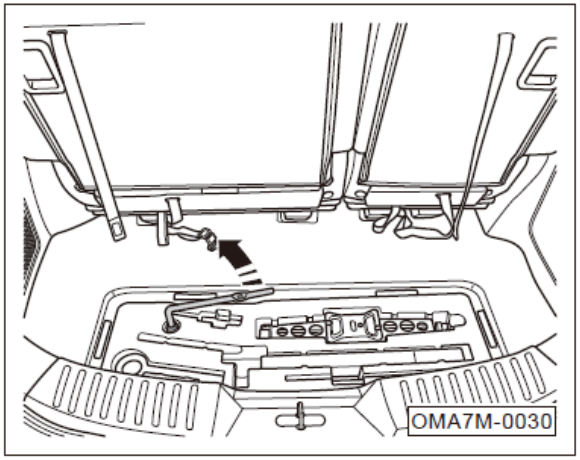
Spare Tire



The spare tire is located under the trunk. Please take out the spare tire by the following method:

-— Open hatchback door.

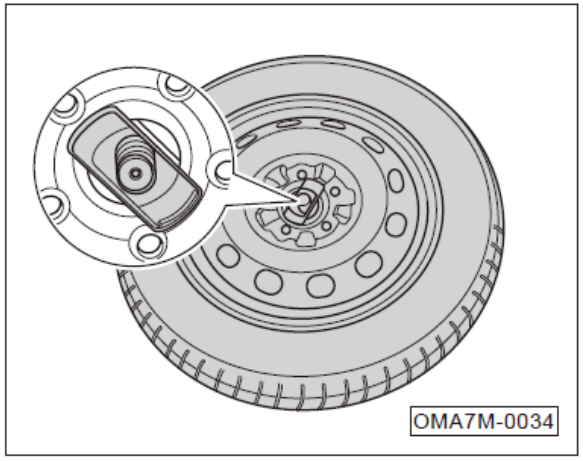
– Remove the trunk carpet.



– Take out the wrench for removing wheel bolts.

– Put the wrench firmly on the bolt.

– Rotate the wrench for removing wheel bolts counterclockwise in direction of the arrow until it is unable to rotate. At the moment, the spare tire has completely fallen down to the ground.



– Lift the spare tire, then tilt and loosen the fixing support below the spare tire.

– Take out the spare tire.

– Install in the reverse order.

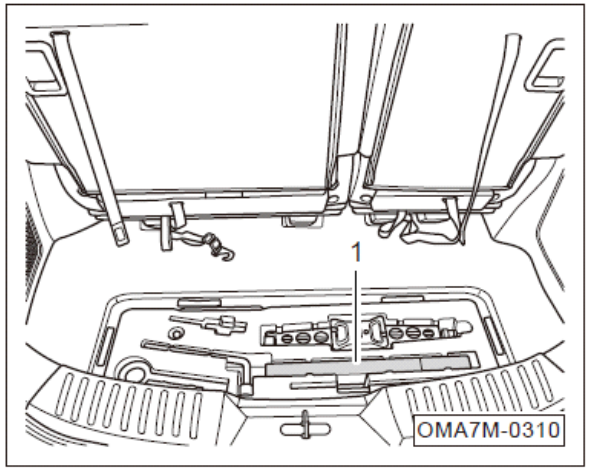
Caution

Spare tire has been inflated. Check the pressure regularly to ensure the maximum pressure and check it several times a year.

Warning

- **Use it in strict accordance with the operating requirements of spare tire to avoid risks.**
- **It is forbidden to install more than one spare tire.**
- **Do not use the spare tire which has been damaged or worn down to the wear mark.**
- **If your spare tire is over 6 years old, only use it in emergency with extra care.**
- **After finishing installing the spare tire, check its pressure and make sure it is within the specified range.**
- **When using the spare tire, make sure that the speed does not exceed 80km/h and avoid rapid acceleration and emergency braking.**

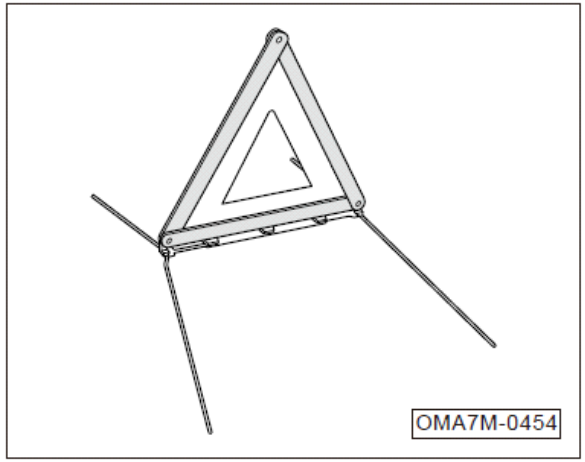
8.2 Usage of Warning Triangle



–— Open hatchback door.

– Remove the whole trunk carpet.

– Take out the warning triangle ①.



– Unfold the warning triangle.

Caution

Use the warning triangles properly following the national laws and regulations.

Location of Placement

General roads		Expressway
Daytime	Night	
≥50m	≥80m	≥150m

Caution

The above data is for reference only. For specific distance, please follow the relevant traffic regulations.

8.3 Replacing the Flat Tire

Preparations

– Park the vehicle on firm and level ground far away from traffic lanes.

– Engage the gearshift lever to “P” position.

– Apply the EPB.

– Put the Start switch to "OFF" position, and turn on the hazard warning indicator light.

– Put the warning triangle at the appropriate place behind the vehicle.

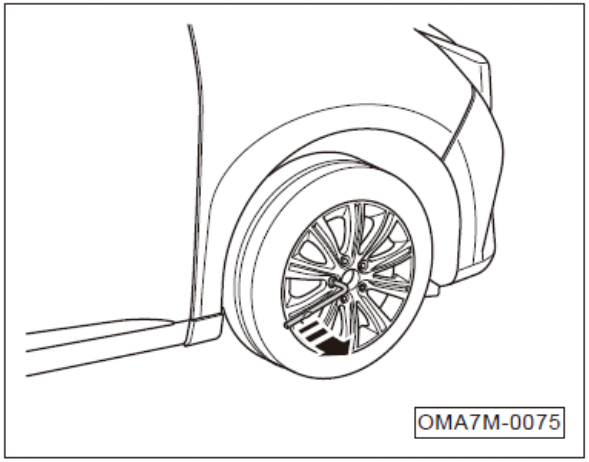
– Unload the weights in the vehicle as much as possible. Find appropriate objects to place under other wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving.

– Take out the vehicle tools and the spare tire.

⚠ Warning

- **When puncture, air leakage or other problems occur, stop the car and replace the tire. Park your vehicle in an area far away from traffic lanes. Turn on the hazard warning indicator lights, and place the warning triangles in position.**
- **Strictly obey relevant laws and regulations.**
- **Park the vehicle on firm and level ground. Place a solid board under the jack as needed.**
- **All passengers must get off the car and wait in a safe place.**

Unscrewing the Wheel Bolts

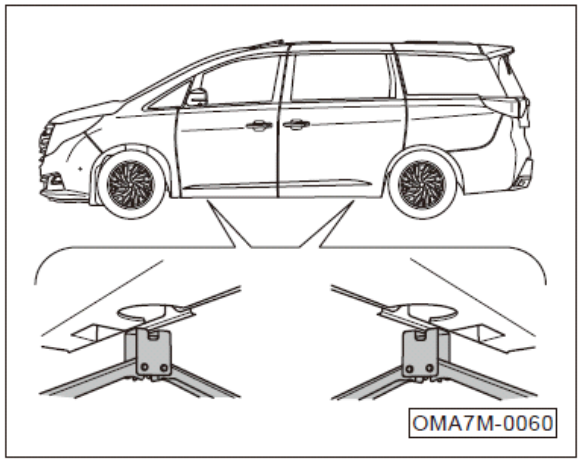


Take out the wrench for removing wheel bolts from the accompanied tool box. Put the wrench firmly on the wheel bolt and loosen the bolt for one circle counterclockwise in direction of the arrow.

⚠ Warning

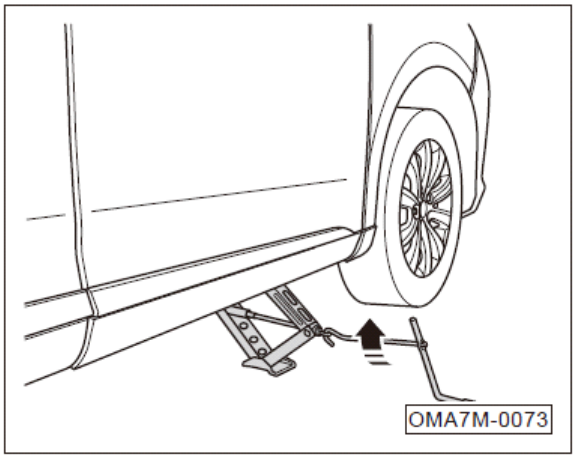
- **Only loosen each wheel bolt one circle before using the jack to lift up the vehicle.**
- **Only use the wrench provided on the vehicle.**

Lifting the Vehicle



– Find the jacking point nearest to the flat tire. Place the jack under the jacking point.

– Lift the jack and align the groove of the jack with the protruding beam under the body.



– Check whether the jack is placed steadily and fits the ground tightly.

– Assemble the wrench for removing wheel bolts as well as special wrench for jack, and jack.

– Lift the jack in direction of the arrow to lift the vehicle and make the tire off the ground.

Caution

After loosening the bolts of the flat tire, execute lifting and other subsequent replacement operations, so as to facilitate wheel bolt disassembly.

Warning

- **Make sure the jack is used on firm and level ground.**
- **Make sure the jack is placed under the proper jacking point.**
- **Follow the precautions for operating the jack.**
- **Disconnect your vehicle from the trailer (if equipped).**
- **When lifting the car, continually observe its conditions. If the car inclines obviously, stop lifting and find out the cause before trying again.**

Removing the Flat Tire

– Remove the wheel bolts with the wrench with the tire off the ground.

– Remove the flat tire.

Installing the Spare Tire

– Mount the spare tire on the vehicle.

– Put all wheel bolts back, and pre-tighten them with the wrench.

– Lower the vehicle.

– Tighten all wheel bolts with the wrench.

Caution

- Tighten them in diagonal sequence.
- After installing the wheel, go to GAC MOTOR dealer to inspect the tightening torque of wheel bolts as soon as possible.
- Tightening torque of wheel bolts: 125±10N·m

Warning

Keep the threads of the wheel bolts and hub clean, and make sure the bolts can be screwed easily. No grease or other attachment is permitted.

Notes for Tire Replacement

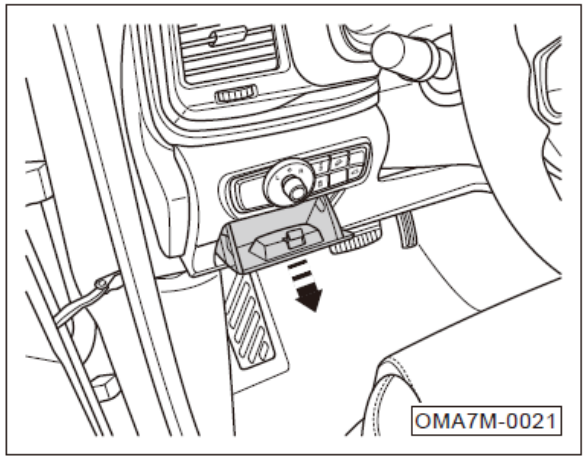
- The replaced tire shall be timely and correctly placed into the spare tire installation position.
- Clean the tools and put them to the original position after use.
- Check the tightening torque of the wheel bolts as soon as possible.
- Change the damaged tire as soon as possible.
- When a tire is replaced, if any bolt is corroded or difficult to screw, replace it and clean the threaded hole before checking the wheel bolt's tightening torque.

Caution

The spare tire/ replaced tire must be securely fixed on the spare tire installation position.

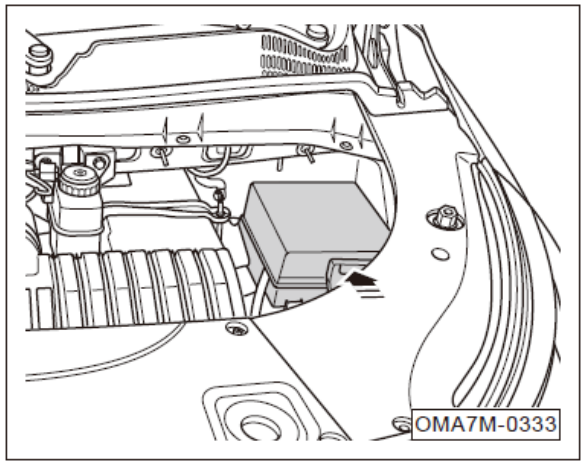
8.4 Fuse

Fuse in Instrument Panel Fuse Box



– Open and withdraw the storage box on lower guard plate of the driving cab in direction of the arrow, and then you will see the fuse on the instrument panel fuse box.

Fuse in Engine Compartment Fuse Box

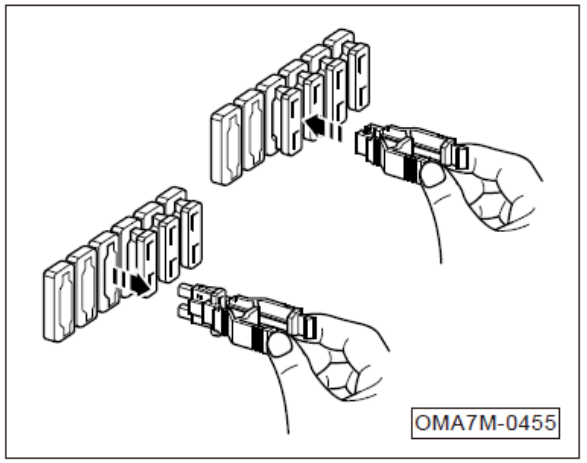


– Open the engine hood. =>Refer to Page 106

– Press the fixing clip in direction of the arrow and release the fuse box cover.

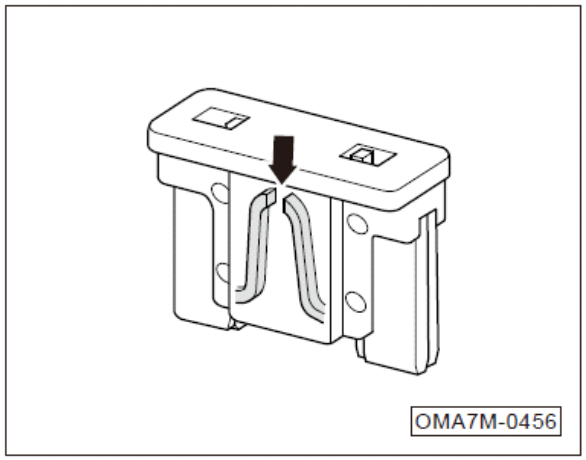
– Remove the fuse box cover upward, and then you can see the fuse on the engine compartment fuse box.

Replacing the Fuse



– Use the fuse extractor in the engine compartment fuse box to extract or install the fuse.

Blown Fuses



– If the fuse is blown (as indicated by the arrow), replace with a new one with the same color and identification (We recommend you go to your GAC MOTOR dealer for replacement).

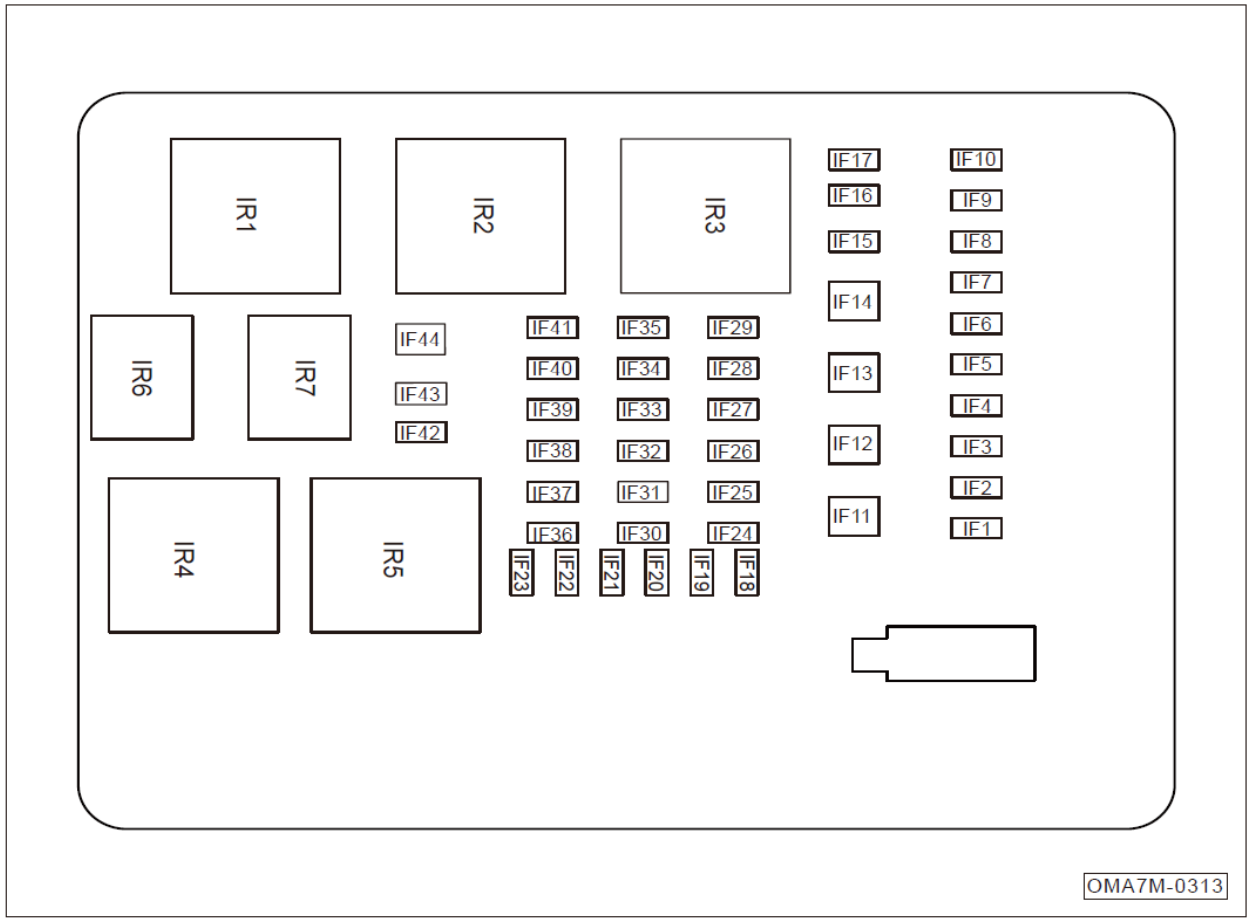
⚠ Warning

- **Do not reuse any fuse.**
- **Do not use the fuse whose rated current value is higher than the specified value. Otherwise, other components of the electrical system may be damaged.**
- **Make sure the color and identification of the new fuse are the same as those of the original one.**
- **Do not use a sheet metal, paper clip and the like to replace the fuse.**
- **Keep the inside of the fuse box clean and dry.**

Caution

Turn off all the electrical equipment before replacing the fuses.

8.4.1 Fuse in Instrument Panel Fuse Box



This figure does not apply to all vehicle models. Please check the purpose of the fuses on the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

No.	Rated Value	Function/Component
IF1	SHORT PIN	Short pin
IF2	15A	Body control module (light power supply)
IF3	7.5A	Gateway control unit
IF4	10A	Body control module (turn signal power supply)
IF5	15A	Sunroof control unit
IF6	25A	Front right seat connector/rear right seat connector
IF7	7.5A	Front left courtesy light/front right courtesy light/rear left courtesy light/rear right courtesy light/power sunshade/rear-view mirror folding relay/rear-view mirror unfolding relay
IF8	7.5A	TPMS control unit/EPB switch/high brake light
IF9	20A	Front AUDIO control unit/rear AUDIO control unit
IF10	10A	Brake switch/TCU/gearshift lever
IF11	30A	DCDC converter
IF12	30A	Right sliding door control unit
IF13	20A	Body control module (front right window regulator motor/rear right window regulator motor power supply)/front right window regulator motor/rear right window regulator motor
IF14	30A	IG1 relay/ACC relay
IF15	25A	Front left seat connector/rear left seat connector
IF16	7.5A	OBD diagnosis interface

No.	Rated Value	Function/Component
IF17	10A	Instrument cluster/front central console panel/T-Box control unit/memory seat control unit/ panorama parking control unit
IF18	30A	Electric hatchback door control unit
IF19	15A	Body control module (wiper cleaning motor/rear wiper motor power supply)
IF20	20A	Front left window regulator control unit/front left window regulator switch
IF21	10A	Rear left seat connector/rear right seat connector
IF22	20A	Body control module (door lock power supply)
IF23	30A	Left sliding door control unit
IF24	25A	Front cigarette lighter/rear cigarette lighter/rear 12V power interface
IF25	7.5A	PEPS control unit/body control module
IF26	10A	Memory seat control unit/rear AUDIO control unit/rear-view mirror adjustment switch/front AUDIO control unit
IF27	—	—
IF28	7.5A	Anion generator
IF29	10A	Air quality sensor/front blower relay/rear blower relay/interior rear-view mirror/PEPS control unit/defroster relay
IF30	7.5A	Lane departure warning control unit/headlight height adjustment switch/left combination headlight/right combination headlight/front collision warning control module/panorama parking control unit/reversing radar control unit/automatic parking control unit

No.	Rated Value	Function/Component
IF31	10A	Auxiliary instrument panel switch group/sunroof control unit/sunroof sunshade/rain and light sensor/front central console panel/front A/C control panel/automatic headlight control unit/T-BOX control unit/instrument cluster/front A/C control unit/rear A/C control panel/front left seat connector/rear left seat connector/rear right seat connector/right sliding door control unit/rear A/C control unit/electric hatchback door control unit/left sliding door control unit//left instrument panel switch group
IF32	7.5A	Steering angular speed sensor/TPMS control unit/EPS control unit/brake switch/ESP and EPB control unit
IF33	7.5A	Gateway control unit/body control module/PEPS control unit/DCDC converter
IF34	10A	Airbag control unit
IF35	7.5A	Gearshift lever/engine control unit/TCU
IF36	20A	Body control module (rear left window regulator switch)/rear left window regulator motor
IF37	7.5A	PEPS control unit
IF38	7.5A	Front left door antenna/front right door antenna/PEPS control unit
IF39	7.5A	Intelligent atmosphere light control module/A/C control unit/rear A/C control panel/front A/C control panel/display screen/automatic headlight control unit/front left seat connector/front right seat connector/right sliding door control unit/rear A/C control unit/left sliding door control unit/electric hatchback door closing switch/electric hatchback door control unit/trunk light
IF40	7.5A	Smartphone wireless charging module/inverter/USB charging port

No.	Rated Value	Function/Component
IF41	15A	Body control module
IF42	—	—
IF43	7.5A	Left rear-view mirror heater/right rear-view mirror heater
IF44	30A	Rear defogging heater
IR01	—	IG2 relay
IR02	—	ACC relay
IR03	—	IG1 relay
IR04	—	—
IR05	—	Defroster relay
IR06	—	Rear-view mirror folding relay
IR07	—	Rear-view mirror unfolding relay

Hint

One electric appliance may be equipped with multiple fuses, or several electric appliances may share a common fuse.

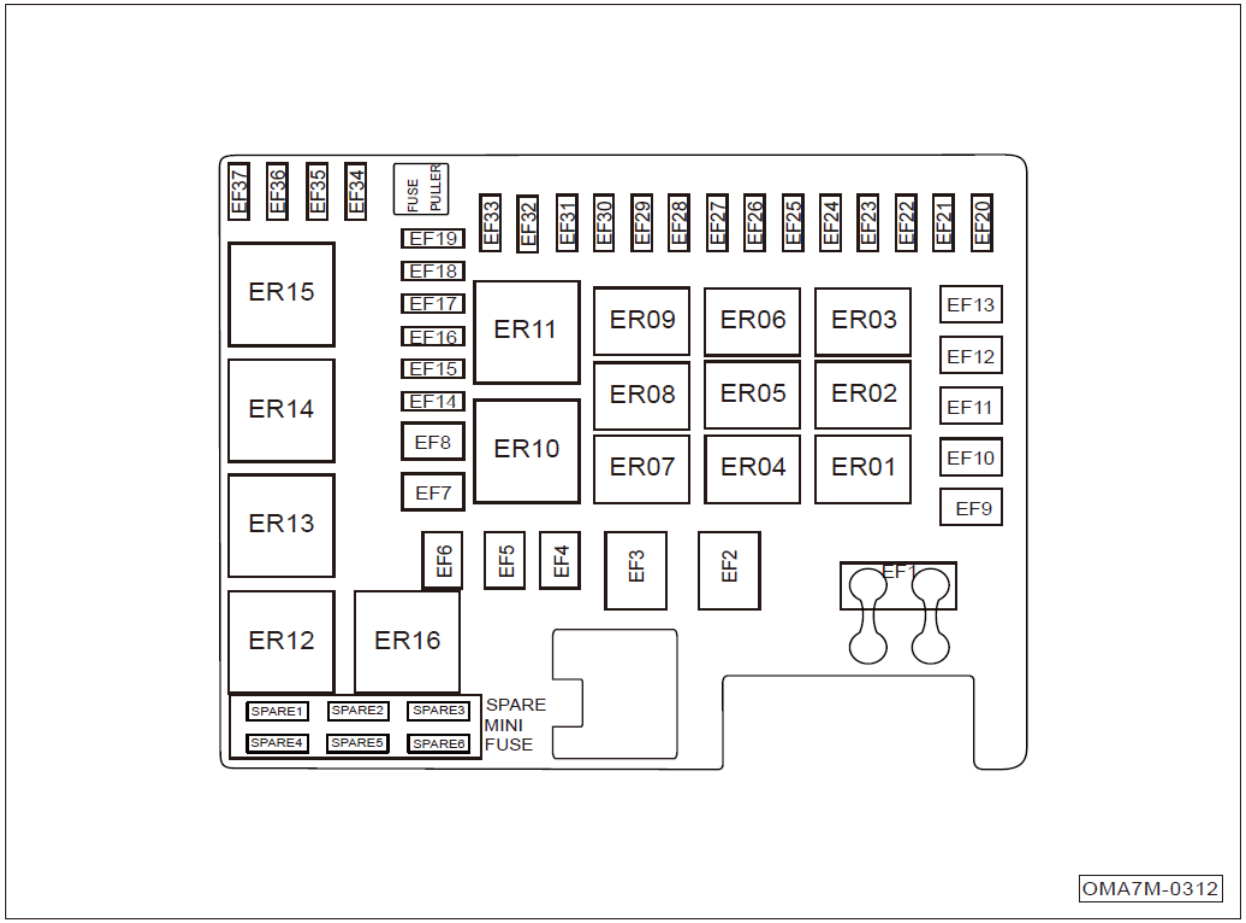
Caution

Some fuses must be replaced by GAC MOTOR dealer. Consult your GAC MOTOR dealer for detailed information.

Warning

Using an inappropriate or repaired fuse can cause a fire or personal injury or death.

8.4.2 Fuse in Engine Compartment Fuse Box



This figure does not apply to all vehicle models. Please check the purpose of the fuses on the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

No.	Rated Value	Function/Component
EF1	150A	Main fuse
EF2	80A	EPS control unit
EF3	80A	Instrument panel fuse box
EF4	50A	Electronic fan relay
EF5	30A	Rear blower relay
EF6	20A	Rear left seat connector
EF7	20A	Front left seat connector
EF8	30A	Front blower relay
EF9	40A	ESP and EPB control module
EF10	50A	Instrument panel fuse box
EF11	40A	ESP and EPB Control Module
EF12	30A	Starter relay 1/IG2 relay
EF13	20A	Wiper relay/wiper speed regulation relay
EF14	20A	Inverter
EF15	—	—
EF16	—	—
EF17	7.5A	A/C compressor relay
EF18	—	—
EF19	—	—
EF20	15A	Fuel pump relay
EF21	—	—
EF22	7.5A	Engine control unit/starter relay 2
EF23	15A	Speaker relay
EF24	7.5A	Battery sensor
EF25	—	—

No.	Rated Value	Function/Component
EF26	15A	High beam relay
EF27	—	—
EF28	Short pin	Low beam relay
EF29	Short pin	Main relay
EF30	10A	Fuel injector 1/fuel injector 2/fuel injector 3/fuel injector 4/fuel pump relay
EF31	15A	Ignition coil 1/ignition coil 2/ignition coil 3/ignition coil 4
EF32	10A	Engine control unit
EF33	10A	Electronic fan relay/front oxygen sensor/rear oxygen sensor/starter relay 1/A/C compressor relay
EF34	10A	Left low beam
EF35	10A	Right low beam
EF36	7.5A	Engine control unit/DCDC converter
EF37	10A	Variable camshaft timing (intake end)/variable camshaft timing (exhaust end)/carbon canister solenoid valve/exhaust valve/throttle valve
ER01	—	Wiper relay
ER02	—	Wiper speed regulation relay
ER03	—	Fuel pump relay
ER04	—	—
ER05	—	—
ER06	—	Speaker relay
ER07	—	Low beam relay
ER08	—	A/C compressor relay
ER09	—	High beam relay
ER10	—	Starter relay 2

No.	Rated Value	Function/Component
ER11	—	Main relay
ER12	—	Electronic fan relay
ER13	—	—
ER14	—	Front blower relay
ER15	—	Rear blower relay
ER16	—	Starter relay 1

Hint

One electric appliance may be equipped with multiple fuses, or several electric appliances may share a common fuse.

Caution

Some fuses must be replaced by GAC MOTOR dealer. Consult your GAC MOTOR dealer for detailed information.

Warning

Using an inappropriate or repaired fuse can cause a fire or personal injury or death.

8.5 Emergency Start

Jumper Cable

If you cannot start the engine because of low battery energy, you can use the jumper cable to connect with another vehicle's battery to start the engine.

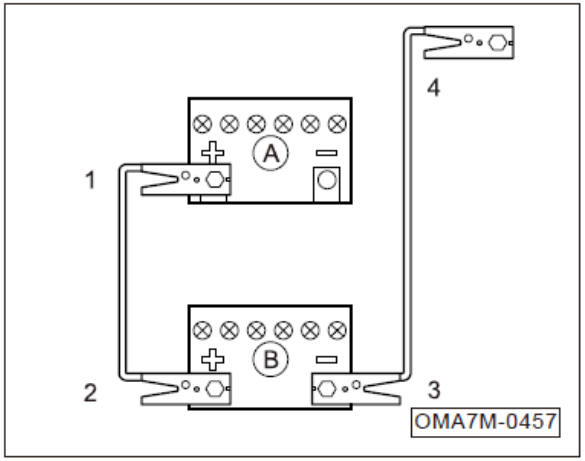
Caution

When jump starting, two cars cannot contact with each other. Otherwise, once the positive terminals of the two batteries are connected, the current is turned on immediately.

Warning

- **Engine compartment is a hazard area where improper operation may cause serious injuries or deaths.**
- **Before operation, carefully read and comply with relevant safety warnings and instructions about the operation of the battery.**

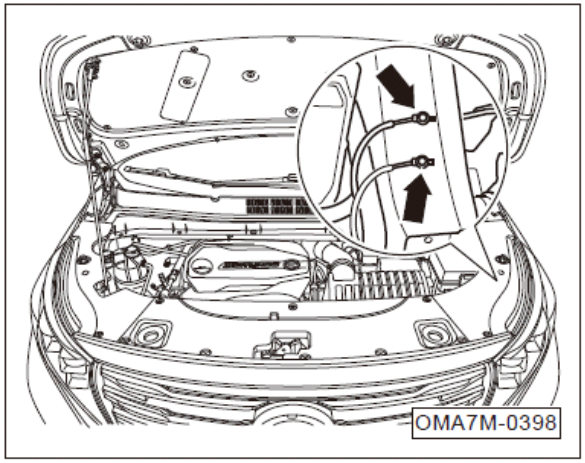
Connect the positive terminals of the batteries before connecting the negative ones.



– Switch the Start switch to "OFF" position.

– Connect one end ① of the red cable to the positive electrode (+) of flat battery "A", and the other end ② to the positive electrode (+) of booster battery "B".

– Connect one end ③ of the black cable to the negative electrode (-) of booster battery "B", and the other end ④ to body GND of the vehicle with flat battery "A".



The body GND is indicated by the arrows.

Caution

Place the jumper cables in position to prevent them from touching the moving parts of the engine.

– Start the engine of the vehicle with booster battery and let it idle, and then start the engine of the vehicle with flat battery until the engine runs smoothly.

⚠ Warning

- **Do not remove the jumper cables until the headlights have been turned off.**
- **Turn on the air blower and rear windshield heater in the vehicle with flat battery to reduce the voltage peak resulting from removing the cables.**
- **Once your engine is running, disconnect the jumper cable in reverse sequence.**

⚠ Warning

A battery can explode if you cannot use the jumper cable properly, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

- **Make sure the voltage of the booster battery is equal to that of the flat battery, and the capacity of the booster battery is similar to that of the flat battery. Otherwise, it may cause explosion.**
- **Keep open flames away from the battery to avoid explosion.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable to the negative electrode of the flat battery directly. Make sure there is no static near the battery. Otherwise, combustible gas produced by the battery can be ignited by sparks, causing explosion.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable to the fuel system component or brake pipe. During operation, do not face the battery to avoid acid burns.**

8.6 Emergency Towing

The front and rear parts of the vehicle are both provided with emergency traction port of threaded hole structure, to which the towing hook (a vehicle tool) can be installed for traction operation.

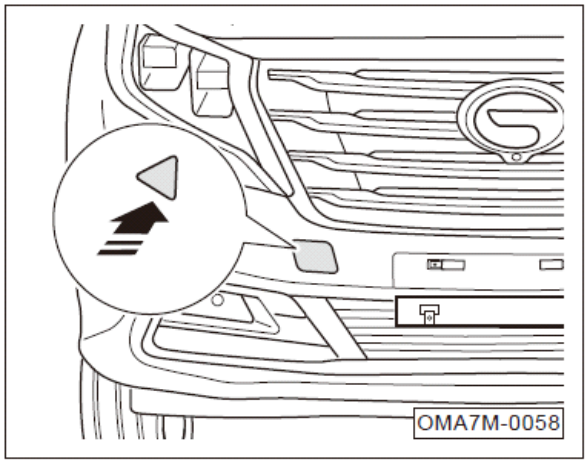
i Hint

The towing hook shall be placed on the vehicle so as to be used when needed.

⚠ Warning

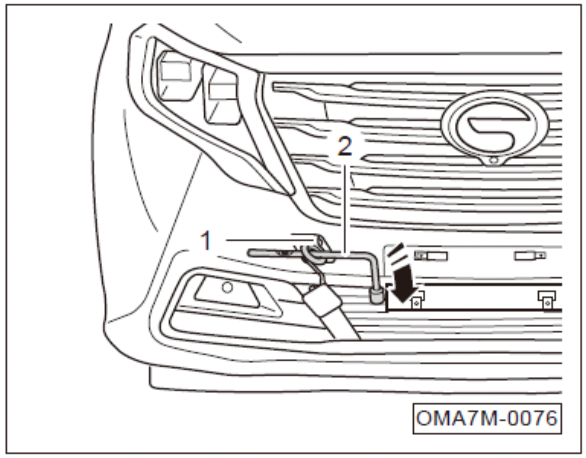
The emergency traction operation of the vehicle has certain risk. Unless you have the experience, do not tow other vehicle to avoid accidents.

Install Front Towing Hook



– Take out the towing hook and the wrench for removing wheel bolts from the tool box in the trunk.

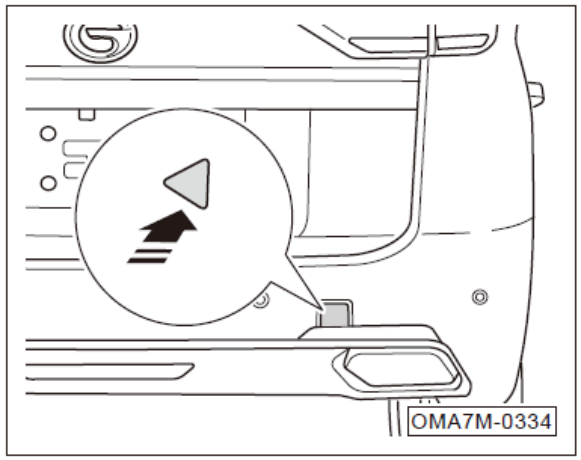
– Use a finger to push hard the triangle position of the towing hook cover in direction of the arrow to make it cock, and then move the towing hook cover away.



– Screw the towing hook ① into the threaded hole clockwise.

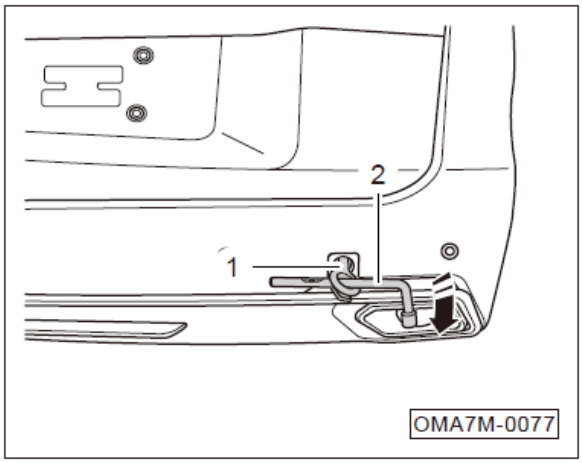
– Insert the wrench for removing wheel bolts ② into the towing hook port, and rotate the wrench clockwise to securely screw the towing hook into the threaded hole.

Install Rear Towing Hook



– Take out the towing hook and the wrench for removing wheel bolts from the tool box in the trunk.

– Open the towing hook cover with a word knife at the position indicated by the arrow.



– Screw the towing hook ① into the threaded hole clockwise.

– Insert the wrench for removing wheel bolts ② into the towing hook port, and rotate the wrench clockwise to securely screw the towing hook into the threaded hole.

Precautions for Traction

Before emergency traction, be sure to operate according to the following precautions:

- The drivers of the towing and towed vehicles must turn on the hazard warning indicator lights, and must observe the local traffic regulations.
- The towing hook must be securely screwed into the threaded hole. Otherwise, the towing hook may slip from the threaded hole during traction process.
- The towed vehicle must have its gearshift lever at “N” position.
- The towed vehicle shall have its Start switch at “ON” position. Rotate the steering wheel back and forth to confirm the steering wheel can rotate freely.

During emergency traction process, be sure to operate according to the following precautions:

- Start and move slowly until the tow rope strains, and then accelerate gradually.
- Drive smoothly, and do not accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply.
- Always remember that the brake booster and steering booster of the towed vehicle will not work. Normally, press the brake pedal in advance but press it slightly.
- During the traction operation, the tow rope must always be strained.

If the vehicle transmission suffers oil leakage, during the emergency traction, only the driving wheel of the vehicle can be lifted for traction, and:

- The towing speed shall not be greater than 50km/h.
- The maximum towing distance shall be 50km.

⚠ Warning

- **The oil pump of the transmission cannot work when the engine is off. If the driving wheel rotates on the ground, the transmission will be at a working condition of poor lubrication when the vehicle is towed at a high speed and for a long distance, which will damage the transmission.**
- **Please do not lift the rear traction of the vehicle, otherwise the wheel will rotate backwards, and the gear in transmission will reach a very high rotating speed, causing serious damage to the transmission within a short time.**

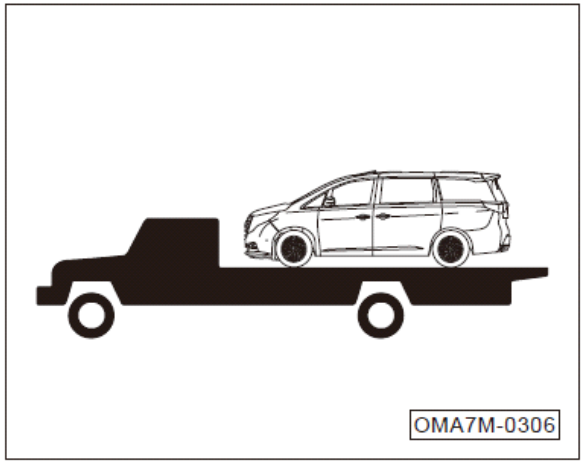
Towing

If your car has an accident and requires to be towed, we suggest using a platform truck to tow your car. If it is not available, you can also use a wheeled truck to tow your car if necessary.

Select proper towing method according to the configuration and fault condition of your car. But the following precautions must be noted:

- Contact your GAC MOTOR dealer or the professional towing company for towing, and do not tow the vehicle by yourself without full confidence, otherwise the vehicle is very easy to be damaged.
- All towing methods require the use of safety chain system and shall comply with relevant traffic laws.
- You must tow your car according to the specification; otherwise it may cause the damage to your car and threaten traffic safety.

Tow the Car by Using a Platform Truck

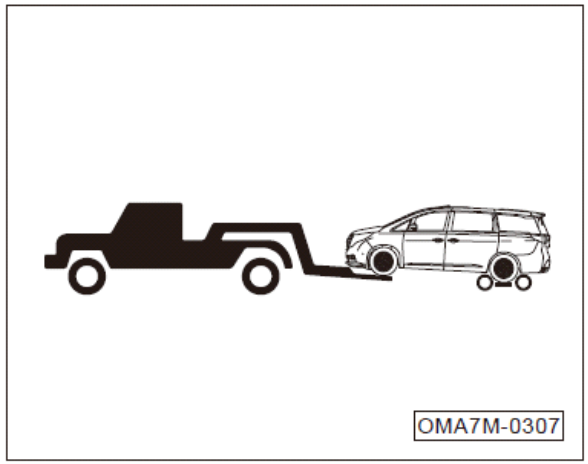


This towing method is applicable to all models of fault cars. We suggest using this method as much as possible.

Caution

Pay attention to apply parking brake and fix four wheels, to prevent the vehicle from moving during emergency braking of the trailer.

Tow the Car from the Front by Using a Wheeled Truck

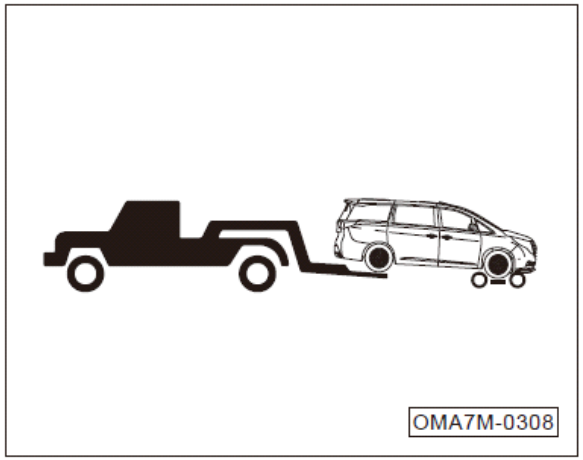


If your vehicle's rear wheels and rear axle are damaged, the towing platform must be placed beneath your vehicle's rear wheels.

Caution

- For cars equipped with electronic parking brake (EPB), when they are towed, towing platform must be placed under the rear wheels. Otherwise, the brake and tires may be damaged.
- During lifting of wheels, appropriate ground clearance must be reserved for the rear part. Otherwise, the outer cover of rear bumper or underbody of the towed vehicle may be damaged.

Tow the Car from the Rear by Using a Wheeled Truck

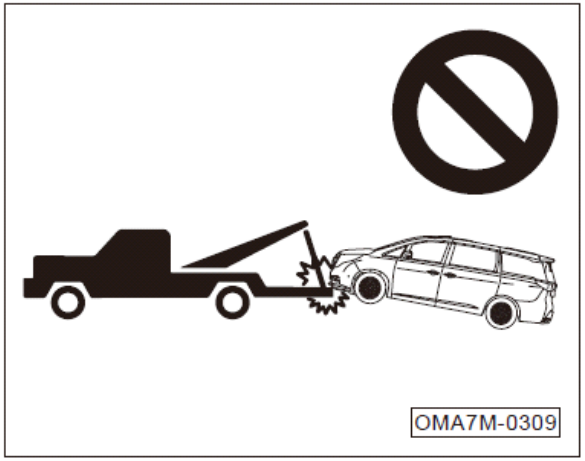


If your vehicle's front wheels and front axle are damaged, the towing platform needs to be placed beneath your vehicle's front wheels.

Caution

Do not tow the vehicle too fast or for a long distance with the front wheels down to the ground, which will seriously damage the transmission.

Lifting Truck is Strictly Forbidden to Use



Do not use lifting truck to tow the car from the front or rear of the car, otherwise, it may cause damage to the body.

9.1. Environmental Protection Information No.

S/N	Name of Type	Environmental Protection Information No.
1	GAC6510M2F5	CN QQ G5 Z2 0B82000113
2	GAC6510M1F5	CN QQ G5 Z2 0B82000114

9.2. Environmental Protection Information

Type Approval Information	Name of Type	
	GAC6510M2F5	GAC6510M1F5
Engine model/manufacturer	4B20M1 / GAC Motor Co., Ltd.	
Catalytic converter model/manufacturer	Front: 1790232X; rear: 1790232X /front: Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company; rear: Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company Carrier: front: unit 1: NGK (Suzhou) Environmental Ceramics Co., Ltd.; rear: unit 1: Corning (Shanghai) Co., Ltd. Coating: front: unit 1: Umicore Automobile Catalysts (Suzhou) Co., Ltd.; rear: unit 1: Umicore Automobile Catalysts (Suzhou) Co., Ltd. Encapsulation: front: Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company; rear: Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company	
Fuel evaporative control device model/manufacturer	2140003BAL00/Guangdong Hengbo Filter Co., Ltd.	
Oxygen sensor model/manufacturer	Front: LSF4; rear: LSF4/United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.	
Crankcase emission control device/manufacturer	10090082040000/Ningbo Shentong Moulding Co., Ltd.	
EGR model/manufacturer	/	
OBD model/manufacturer	ME17/United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.	
IUPR monitoring	Confirm to requirements	
ECU model/version/manufacturer	ME17/ME17/United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.	
Transmission model/number of gear positions	Auto/6	Auto/6
Muffler model/manufacturer	Front: 2048060X; rear: 2048058X, 2048059X/Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company	
Turbocharger model/manufacturer	K03/BorgWarner Automobile Parts (Ningbo) Co., Ltd.	
Intercooler type	/	

This Manual describes information related to configurations, functions, performance parameters and product schematic drawings of vehicles from GAC MOTOR. Its contents are effective when printing is allowed. But actual car configurations and functions are subject to actually delivered cars. If there is any difference between the product schematic drawing and actual car, the actual one should prevail.

GAC MOTOR reserves the right to alter, supplement or terminate the contents or technical specifications in this Manual without further notification.

All copyright is reserved by GAC MOTOR. Without written permission by GAC MOTOR, no printing and extracting of all or part contents of this Manual is allowed.

GAC MOTOR

GAC MOTOR CO., LTD.

Address: No. 60 Donglong Road, Panyu District,
Guangzhou, P.R. China
Postcode: 511434
Service hotline: 400-158-9999

Printed in October 2020